



A  
**NEW GRAMMAR**  
OF THE  
**FRENCH LANGUAGE,**  
DIVIDED INTO FORTY LESSONS,  
WITH  
**AN INTRODUCTION;**  
THE WHOLE FOLLOWED  
BY A COMPLETE TREATISE  
ON THE  
REGULAR, IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS.

DESIGNED  
FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND PRIVATE LEARNERS.

---

BY **STEPHEN BERNARD,**  
"  
TEACHER OF MODERN LANGUAGES AND MATHEMATICS.

---

*"La critique est aisée;  
Mais l'art est difficile."*

---

**RICHMOND:**  
PRINTED FOR THE AUTHOR,  
AND SOLD BY THE PRINCIPAL BOOKSELLERS IN THE UNITED STATES.

1832.

2

PC 2109  
B 55

*Eastern District of Virginia, to wit :*

BE IT REMEMBERED, That on the twenty-second day of May, Anno  
\*\*\*\*\* Domini, one thousand eight hundred and thirty-two, STEPHEN  
\* L. S. \* BERNARD, of the said district, hath deposited in this office the title  
\*\*\*\*\* of a book, the title of which is in the words following to wit :

*" A New Grammar of the French Language, divided into forty lessons, with  
an Introduction ; the whole followed by a complete Treatise on the Regular,  
Irregular and Defective Verbs. Designed for the use of Schools and Private  
Learners. By STEPHEN BERNARD, Teacher of Modern Languages and Mathe-  
matics.*

*' La critique est aisée ;  
Mais l'art est difficile. ' "*

The right whereof he claims as Author, in conformity with an Act of Congress,  
entitled, " An act to amend the several acts respecting copy-rights."

RD : JEFFRIES,  
*Clerk of the District.*

Samuel Shepherd & Co. Printers.

## PREFACE.

---

After the numerous systems of Grammar, which from time to time have been given to the world, a writer, at the present day, can only hope to display its principles in such a shape, as to render them agreeable to the taste of youth, and not uninteresting to students of a more advanced age.

In the composition and arrangement of this Grammar, it has been the wish of the *Author*, to adapt it to all classes of learners, by combining in a small compass, the most abstract, and consequently the most difficult peculiarities of the French tongue. But, that it is intended as a substitute for teachers, or to supersede the necessity for their assistance, should not, for a moment be supposed.

A Grammar is indeed a powerful and indispensable aid, and if, besides this, the student enjoy the instruction of a competent teacher, yet, his success must entirely depend upon his own *diligence, acquirements, particular talents, or appropriate age.*

Experience has clearly shewn, that a Grammar, to be useful, should be short, simple and well digested: neither obscure from conciseness, nor tedious from prolixity. Surely a formidable array of *five hundred pages*, comprising *five hundred exercises*, and at least *two thousand rules*, is sufficient to deter many from commencing the study of a language, and the detail will always tire a pupil, if it do not give him a lasting distaste for the modern languages.

As the attention of the Author has been particularly directed to the attainment of simplicity and clearness, he has made but two divisions of the work, viz: *Etymology* and *Syntax*.

*The first*, preceded by an introduction, treats of the different parts of speech; illustrates them by short and easy exercises, and is accompanied by remarks and useful observations.

*The second*, teaches the mode of arranging words in sentences, agreeably to the rules adopted by the French Academy.

The verbs, the soul of every language, have received a due share of attention. The Author, has, therefore, thought proper to embody them in a separate work, which is annexed to the Grammar.

The general principles of Grammar, have continued the same, and in that respect, a similarity in all works on this subject must necessarily exist. But, while the Author disclaims all intention to introduce any innovations, he does claim, to have avoided the minuteness and prolixity, which have been the concomitants of the works of the most celebrated Grammarians, and to have combined in this, a perspicuity and arrangement, which will greatly facilitate the progress of the student in *French literature*, and render his course more agreeable.

TO THE  
**TEACHERS OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE,**  
IN THE  
UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

---

Without pretensions as a writer, and unassuming as to the merit of the compilation now offered to the public, the Author begs leave to DEDICATE the following forty lessons on the French language, to his fellow-teachers throughout the Union. They are the fruit of deep and attentive consideration, through an experience of ten laborious years, and he ventures to entertain the hope, that few are to be found who will not approve of the plan, however they may censure the execution of the work.

The Treatise on the French verbs, annexed to this Grammar, constituted the first part of it, and was offered to the public in the year 1827. Its utility has been tested by the rapid sale of a thousand copies in a few years, and among a very limited population. Had his engagements permitted it, it was the intention of the Author to have divided this Treatise into a number of Lessons corresponding with the other portion of the work. He must rely upon the intelligence of those to whom the important task of instruction is confided, to fulfil his intentions by dividing the Treatise so that the Learner may at the same time complete his labours in both parts of the Grammar. This change, if the approbation of the public should sanction the undertaking, the Author will take pleasure in effecting at a future period.

To conclude. Utility is the object he has sought, and should he have advanced any claims to success, he will be amply rewarded for the labour he has encountered in making the attempt.

THE HISTORY OF THE REIGN OF KING CHARLES THE FIRST

IN THE

THIRTIETH YEAR OF HIS MAJESTY'S REIGN

IN THE YEAR OF OUR LORD ONE THOUSAND SIX HUNDRED AND FORTY SEVEN

AND IN THE FIRST YEAR OF HIS MAJESTY'S REIGN

BY JOHN BURNET



# FRENCH GRAMMAR.

---

French Grammar is the art of speaking and writing the French language correctly. It is divided into two parts, viz : *Etymology* and *Syntax*.

---

## INTRODUCTION.

---

### LESSON I.

---

#### FRENCH ALPHABET.

The French alphabet contains *twenty-five* letters, which are divided into *vowels* and *consonants*, namely :

A.	B.	C.	D.	E.	F.	G.*	H.	I.	J.*	K.	L.	M.
ah	bay	say	day	a	eff	jay	ahsh	ee	jee	kah	ell	emm
N.	O.	P.	Q.†	R.	S.	T.	U.†	V.	X.	Y.	Z.	
enn	o	pay	ku	airr	ess	tay	u	vay	eeks	ee-graik	zed.	

A. E. I. O. U. and Y. are called *vowels*, because they contain a perfect sound in themselves ; all the rest are *consonants*, because it is impossible to utter them without the assistance of the vowels.

#### THE ACCENTS.

*The accents* are different marks, necessary to the pronunciation and orthography of the French words.

The *acute* accent ('), is placed only upon *é*, and gives it a slender and acute sound, like that of *a* in *pale*. Examples: *été*, summer ; *bonté*, goodness ; *générosité*, generosity.

---

\* In the pronunciation of G and J, in French, the sound of *d* must be omitted ; therefore, instead of saying *djay* and *djee*, pronounce *jay*, *jee*.

† In order to obtain a correct knowledge of the pronunciation of Q and U, which have no corresponding sounds in English, it is necessary to hear these letters articulated by a native.

The *grave* accent (`), is chiefly placed over *è*, and gives it an open and grave sound, like that of *e* in *there*. Examples : *père*, father ; *modèle*, model ; *procès*, law-suit.

This accent is likewise used to distinguish *articles*, *verbs*, *adverbs*, *prepositions* and *conjunctions*, as in the following examples :

<i>a</i> , has,	<i>à</i> , to, or at.
<i>ça</i> , come on,	<i>çà</i> , hither.
<i>là</i> , the,	<i>là</i> , there.
<i>des</i> , of the, some or any,	<i>dès</i> , since, or from ; <i>dès que</i> , as soon as.
<i>où</i> , or,	<i>où</i> , where.

The *circumflex* accent (^), is generally placed over any long vowel, (Y excepted), and gives it a very broad sound, like that which distinguishes *shawl* from *shall*.

#### EXAMPLES :

<i>a</i> is long in <i>tâche</i> , task, and short in <i>tache</i> , stain.	
<i>e</i> ——— <i>pêche</i> , peach, ——— <i>il pêche</i> , he sins.	
<i>i</i> ——— <i>gîte</i> , abode, ——— <i>il agite</i> , he agitates.	
<i>o</i> ——— <i>côte</i> , coast, ——— <i>il cote</i> , he quotes.	
<i>u</i> ——— <i>bûche</i> , log, ——— <i>il trébuche</i> , he stumbles.	

This accent is also employed over the vowels formerly followed by an *s*, which has been dropped, since it is no longer pronounced ; as in *mât*, mast ; *fête*, feast ; *épître*, epistle ; *apôtre*, apostle ; *flûte*, flute ; now used instead of the old French words, *mast*, *feste*, *épistre*, *apostre*, *fluste*.

#### THE CEDILLA.

The *cedilla* (¸), is a mark placed under *ç*, giving it the sound of *s* or *ss*, before *a*, *o*, *u*, as in *français*, french ; *garçon*, boy ; *reçu*, receipt ; which are pronounced *fransais*, *garson*, *ressu*.

#### THE APOSTROPHE.

The *apostrophe* ('), is a mark which indicates the suppression of a vowel before another vowel, or *h* mute ;\* as in *l'ame*, the soul ; *l'homme*, the man ; *s'il vient*, if he comes ; instead of *la ame*, *le homme*, *si il vient*.

This suppression is called *Elision*. The only words subject to this, are the following : *Si* and *La* ; *Ce*, *De*, *Je*, *Le*, *Me*, *Ne*, *Se*, *Te*, *Que*, *Entre*, and all the compounds of *Que* ; such as, *parce que*, *puisque*, *bien que*, *jusque*, &c.

\* Aspirated H's are designated, in all French dictionaries, by a little mark prefixed. See '*Héros*, hero ; '*Hêtre*, beech-tree, &c.

Observe that H. is aspirated in '*Héros*, and silent in all its derivatives *Héroïne*, *Héroïsme*, &c.

## EXAMPLES :

Instead of	<i>si il dit, si ils disent, la amitié, ce est vrai, de un coup de œil, je écrirai, le oiseau, me entendez-vous ? ne allez pas là, se habiller, te aime-t-il ? entre-ouvrir, que, avez-vous là ? parce que il sait, puisque on dit, bien que ils aient, jusque à demain,</i>	write	<i>s'il dit ; s'ils disent ; l'amitié ; c'est vrai ; d'un coup d'œil ; j'écirai ; l'oiseau ; m'entendez-vous ? n'allez pas là ; s'habiller ; t'aime-t-il ? entr'ouvrir ; qu'avez-vous là ? parce qu'il sait ; puisque on dit ; bien qu'ils aient ; jusqu'à demain ;</i>	<i>if he says. if they say. the friendship. it is true. with a glance. I will write. the bird. do you understand me ? do not go there. to dress oneself. does he love thee ? to half open. what have you there ? because he knows. since they say. though they have. till to-morrow.</i>
------------	--	-------	---	--

*Remark.*—The conjunction *si*, (if), drops the *i*, before the personal pronouns *il* and *ils*, only, and the vowel *a* is never omitted, but in *la* feminine, both when an article and a pronoun.

## THE DIÆRESIS.

The *diæresis* (¨), is placed over the vowels *ë*, *ï*, *ü*, (in a few words only), and causes them to be pronounced separately from the other vowels by which they are accompanied ; as *poëte*, *Zaïre*, *Saül*, which are pronounced *po-ë-te*, *Za-ï-re*, *Sa-ül*.

There are some other distinctive marks used in writing, as the *comma* (,), *semi-colon* (;), *colon* (:), *period* (.), *note of interrogation* (?), *note of admiration* (!), &c. which are the same in the French as in the English language.

## LESSON II.

## OF PRONUNCIATION.

Pronunciation, in all languages, is certainly the chief difficulty which foreigners have to overcome, and it is in vain for any to undertake, by rules alone, this long and laborious task. No one can succeed without the assistance of a teacher, and *he* should always be a native.

The principal difficulties of the French pronunciation, consist in the *simple sounds* of the vowels, and the *nasal sounds*; the learner will find these explained below. Let him take the trouble to commit them to memory, or read them with great attention.

## THE SIMPLE SOUNDS OF THE VOWELS.

SOUNDED.	EXAMPLES.
a } like a in <i>that</i> .	<i>opéra,</i> opera.
ea } like a in <i>water</i> .	<i>il voyagea,</i> he travelled.
â } like e in <i>battery</i> .	<i>plâtre,</i> plaster.
e } like e in <i>battery</i> .	<i>nous jugeâmes,</i> we judged.
*ai } like a in <i>ale</i> .	<i>promenade,</i> a walk.
*eai } like a in <i>ale</i> .	<i>vérité,</i> truth.
œ } like a in <i>ale</i> .	<i>j'aimerai,</i> I will love.
é } like a in <i>ale</i> .	<i>je nageai,</i> I swam.
*ai } like a in <i>dare</i> .	<i>Œdipe,</i> Œdipus.
*eai } like a in <i>dare</i> .	<i>remède,</i> a remedy.
œ } like a in <i>dare</i> .	<i>aigre,</i> sour.
é } like a in <i>dare</i> .	* <i>je logeais,</i> I did lodge.
*ai } like e in <i>there</i> .	<i>peine,</i> trouble.
*eai } like e in <i>there</i> .	<i>tempête,</i> a storm.
œ } like e in <i>there</i> .	<i>maître,</i> a master.
é } like e in <i>there</i> .	<i>distributif,</i> distributive.
*ai } like ea in <i>leave</i> .	<i>martyr,</i> a martyr.
*eai } like ea in <i>leave</i> .	<i>île,</i> island.
œ } like ea in <i>leave</i> .	<i>monopole,</i> monopoly.
é } like ea in <i>leave</i> .	<i>auspice,</i> auspice.
*ai } like o in <i>love</i> .	<i>la rougeole,</i> the measles.
*eai } like o in <i>love</i> .	<i>côte,</i> coast.
œ } like o in <i>love</i> .	<i>école,</i> a jail.
é } like o in <i>love</i> .	<i>cheval,</i> horses.
*ai } like o in <i>cold</i> .	<i>chapeau,</i> hat.
*eai } like o in <i>cold</i> .	<i>tumulte,</i> tumult.
œ } like o in <i>cold</i> .	<i>gageure,</i> a wager.
é } like u in <i>curiosity</i> .	<i>brûlure,</i> a burning.
*ai } like u, but a little longer.	<i>nous eûmes,</i> we had.
*eai } like u, but a little longer.	<i>bonheur,</i> happiness.
œ } like e in <i>her</i> .	<i>vœux,</i> vows.
é } like ea, but a little longer.	<i>il jeûne,</i> he fasts.
*ai } like oo in <i>cool</i> .	<i>toujours,</i> always.
*eai } like oo in <i>cool</i> .	<i>Août,</i> August.
œ } like oo in <i>cool</i> .	<i>bois,</i> wood.
é } like oa in <i>Nyah</i> .	<i>cloître,</i> a cloister.
*ai } (only difficult compound sound).	<i>nageoire,</i> a fin.

\* *ai*, *â*, and *eai*, are now used instead of *oi*, *ô*, and *eol*, in several substantives, adjectives and verbs, above all in the *Imperfect* and *Conditional* tenses of every French verb, in which they have the sound of *ay* in *play*: as, *Anglais*, English; *faible*, weak; *paraître*, to appear; *je nageais*, I did swim; *je nagerais*, I would swim; *je connaissais*, I knew; &c. instead of *Anglois*, *foible*, *paraître*, *je nageois*, *je nagerois*, *je connaissois*.

This is conformable to the orthography of *Voltaire*, which has been adopted by the most celebrated authors of the present age, and lately by the French Academy, which until the year 1822, adhered to the old mode of writing *oi*.

† When *Y* is followed, or preceded by a consonant, it is sounded as simple *i*, except in *paysan*, *payage*, which are pronounced *pé-is*, *pé-i-zan*, *pé-i-zage*; but, *Y* placed between two vowels, has the sound of *u*, Ex. *crovable*, credible; *aboyer*, to bark, &c.; which are pronounced *croi-sable*, *abou-ye-r*.

## THE SIMPLE NASAL SOUNDS.

The nasal sounds are formed by adding to the vowels, the consonants *m* and *n*, as follows:

SOUNDED.		EXAMPLES.	
<i>an</i>	} something like <i>an</i> in <i>want</i> , but still more nasal.	<i>enfant</i> ,	a child.
<i>ean</i>		<i>exigeant</i> ,	exacting.
<i>aen</i>		<i>Caen</i> ,	Caen, (a city).
* <i>aon</i>		<i>paon</i> ,	a peacock.
† <i>en</i>		<i>encens</i> ,	incense.
<i>am</i>		<i>chambre</i> ,	chamber.
<i>em</i>		<i>printems</i> ,	the spring.
<i>in</i>	} something like <i>en</i> in <i>went</i> .	<i>chagrin</i> ,	sorrow.
<i>aim</i>		<i>essaim</i> ,	a swarm.
<i>ain</i>		<i>saint</i> ,	a saint.
<i>ein</i>		<i>sein</i> ,	bosom.
† <i>en</i>		<i>examen</i> ,	examination.
<i>im</i>		<i>imbécile</i> ,	silly.
<i>ym</i>		<i>symbole</i> ,	symbol.
<i>yn</i>	} nearly like <i>on</i> in <i>wont</i> .	<i>syntaxe</i> ,	syntax.
<i>on</i>		<i>ballon</i> ,	balloon.
<i>eon</i>		<i>pigeon</i> ,	a pigeon.
<i>om</i>	} no similar sound in English.	<i>concombre</i> ,	cucumber.
<i>un</i>		<i>tribun</i> ,	a tribune.
<i>eun</i>		<i>être à jeun</i> ,	to be fasting.
<i>um</i>		<i>parfum</i> ,	perfume.

The simple sounds of the French tongue, being well understood, the Learner will easily acquire the compound ones. Let him read, before his master, every day, or every other day, two or three pages of an easy book, and let the master carefully correct his pronunciation, and explain to him whatever difficulty may occur.

*Dictation*, is also an excellent mode of acquiring orthography. None is superior to this in accelerating the progress of the learner, and in enabling him to understand conversation.

\* *Taon*, (an ox fly), and *Saône*, (a river), are pronounced *Ton*, *Sône*.

† *En* at the beginning, in the middle, or when followed by *t*, at the end of a word, sounds like *en* in *encore*; Ex. *prudent*, prudent; *sentiment*, feeling; *entendement*, understanding. In the third person plural of verbs, although followed by *t*, the final *en*, is always silent; Ex. *ils entendent*, they understand; *ils disent*, they say. But the *t* final is sounded before a vowel, or *h* mute; as, *aiment-ils?* do they love? which is pronounced *aim-täls?*—(See *Encore*, in Walker's Dictionary.)

‡ *En*, at the end of a word, sounds like *en* in *length*; Ex. *bien*, well; *chrétien*, christian; *hymen*, hymen; *Eden*, Eden, &c.

## LESSON III.

*Fundamental rules for reading French, with as much correctness as can be attained, without any other assistance.*

N. B. Though we are attempting to exhibit here, in a small compass, the principal rules of the French pronunciation, and to give the *Learner* a tolerable clue to that important branch of the Language; yet, on account of the great number of exceptions to the following rules, *he* should take *a few lessons*, by which his private studies would be greatly facilitated.

*Rule 1.* Pronounce every syllable distinctly, according to the rules already laid down, for the simple sounds of the vowels, and the nasal sounds.

*Rule 2.* Sound softly every final consonant on the first letter of the following word, should it begin with a vowel, or silent *h*.

### SOUNDED.

### EXAMPLES.

(1) B.	at the end of proper names.	<i>Jacob,</i>	read <i>Jacob; (b. hard)</i>	<i>Jacob,</i>
(2) C.	like <i>k</i> in <i>kind</i> .	<i>avec eux,</i>	read <i>aré-k.eux;</i>	with them, m.
CH.	like <i>sh</i> in <i>shall</i> .	<i>cheval,</i>	read <i>sheval,</i>	a horse,
(3) CH.	like <i>k</i> (in about 50 words).	<i>chrétien,</i>	read <i>krétien;</i>	christian,
(4) D.	like <i>t</i> in <i>not a cent</i> .	<i>grand homme,</i>	read <i>gran-tomme;</i>	great man,
D.	at the end of proper names.	<i>David,</i>	read <i>David; (d. hard)</i>	<i>David,</i>
(5) F.	as in English, in <i>loaf</i> .	<i>chef,</i>	read <i>chef; (f. hard)</i>	chief,
G.	like <i>k</i> , (in a few words only).	<i>sang humain,</i>	read <i>san-k.oumain;</i>	human blood,
(6) L.	as in English, in <i>sell it</i> .	<i>bel enfant,</i>	read <i>bé-l. enfant;</i>	a fine child,
(7) G.N.	nearly like <i>n</i> in <i>onion</i> .	<i>campagnard,</i>	read <i>campa-gnard;</i>	country-man,
P.	as in English, in <i>cup of tea</i> .	<i>trop étroit,</i>	read <i>tro-p.étroit;</i>	too narrow,
Q.	like <i>k</i> in <i>frock</i> .	<i>cinq ou six,</i>	read <i>cin-k.ou siss;</i>	five or six,
R.	as in English, in <i>dear object</i> .	<i>jour et nuit,</i>	read <i>jou-r.et nuit;</i>	day & night,
(8) S.	as in English, in <i>rose</i> .	<i>ils aiment,</i>	read <i>il-z.aiment;</i>	they love, m.
(9) T.	as in English, in <i>not a cent</i> .	<i>ront-elles?</i>	read <i>ron-t.elles?</i>	do they go? f.
TH	never sounded in French.	<i>the, Thorn,</i>	read <i>té, Torn;</i>	tea, Thorn,
V.	This letter, when doubled, is represented by <i>W</i> , and never met with in French, but in some words taken from the English; as, <i>whig, whist, whisky, &amp;c.</i> ; but in several, belonging to the German and other northern languages, it is sounded as a simple <i>v</i> , such are <i>Vesphalie, Wolga, Wurtemberg, &amp;c.</i> pronounced <i>Vesphalie, Volga, Vurtemberg.</i>			
X.	has the five different sounds of	<i>ks</i>	read <i>aks,</i>	axis,
		<i>gz</i>	read <i>Gzavier,</i>	Xaverius,
		<i>k</i>	read <i>ekcès,</i>	excess,
		<i>ss</i>	read <i>soissante,</i>	sixty,
Z.	as in English in <i>zone</i> .	<i>sixième,</i>	read <i>sizième,</i>	sixth,
		<i>allez-y,</i>	read <i>allé-z.y,</i>	go there.

REMARK.—A final consonant is generally silent before another consonant, or *h* aspirated; but, always sounded, in verbs whose infinitive ends in *ir* or *oir*; as, *bâtir*, to build; *finir*, to finish; *savoir*, to know (a thing); *devoir*, to owe, &c. Also in proper names, derived from the dead languages; as, *Jupiter, Venus, Pâris, Minos, Agésilas, Hector, &c.*

(1) B. is never sounded in *plomb*, lead.

(2) C. has the sound of *g* in *second*, second, and all its derivatives.

(3) CH. takes the sound of *k*, in *Antiochus, Anacharsis, anachorète, archange, Archangel, archevêque, eucharistic, Cham, Chanaan, Chao, chaos, Zacharie, Machiavel, Michelange, orchestre, Calchas, Charan, Bacchus, écho, Zurich*, and about thirty others, very seldom used.

(4) D. is not sounded in *bond*, rebound; *gond*, hinge; *fond*, bottom; *nid*, nest; *naud*, knot, and *pied*, foot; except in a few compound words, as *mettre pied-a-terre*, to alight; *de pied-en-cap*, from head to foot; *de fond-en-comble*, from top to bottom, in which *d* is sounded as *t*.



## A COLLECTION OF THOSE SOUNDS WHICH FOREIGNERS FIND IT DIFFICULT TO PRONOUNCE.

For this selection, the Author is indebted to the ingenious preface to Nugent's Dictionary, by M. Ouisseau.—London Edition.

*Il y a plus de vignobles en Bourgogne qu'en Brctagne.*

*Ce procédé est ignominieux, et indigne d'un Espagnol.*

*Essayez de me trouver un petit épagnoul, semblable à celui de votre fille.*

*Un bon pasteur veille sans cesse sur ses ouailles.*

*Mettez dans ce bouillon des feuilles de cerfeuil et d'oseille, et ajoutez-y une gousse d'ail.*

*J'ai passé une heure dans le mail, à faire une partie de quilles.*

*Mon tailleur m'a dit que tous les grands Seigneurs étaient alors en deuil à Versailles.*

*Je m'amusai la veille de Noël à considérer une vieille Bourguignonne, qui jouait de la vielle, tranquillement assise au soleil sur le seuil de sa porte.*

*Essayez de bien prononcer roi, croix, l'amour et la mort, des citrouilles et des grenouilles, un chien hargneux, une abeille industrieuse.*

*Ne bagayez pas en disant une anguille et une aiguille, égayant et égayé.*

*On confond souvent la simplicité avec la stupidité, et la régularité avec la singularité.*

*La divisibilité de la matière nous donne l'idée de l'infinité et de l'éternité.*

*L'électricité était inconnue à l'antiquité.*

*La félicité accompagne plus souvent la médiocrité que la supériorité.*

*Les armées entrèrent mardi en campagne.*

*Marchez rustre, marchez, ne vous endormez pas.*

*C'est en forgeant que vous deviendrez forgeron.*

*Formez mieux ces lettres rondes et ces lettres bâtarde, et ne barbouillez pas tant de papier.*

*Mon agent a mon argent; quant à moi qui n'ai point d'argent, je n'ai pas besoin d'agent.*

*Prononcez les deux R. des mots erreur, terreur, horreur, irrité, terrible, erroné,*

*Quand un cordier cordant veut accorder sa corde,*

*Dc sa corde à corder trois cordons il accorde;*

*Mais si l'un des cordons de la corde décorde,*

*Le cordon décordant fait décorde la corde.*

*La compassion est une affection tendre.*

*Les factions désolent cette nation.*

*L'ambition est une illusion qui conduit souvent à des actions criminelles.*

(5) F. is sounded in all words ending in *if*, mostly adjectives; as, *actif, attentif, expressif*, &c. Also in *bref* or *brief*, *brief* or *short*; *fief, fief*; *nerf, nerve*; *œuf, egg*; *bœuf, ox*; *neuf, new or nine*, &c. but it is silent in *clef*, a key; *cerf*, a stag; *chef-d'œuvre*, a master-piece, and the plural of *nerf, œuf, bœuf*, and *neuf*, (new). In *neuf* (nine), when alone, or when it terminates the sentence, *f* is distinctly sounded, but it takes the sound of *v* before a vowel, and is silent before a consonant. Ex. *neuf aunes*, nine ells, (pronounced *neu-v.aunes*); *neuf heures*, nine o'clock, (*neu-v.heures*).

(6) L. when doubled and preceded by *i*, in the middle of a word, is generally liquid, and sounded nearly like *ill* in *brilliant*; as, *travailler*, to work; *vieillir*, to grow old, &c.

(7) GN. in the following French words, has the hard sound of *gn* in the English word *ignorant*. Ex. *gnide, agnat, cognat, ignée, magnésie, stagnant, magnat*, and about twenty others seldom employed.

(8) S. is never sounded in *mes, tes, ses, nos, vos, leurs, ces* and *les*, when one of these words is placed before *onze*, eleven; *onzième*, the eleventh, and *oui*, yes. Also, pronounce without elision, *le onze, le onzième, le oui* et *le non*; and *cenez me voir vers les une heure*, and not *vers lé-z.une heure*, call on me about one o'clock.

(9) T. is never sounded in the conjunction *et*, and.

## EXPLANATION

## OF THE ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE EXERCISES.

<i>m.</i>	stands for	masculine.
<i>f.</i>	"	feminine.
<i>s.</i>	"	singular.
<i>pl.</i>	"	plural.
<i>d. art.</i>	"	definite article.
<i>ind. art.</i>	"	indefinite article.
<i>c. art.</i>	"	compound article.
<i>pron.</i>	"	pronoun.
<i>prep.</i>	"	preposition.
<i>h. m.</i>	"	h. mute.
<i>h. asp.</i>	"	h. aspirated.
<b>INFINITIVE MOOD.</b>		
<i>inf. 1.</i>	"	present of the infinitive.
<i>inf. 2.</i>	"	compound of the present, or past.
<i>inf. 3.</i>	"	gerund, or participle present.
<i>inf. 4.</i>	"	compound of the gerund, or past.
<i>inf. 5.</i>	"	participle past.
<b>INDICATIVE MOOD.</b>		
<i>ind. 1.</i>	"	present of the indicative.
<i>ind. 2.</i>	"	compound of the present, or preterit indefinite.
<i>ind. 3.</i>	"	imperfect.
<i>ind. 4.</i>	"	compound of the imperfect, or pluperfect.
<i>ind. 5.</i>	"	preterit definite.
<i>ind. 6.</i>	"	compound of the preterit, or preterit anterior.
<i>ind. 7.</i>	"	future present.
<i>ind. 8.</i>	"	compound of the future, or past.
<i>ind. 9.</i>	"	conditional present.
<i>ind. 10.</i>	"	compound of the conditional, or past.
<b>IMPERATIVE MOOD.</b>		
<i>imp.</i>	"	imperative.
<b>SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.</b>		
<i>subj. 1.</i>	"	present of the subjunctive.
<i>subj. 2.</i>	"	compound of the present, or preterit.
<i>subj. 3.</i>	"	imperfect.
<i>subj. 4.</i>	"	compound of the imperfect, or pluperfect.

Words having this mark (\*), underneath, are not to be translated in French.

The figures 1. 2. 3. &c. which are to be found at the end of the English words, show in what order they must be placed in French.

A horizontal line (—), placed under an English word, implies that it is spelled in the same manner in French.

When a parenthesis ( ), encloses two or more words, the words above or below, are equivalent to the whole enclosure; and when one or two infinitives are found below, they must be put in the same tense with the English verb above, should there be no other direction.



## PART I.

---

### ETYMOLOGY.

*Etymology* treats of the different sorts of words, shows their various modifications, and their derivation.

---

### LESSON IV.

---

#### OF THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

There are in the French Language *ten* different sorts of words, generally called the *parts of speech*, namely :

- 1 the Article.
- 2 the Substantive, or Noun.
- 3 the Adjective.
- 4 the Pronoun.
- 5 the Verb.
- 6 the Participle.
- 7 the Adverb.
- 8 the Preposition.
- 9 the Conjunction.
- 10 the Interjection.

Of these, *six* are liable to a change in their form, or termination, according to their *Gender*, *Number* and *Case*; but the last *four* are invariable.

#### OF GENDER.

*Gender* is the distinction of nouns, with regard to sex.

The French have but two genders, the *masculine* and the *feminine*.

The *masculine gender*, denotes a man, or animal of the male kind; as, *roi*, king; *lion*, lion.

The *feminine gender*, denotes a woman, or animal of the female kind; as, *reine*, queen; *lionne*, lioness.

This distinction has, through imitation, been extended to *inanimate objects* and *abstract substantives* ;\* as, *papier*, paper ; *bonheur*, happiness, which are *masculine*, and *plume*, pen ; *sagesse*, wisdom, which are *feminine*.

## OF NUMBER.

*Number* is the consideration of an object, with regard to quantity.

There are two numbers, the *singular* and the *plural*.

The *singular number* expresses but one object ; as, *un enfant*, a child ; *une pêche*, a peach.

The *plural number* signifies more objects than *one* ; as, *des enfans*, some children ; *des pêches*, some peaches.

## OF CASE.

*Case* exhibits the different relations of nouns and pronouns to other words, by a change in their termination.

The French have no cases, and the English only *one*, which is called *genitive*, or *possessive* ; as, John's book, *le livre de Jean*, always expressed in French by : *the book of John*. To supply this deficiency, in both languages, prepositions are most generally used.

However, two cases being absolutely necessary, for the sake of arrangement and construction in the personal pronouns, as in English, we will adopt the two following ; namely : the *nominative* and the *objective*.

The *Nominative Case*, expresses the name of a person, or the pronoun which is the *subject* of an action ; as, *Marie joue*, Mary plays ; *elle chante*, she sings. Here, *Marie* and *elle*, are both in the *nominative case*.

The *Objective Case*, expresses the name of a person, or the pronoun which is the *object* of an action ; as, *j'aime Marie*, I love Mary ; *je joue avec elle*, I play with her. Here, *Marie* and *elle*, are both in the *objective case*.

---

\* To give rules for knowing the genders of *inanimate objects* and *abstract substantives*, would be of no advantage to the scholar ; for, they are so numerous, and liable to so many exceptions, that the best and easiest way, is to learn them in a good French Dictionary.

We recommend to French Students, the pronouncing Dictionary of *Messrs. Noël and Chapsal*.—Paris Edition, 1828.

## OF THE ARTICLE.

The article is a word prefixed to nouns, to determine the full extent of their signification. In French, its principal object is to denote the gender and number of substantives.

There are two kinds of articles, viz: the *simple* and the *compound*.

## OF THE SIMPLE ARTICLES.

The *simple articles* are divided into *definite* and *indefinite*.

The *definite article*, points out some particular person, or thing; as *LE Président des Etats Unis*, the President of the United States.

The Learner will render the English definite article

the, by  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} le \text{ or } l' \text{ before a noun masculine singular.} \\ la \text{ or } l' \text{ before a noun feminine singular.} \\ les \text{ before either gender in the plural.} \end{array} \right.$

REMARK.—*le* and *la*, are prefixed to nouns beginning with a consonant, or *h* aspirated, and *l'*, to those beginning with a vowel, or *h* mute.

The *indefinite article*, denotes one person, or thing, but not a particular one; as, *UN Président des Etats Unis*, a President of the United States.

The Learner will render the English indefinite article

a or an, by  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} un, \text{ before a noun masculine singular.} \\ une, \text{ before a noun feminine singular.} \\ \text{(the plural of this article is } des, \text{ some, when it means } plusieurs, \text{ several.)} \end{array} \right.$

## EXERCISE.

The man, the woman and the children; a boy and a girl;  
*homme h. m. femme et enfans garçon fille*  
 the hero and the heroine; the father and the mother;  
*héros h. asp. héroïne h. m. père mère*  
 the brothers and the sisters; an aunt and a cousin; an uncle  
*frères sœurs tante cousin m. oncle*  
 and a cousin; the sun, the moon and the stars; a  
*cousine f. soleil m. s. lune f. s. étoiles pl.*  
 house and a garden; the street and the pavement; a yard  
*maison f. jardin m. rue f. trottoir m. cour f.*  
 and a well; the horses and the carriage; a dog and  
*puits m. chevaux pl. voiture f. chien m.*  
 a cow; the hour and the clock; a watch, a  
*vache f. heure f. h. m. horloge f. h. m. montre f.*  
 chain, a snuff-box, a knife and a penknife; the  
*chaîne f. tabatière f. couteau m. canif m.*  
 paper, the ink and the pens; the master and the  
*papier m. s. encre f. s. plumes pl. maître m.*  
 scholars.  
*écoliers pl.*

## LESSON V.

### OF THE COMPOUND ARTICLES.

Compound articles are those which are compounded of a simple article, and one of the two prepositions *de*, (of or from), and *à*, (to or at); as follows:

DE LE, <i>de la</i> , DE LES,	of the.
<i>de un, de une</i> ,	of a.
à LE, <i>à la</i> , à LES.	to the.
à un, <i>à une</i> ,	to a.

*Remark.*—The compound articles *de le* and *de les*, *à le* and *à les*, are never to be used without contraction,\* thus: *du* instead of *de le*; *des* instead of *de les*; *au* instead of *à le*; *aux* instead of *à les*.

*De un* and *de une*, are spelled *d'un*, *d'une*, agreeably to the rules already given for the use of the apostrophe.

#### EXAMPLES:

The Learner will render the English compound articles, as follows:

of the, by	{	<i>du</i> or <i>de l'</i>	before a noun masculine singular.
		<i>de la</i> or <i>de l'</i>	before a noun feminine singular.
		<i>des</i>	before either gender in the plural.
to the, by	{	<i>au</i> or <i>à l'</i>	before a noun masculine singular.
		<i>à la</i> or <i>à l'</i>	before a noun feminine singular.
		<i>aux</i>	before either gender in the plural.
of a, by	{	<i>d'un</i>	before a noun masculine singular.
		<i>d'une</i>	before a noun feminine singular.
		<i>à un</i>	before a noun masculine singular.
to a, by	{	<i>à un</i>	before a noun masculine singular.
		<i>à une</i>	before a noun feminine singular.

*Observe*, that *du* and *de la*, *au* and *à la*, are always prefixed to nouns beginning with a consonant, or *h* aspirated, and *de l'* and *à l'*, to those beginning with a vowel, or *h* mute.

#### EXERCISE.

The palace of the king, of the queen, of the princes, of the  
*palais m.                      roi m. s.                      reine f. s                      princes pl.*  
 man, of the men, of the hero; (Let us speak) to the king,  
*homme                      hommes                      héros                      parlons*  
 to the queen, to the princes, to the man, to the men, to the  
 hero; from a balcony, from a window; of the day, of the  
*balcon m.                      fenêtre f.                      jour m.*

---

\* Contraction, in Grammar, is the reduction of two vowels, or syllables to one; as, *I'll* for *I will*, and *I won't* for *I will not*.

night; to a church, of a church, to \* church, of the church;  
*nuît f. église f. (d. art.)*  
 to the soul, of the soul; to the horse, of the horse; to a  
*ame f. cheval m.*  
 friend, of a Lady, to the pupils, of the school, of the  
*ami m. dame élèves pl. école f.*  
 Landlord, to the Landlady, of the chambers, from the  
*hôte h. m. hôtesse h. m. chambres pl.*  
 cellar, to the garret, to the husband, of the wife.  
*cave f. s. grenier m. s. mari femme*

## OF THE PARTITIVE ARTICLES.

The compound articles *du, de la, de l'* and *des*, are called *partitive articles*, whenever they express a part of the object to which they are applied, in which case they answer to the English partitive *some* or *any*, either expressed or understood. These articles must be repeated, in French, before every substantive in a sentence, as in the following examples :

Bring me some vinegar, \* mustard, \* oil and \* forks.  
*apportez-moi du vinaigre, de la moutarde, de l'huile et des fourchettes.*  
*elle a du beurre.* she has some butter.  
*avez-vous du beurre?* have you any butter?  
*elle vend du beurre.* she sells \* butter.

### EXERCISE.

Give me some bread; some meat; some lobster;  
*donnez-moi pain m. s. viande f. s. homard m. s. h. asp.*  
 some oil; some potatoes; (Is there) any wine in  
*huile f. s. h. m. pommes de terre pl. y a-t-il vin m. s. dans*  
 the cellar? any beer; any ale; any bottles; any  
*cave f. s. bière f. s. aile f. s. bouteilles f. pl.*  
 hops. Drink some brandy and \* water, and  
*houblon m. s. h. asp. buvez eau-de-vie f. s. et eau f. s.*  
 (put in) some sugar and \* nutmeg. Buy some paper, \*  
*mettez-y sucre m. s. muscade f. s. achetez papier m. s.*  
 ink and \* pens. Have you any milk and \* cream?  
*encre f. s. plumes pl. avez-vous lait m. s. crème f. s.*  
 She sells \* tea and \* coffee. He has received some gold  
*elle vend thé m. s. café m. s. il a reçu or m. s.*  
 and \* silver. She has \* modesty and \* prudence. I  
*argent m. s. elle a modestie f. s. prudence f. s. je*  
 have<sup>2</sup> given<sup>3</sup> him<sup>1</sup> \* money and \* clothes. Take some  
*ai donné lui argent m. s. habits m. pl. prenez*  
 beef, \* turnips, and \* salad.  
*bœuf m. s. navets m. pl. et salade f. s.*

\* When an asterisk is prefixed to the English words in the exercises, it indicates that the article is either omitted or understood.

## LESSON VI.

### OF THE SUBSTANTIVE, OR NOUN.

The *Substantive*, or *Noun*, is a word which presents to the mind, the idea of any object, being, or thing whatever; as, *Dieu*, God; *roi*, king; *royaume*, kingdom, &c.

Nouns are divided into *common*, *proper*, *abstract* and *collective*.

A *Common noun*, is the name of a person, or that of any object, belonging to a class of similar individuals, animals, or things; as, *soldat*, soldier; *cheval*, horse; *maison*, house.

A *Proper noun*, is that which relates to a particular person, or thing; as, *Guillaume*, William; *le Tage*, the Tagus, &c.

An *Abstract noun*, relates to an object that exists in the mind only; as, *bonheur*, happiness; *vertu*, virtue, &c.

A *Collective noun*, expresses either a whole mass; as, *une armée*, an army; *une forêt*, a forest; or, a partial assemblage; as, *une quantité*, a certain quantity; *la plupart*, most part, &c.

To substantives belong *gender* and *number*.

### FORMATION OF THE PLURAL

#### OF FRENCH SUBSTANTIVES.

**RULE 1.** The plural number, in *French Substantives*, is generally formed by adding an *s*, to the singular; as, *homme*, man; *mouton*, sheep; *gant*, glove; plural, *hommes*, *moutons*, *gants*.

2. Proper names have no plural; as, *les Voltaire et les Dryden ne sont plus*, Voltaire and Dryden are no more. Except when these names are applied to some other persons, for the sake of comparison; as, *Ces deux princes ont été les ALEXANDRES de leur siècle*, those two princes have been the *Alexanders* of their age.

3. The names of *colours*, *metals*, *grain*, *virtues* and *vices*, are always used in the singular; as, *le noir et le blanc*, black and white; *l'or et l'argent*, gold and silver; *l'orge et le froment*, barley and wheat; *la modestie et la sagesse*, modesty and wisdom; *l'avarice et l'ambition*, avarice and ambition, &c. The same rule applies to those names by which the five senses are denoted; as, *la vue*, the sight; *le goût*, the taste; *l'odorat*, the smell; *le toucher*, feeling; *l'ouïe*, hearing.

4. *Adjectives* and *Verbs*, becoming substantives, admit of no plural; as, (*préférer*) *l'utile à l'agréable*, (to prefer) the useful to the agreeable; *le boire et le manger*, drinking and eating.



5. Some substantives have no singular ; as, *ancêtres*, ancestors ; *mœurs*, manners ; *pleurs*, tears ; *funérailles*, a funeral, &c.

6. Several nouns, taken from the Latin, have their singular and plural alike ; as, *accessit*, *alibi*, *alinéa*, *duo*, *errata*, *opéra*, *quiproquo*, *zéro*, and perhaps a few more.

7. Nouns having their singular in *s*, *x*, or *z*, admit of no variation in the plural : Ex.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	
<i>le fils,</i>	<i>les fils,</i>	son.
<i>la voix,</i>	<i>les voix,</i>	voice.
<i>le nez,</i>	<i>les nez,</i>	nose.

8. Nouns ending in *al* or *ail*, change these letters into *aux*, to form their plural : Ex.

<i>le mal,</i>	<i>les maux,</i>	evil.
<i>l'animal,</i>	<i>les animaux,</i>	animal.
<i>le corail,</i>	<i>les coraux,</i>	coral.
<i>l'émail,</i>	<i>les émaux,</i>	enamel.

*Exceptions.*—The following nouns, according to the French Academy, take an *s* in the plural, viz : *bal*, (ball), plural *bals* ; *cal*, (calosity), pl. *cals* ; *régal*, (treat), pl. *régals* ; *carnaval*, (carnival), pl. *carnavals* ; *détail*, (account), pl. *détails* ; *éventail*, (fan), pl. *éventails* ; *gouvernail*, (helm), pl. *gouvernails* ; *portail*, (gate), pl. *portails* ; *sérail*, (seraglio), pl. *sérais*, with a few others very seldom used.

9. All nouns ending in *au* or *eu*, form their plural by adding *x* ; Example :

<i>le tuyau,</i>	<i>les tuyaux,</i>	pipe, or quill.
<i>le chapeau,</i>	<i>les chapeaux,</i>	hat.
<i>le fléau,</i>	<i>les fléaux,</i>	scourge.
<i>l'aveu,</i>	<i>les aveux,</i>	avowal.
<i>le vœu,</i>	<i>les vœux,</i>	vow.
<i>le lieu,</i>	<i>les lieux,</i>	place.

10. The French Academy, form the plural of the following words in *ou*, by adding an *x* to the singular, viz :

<i>le bijou,</i>	<i>les bijoux,</i>	jewel.
<i>le caillou,</i>	<i>les cailloux,</i>	pebble.
<i>le chou,</i>	<i>les choux,</i>	cabbage.
<i>le genou,</i>	<i>les genoux,</i>	knee.
<i>le hibou,</i>	<i>les hiboux,</i>	owl.
<i>le joujou,</i>	<i>les joujoux,</i>	play-thing.
<i>le verrou,</i>	<i>les verroux,</i>	bolt.

But an *s* is added to all the other substantives of the same termination, namely : *clou*, (nail), pl. *clous* ; *cou*, (neck), pl. *cous* ; *fou*, (mad-man), pl. *fous* ; *loup-garou*,\* (ware-wolf), pl. *loup-garous*, &c.

\* The most mischievous wolves, "says M. de Bufon, are called by this name, because it is necessary to beware of them." In proverbial phrase a capricious and unsociable man is termed "loup-garou," a ware-wolf.—*Dict. Crit. de la langue française, par M. l'abbé Féraud.*

*Remark.*—Some writers drop the *t* of polysyllables ending in *ant* or *ent*, and form their plural by adding an *s*; as, *enfant*, (child), pl. *enfants*; *couvent*, (convent), pl. *couvens*, &c. But they preserve the *t* in monosyllables, thus: *gant*, (glove), pl. *gants*; *dent*, (tooth), pl. *dents*, &c. except, however, *gent*, (nation or race), the plural of which is *gens*, (people).

This, however, is altogether optional.

11. The following nouns are quite irregular, and not conformable to any established rule, viz :

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	
<i>aïl</i> , (garlick),	<i>aïlx</i> ,	heads of garlick.
<i>bétail</i> ,	<i>bestiaux</i> ,	cattle.
<i>aïeul</i> , (grand-father),	{ <i>aïeux</i> , or <i>ancêtres</i> ,	ancestors.
	{ <i>aïeuls</i> ,	grand-fathers.
<i>ciel</i> , (sky, or heaven),	{ <i>cieux</i> ,	skies, or heavens.
	{ <i>ciel</i> , m. s. <i>ciels</i> , m. pl.	tester of a bed, or top of a picture.
<i>œil</i> , (eye),	{ <i>yeux</i> ,	eyes.
	{ <i>œils-de-bœuf</i> ,	oval-windows.

### COMPOUND NOUNS.

Besides all these substantives, the French Language contains about *six hundred* compound nouns, which form their plural in the following manner, viz :

**RULE 1.** When a noun is compounded of two substantives united by a hyphen, they both take the sign of the plural: Ex.

<i>un chou-fleur</i> ,	<i>des choux-fleurs</i> ,	colly-flower.
<i>un chef-lieu</i> ,	<i>des chefs-lieux</i> ,	chief-town.

2. When a noun is compounded of two substantives, separated by a preposition, and united by hyphens, the first only takes the sign of the plural: Ex.

<i>un arc-en-ciel</i> ,	<i>des arcs-en-ciel</i> ,	rain-bow.
<i>un chef-d'œuvre</i> ,	<i>des chefs-d'œuvre</i> ,	master-piece.

3. When a noun is compounded of a substantive and an adjective, united by a hyphen, they both take the sign of the plural: Ex.

<i>un beau-père</i> ,	<i>des beaux-pères</i> ,	father-in-law.
<i>un cordon-bleu</i> ,	<i>des cordons-bleus</i> ,	knight of the Holy Ghost.

4. When a noun is compounded of a preposition or verb, and a substantive, the substantive alone is put in the plural: Ex.

<i>une contre-danse</i> ,	<i>des contre-danses</i> ,	cotillon, (a French dance).
<i>un passe-port</i> ,	<i>des passe-ports</i> ,	passport.

5. When a noun is compounded of a verb and an adverb, or of a verb repeated, neither of them takes the sign of the plural: Ex.

<i>un passe-partout</i> ,	<i>des passe-partout</i> ,	master-key.
<i>un passe-passe</i> ,	<i>des passe-passe</i> ,	slight of hand.



## EXERCISE.

Gather some flowers and fruit. Eat some apples  
*cueillez (c. art.) fleurs et (c. art.) fruit pl. mangez pomme pl.*  
 and walnuts. She sells play-things and jewels.  
*(c. art.) noix pl. elle vend (c. art.) joujou pl. (c. art.) bijou pl.*  
 Shew me some fans and gloves. Give me some  
*montrez-moi éventail pl. (c. art.) gant pl. donnez-moi*  
 hammers and nails. Have you read the lives of the  
*marteau pl. (c. art.) clou pl. avez-vous lu vies. s. (c. art.)*  
 twelve Cæsars? Platina is heavier than gold  
*douze César pl. (d. art.) platine m. est (plus lourd) que (d. art.) or m.*  
 and silver. He wears a red<sup>2</sup> coat,<sup>1</sup> black<sup>2</sup>  
*(d. art.) argent m. il porte rouge habit m. (c. art.) noir pl.*  
 stockings<sup>1</sup> and white<sup>2</sup> shoes.<sup>1</sup> I prefer black  
*bas pl. (c. art.) blanc pl. soulier pl. je préfère (d. art.) noir m.*  
 to blue, and \* green to \* yellow. Children  
*(c. art.) bleu m. vert m. jaune m. (d. art.) enfant pl.*  
 (are fond) of kites. (He broke) all the bottles  
*aiment \* (d. art.) cerf-volant pl. il a cassé toutes bouteille pl.*  
 and three demi-johns. All the fish-carriers were wrecked.  
*trois dame-jeanne pl. tous chasse-marée pl. firent naufrage.*

## LESSON VII.

## OF THE ADJECTIVE.

The *Adjective* is a word generally added to a noun, or pronoun, to express its quality; as, *bon*, good; *beau*, handsome, &c.

Adjectives may be divided into four classes, namely: *common*, *proper*, *numeral* and *participial*.

A *common adjective* is that which expresses a common epithet; as, *grand*, great; *petit*, small, &c.

A *proper adjective* is that which is formed from a proper name; as, *Américain*, American; *Platonique*, Platonic, *Parisien*, Parisian, &c.

A *numeral adjective* is that which expresses a definite number. Numeral adjectives are of two kinds, namely:

1. *Cardinal*; as *un*, one; *deux*, two; *trois*, three, &c.
2. *Ordinal*; as, *premier*, first; *second*, second; *troisième*, third, &c.

A *participial adjective* is that which has the form of a participle; as, *amusant*, amusing; *poli*, polite; *sensé*, sensible, &c.

A word is known to be an adjective, whenever it can be joined with propriety to the word *personne*, person, or *chose*, thing; for instance, *charitable* and *difficile*, are two adjectives, because we may say *personne charitable*, a charitable person; *chose difficile*, a difficult thing, &c.

In English the only variation which adjectives admit of, is that of the degrees of comparison. In French, they are not only subject to the degrees of comparison, but they take also the gender and number of the substantives to which they belong, and like the substantives, are liable to many rules and exceptions.

## FORMATION OF THE FEMININE.

### OF FRENCH ADJECTIVES.

**RULE 1.** All adjectives ending in the singular, in *e* mute, are of both genders; *traître*, traitor, being the only exception to this rule, whose feminine is *traîtresse*, traitress.

#### MASCULINE SING. FEMININE SING.

<i>homme jeune,</i>	<i>femme jeune,</i>	a young man, or woman.
<i>homme riche,</i>	<i>femme riche,</i>	a rich man, or woman.
<i>homme aimable,</i>	<i>femme aimable,</i>	an amiable man, or woman.

**RULE 2.** All adjectives which do not end in *e* mute, require an *e* mute to form their feminine: Examples:

<i>ainé,</i>	<i>ainée;</i>	eldest.
<i>joli,</i>	<i>jolie;</i>	pretty.
<i> vrai,</i>	<i> vraie;</i>	true.
<i>bossu,</i>	<i>bossue;</i>	humpbacked.
<i>lourd,</i>	<i>lourde;</i>	heavy.
<i>grand,</i>	<i>grande;*</i>	great.
<i>subtil,</i>	<i>subtile;</i>	subtle.
<i>seul,</i>	<i>seule;</i>	alone.
<i>certain,</i>	<i>certaine;</i>	certain.
<i>chagrin,</i>	<i>chagrine;</i>	sad.
<i>méchant,</i>	<i>méchante;</i>	wicked.
<i>prudent,</i>	<i>prudente;</i>	prudent.
<i>saint,</i>	<i>sainte;</i>	holy.
<i>petit,</i>	<i>petite;</i>	small.
<i>fort,</i>	<i>forte;</i>	strong.
<i>dérot, &amp;c.</i>	<i>dérote; &amp;c.</i>	pious.

But *favori*, (favourite), has for its feminine *favorite*; *coi* (still, snug), *coite*; *gentil*, (genteel), *gentille*; *benin*, (benign), *benigne*, and *malin*, (malignant), *maligne*.

---

\* When the feminine adjective *Grande*, is prefixed to a noun beginning with a consonant, the final *e* is generally omitted in French, both in the pronunciation and writing, and superseded by an apostrophe, thus: *J'ai grand' faim*, *grand' soif*, *et grand' peur*; I am very hungry, very thirsty, and very much afraid.

Should, however, the adjective *grand'*, be preceded by an *article*, or *possessive pronoun*, in the feminine gender, as *une*, *la*, *ma*, *ta*, *sa*, &c. or by *cette*, (this or that); *plus*, (more); *très*, *fort*, (very), then the elision ceases, and the final *e* mute is added; Ex. *une grande chambre*, a large room, *ma plus grande peine*, my greatest trouble; *cette grande messe*, that high mass, &c.

In *grand' mère*, grand-mother, and *grand' tante*, great-aunt, *grande* is always spelled with an apostrophe.

## EXCEPTIONS.

EXCEPTION 1. Adjectives ending in *el, eil, ien, on, as, et*, to form their feminine, double their last consonant and take *e* mute : Examples :

MASCULINE SING.	FEMININE SING.	
<i>cruel,</i>	<i>cruelle,</i>	cruel.
<i>pareil,</i>	<i>pareille,</i>	like.
<i>ancien,</i>	<i>ancienne,</i>	ancient.
<i>bon,</i>	<i>bonne,</i>	good.
<i>gras,</i>	<i>grasse,</i>	fat.
<i>net,</i>	<i>nette,</i>	clean.

The following adjectives in *et*, form their feminine in *ète* ; namely : *concret, concrète*, (concrete) ; *discret, discrète*, (discreet) ; *complet, complète*, (complete) ; *inquiet, inquiète*, (uneasy) ; *secret, secrète*, (secret) ; *suret, surète*, (sourish) ; and their compounds.

To these may be added, the following feminine adjectives, namely : *belle*, fine ; *nouvelle*, new ; *vieille*, old ; *folle*, mad ; *molle*, soft ; each of them having two masculines singular, thus : *bel, nouvel, vieil, fol, mol*, when prefixed to a vowel, or *h* mute, and *beau, nouveau, vieux, fou, mou*, before a consonant, or *h* aspirated.

*Tranquille*, quiet, and *fidelle* or *fidèle*, faithful, are spelled alike in both genders ; but *ras*, (close or shorn), makes in the feminine *rase* ; *gros*, (big), *grosse* ; *jumeau*, (twin), *jumelle* ; *sot*, (silly), *sotte* ; *nul*, (none), *nulle* ; *épais*, (thick), makes *épaisse*.

EXCEPTION 2. Adjectives in *c*, take *he* to form their feminine : Examples :

<i>blanc,</i>	<i>blanche,</i>	white.
<i>franc,</i>	<i>franche,</i>	frank.
<i>sec,</i>	<i>sèche,</i>	dry.

But *public*, (public) ; *caduc*, (decrepit), and *turc*, (turkish), make in the feminine *publique, caduque, turque* ; *grec*, (greek), makes *grecque*, and *fraîs*, (fresh), makes *fraîche*.

EXCEPTION 3. Adjectives in *f*, change this letter into *v*, and take *e* mute : Examples :

<i>bref,</i>	<i>brève,</i>	short.
<i>naïf,</i>	<i>naïve,</i>	ingenuous.
<i>vif,</i>	<i>vive,</i>	quick.
<i>neuf,</i>	<i>neuve,</i>	new.

EXCEPTION 4. Adjectives in *er*, change this termination into *ère*, to form their feminine : Examples :

<i>premier,</i>	<i>première,</i>	first.
<i>passager,</i>	<i>passagère,</i>	transient.
<i>singulier,</i>	<i>singulière,</i>	singular.

EXCEPTION 5. Adjectives in *eur*, (derived from verbs), change this termination into *euse*, to form their feminine: Examples :

<i>trompeur</i> ,	<i>trompeuse</i> ,	deceitful.
<i>flatteur</i> ,	<i>flatteuse</i> ,	flattering.
<i>voyageur</i> ,	<i>voyageuse</i> ,	travelling.

But adjectives in *eur*, expressing a comparison, form their feminine by adding *e* mute; as, *meilleur*, (better); *supérieur*, (superior), &c. feminine *meilleure*, *supérieure*, &c.

Remark.—There are some substantives ending in *eur*, which are often used as adjectives; their feminine is formed by changing this termination into *rice* or *cresse*; as, *acteur*, (actor), feminine, *actrice*, (actress); *vengeur*, (avenging), feminine, *vengeresse*, &c.

EXCEPTION 6. Adjectives in *x*, change this letter into *s*, and take *c* mute to form their feminine: Examples :

<i>heureux</i> ,	<i>heureuse</i> ,	happy.
<i>curieux</i> ,	<i>curieuse</i> ,	curious.
<i>jalous</i> ,	<i>jalouse</i> ,	jealous.

But *doux*, (sweet), makes in the feminine *douce*; *roux*, (red or ruddy), *rousse*, and *faux*, (false), *fausse*.

### EXERCISE.

She is pretty, tall and well formed; her grand-mother is  
*elle est jolie f. grand f. bien fait f. sa grand f. mère*  
 poor, but she is honest; (I have) a new scholar who is  
*pauvre f. mais honnête f. j'ai nouveau f. écolière f. qui*  
 very studious; you have there a very fine ring; (that is)  
*très studieux f. vous avez là fort beau f. bague f. voilà*  
 a fine horse; Hope is often deceitful; Your pear is  
*m. cheval m. (d. art.) espérance souvent trompeur f. votre poire*  
 too hard and mine is too soft; 'This pen is<sup>2</sup> 'not<sup>3</sup> a  
*trop dur f. (la mienne) mou f. \* cette plume (ne pas) \**  
 good one; 'That (French lady) is a very bad actress;  
*bon f. \* cette français f. bien mauvais f. acteur f.*  
 She is more attentive than her sister; her manners are  
*plus attentif f. que sa sœur ses manières sont*  
 natural; That woman is jealous and capricious; (It is) a  
*naï f. pl. cette jaloux f. capricieux f. c'est*  
 foolish undertaking; She is (of a) benevolent<sup>2</sup> character<sup>1</sup>  
*sot f. entreprise elle a \* benin f. (d. art) humeur f. h. m.*

## LESSON VIII.

### FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF FRENCH ADJECTIVES.

**GENERAL RULE.**—The plural number, in *French Adjectives*, is generally formed by adding an *s* to the singular; as, *affable*, *cruel*, *prudent*, plural *affables*, *cruels*, *prudents*, or *prudens*.

There is no exception to this rule, with regard to the *feminine gender*; but the *masculine gender* has the five following:

#### EXCEPTIONS.

**Exception 1.** Masculine adjectives ending in *s* or *x*, have their *singular* and *plural* alike: **Ex.**

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.				
m.	<i>las,</i> <i>gris,</i> <i>doux,</i> <i>envieux,</i>	f.	<i>lasse;</i> <i>grise;</i> <i>douce;</i> <i>envieuse;</i>	m. <i>las,</i> <i>gris,</i> <i>doux,</i> <i>envieux,</i>	f. <i>lasses;</i> <i>grises;</i> <i>douces;</i> <i>envieuses;</i>	tired. grey. sweet. envious.

2. Masculine adjectives ending in *au*, in the singular, form their plural by adding *x*: **Ex.**

m.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{beau}, \\ \textit{nouveau}, \end{array} \right.$	f.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{belle}; \\ \textit{nouvelle}; \end{array} \right.$	m.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{beaux}, \\ \textit{nouveaux}, \end{array} \right.$	f.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{belles}; \\ \textit{nouvelles}; \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{fine.} \\ \textit{new.} \end{array} \right.$
----	--	----	--	----	--	----	--	--

3. Adjectives in *al*, change this termination into *aux*, to form their plural masculine: **Ex.**

m.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{original}, \\ \textit{principal}; \end{array} \right.$	f.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{originale}; \\ \textit{principale}; \end{array} \right.$	m.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{originaux}, \\ \textit{principaux}, \end{array} \right.$	f.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{originales}; \\ \textit{principales}; \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{original.} \\ \textit{principal.} \end{array} \right.$
----	--	----	--	----	--	----	--	--

4. The following adjectives in *al*, have no plural masculine, viz: *amical*, *austral*, *boréal*, *canonial*, *diamétral* *fatal*, *filial*, *final*, *frugal*, *jovial*, *littéral*, *lustral*, *matinal*, *naval*, *pascal*, *trivial*, *vénal*, and perhaps a few others. It is, therefore, impossible to put the two following masculine sentences in the plural: *un combat naval*, a sea fight; *un cœur vénal*, a venal heart; because *naval* and *vénal*, are two adjectives, which can never be joined to a substantive *masculine plural*. The French, in order to obviate this, make use, in similar cases, of a substantive of the *feminine gender*, which being synonymous, or nearly synonymous, conveys the same meaning; as, *des batailles navales*, naval battles; *des âmes vénales*, venal souls, or hearts.

5. Adjectives of one syllable, or *monosyllables* ending in *ant* or *ent*, take an *s* to form their plural masculine; but *polysyllables*, follow the rule already given for all substantives of the same

termination, (see page 22). The masculine adjective *tout*, all, makes in the plural *tous*; its feminine is *toute*, and plural *toutes*: Ex.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
m.	<i>lent,</i>	m.	<i>lents,</i>
f.	<i>éloquent,</i>	f.	<i>éloquentes;</i>
	<i>méchant,</i>		<i>méchantes;</i>
	<i>lente;</i>		<i>éloquentes;</i>
	<i>éloquente;</i>		<i>méchantes;</i>
	<i>méchante;</i>		

slow.  
eloquent.  
wicked.

## AGREEMENT

OF THE ARTICLE AND ADJECTIVE WITH THE SUBSTANTIVE.

In French, the *article* and *adjective*, always agree in gender and number with the *substantive* to which they belong.

### EXAMPLES :

m. s.	<i>le bon</i>	<i>Monsieur,</i>	the good Gentleman.
f. s.	<i>la bonne</i>	<i>Dame,</i>	the good Lady.
m. pl.	<i>les bons</i>	<i>Messieurs,</i>	the good Gentlemen.
f. pl.	<i>les bonnes</i>	<i>Dames,</i>	the good Ladies.

### EXERCISE.

The poor are sometimes happier than the  
*pauvre pl. sont quelquefois (plus heureux) pl. que*  
 rich. (Napoleon's generals) were all good soldiers.  
*riche pl. (d. art.) général pl. de Napoléon étaient tout pl. bon pl. soldat pl.*  
 Women are cheerful and witty. Men are  
*(d. art.) femme pl. gai f. pl. spirituel f. pl. (d. art.) homme pl.*  
 courageous and enterprising. The good (shall be)  
*courageux m. pl. entreprenant m. pl. bon m. pl. seront*  
 rewarded; The wicked (shall be) punished. The  
*récompensé m. pl. méchant m. pl. puni m. pl.*  
 French are affable; the Americans are frank; the  
*Français m. pl. ——— pl. Américain m. pl. franc m. pl.*  
 English are generous. All \* men are equal in  
*Anglais m. pl. généreux m. pl. (d. art.) égal m. pl. d*  
 the eyes of \* Justice. These two lines are<sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>not<sup>3</sup>  
*œil pl. (c. art.) ——— f. s. ces deux ligne pl. (ne pas)*  
 equal. These are fatal accidents.†  
*égal f. pl. ce de ——— pl. ——— m. pl.*

## LESSON IX.

### OF THE DEGREES OF SIGNIFICATION OF THE ADJECTIVES.

The adjectives have three degrees of signification, viz: the *positive*, the *comparative*, and the *superlative*.

† Rencontre f. pl.



The *positive degree*, is that form of the adjective, which expresses the quality of an object without any *increase* or *diminution*; as, *un homme brave*, a courageous man; *un enfant docile*, a docile child.

The *comparative degree*, is that form of the adjective, which expresses the quality of an object with *equability*, *increase*, or *diminution*; hence, there are three sorts of comparatives, that of *equality*, *superiority* and *inferiority*.

The comparative of *equality*, is formed by putting *aussi*, as, before the adjective, and *que*, as, after it: Ex. *Votre sœur est AUSSI, grande QUE vous*. Your sister is *as* tall *as* you.

The comparative of *superiority*, is formed by putting *plus*, more, before the adjective, and *que*, than, after it: Ex. *Jean est PLUS sage QUE Thomas*, John is *wiser than* Thomas, (for more wise.)

The comparative of *inferiority*, is formed by putting *moins*, less, before the adjective, and *que*, than, after it: Ex. *La fille est MOINS belle QUE la mère*, the daughter is *less* beautiful *than* the mother.

*Remark.*—The three adjectives *meilleur*, better; *moindre*, less; *pire*, worse; are comparatives in themselves, and generally employed instead of *plus bon*, *plus petit*, *plus mauvais*, the first of which (*plus bon*) is never used; *plus petit* signifies (smaller), and *plus mauvais*, (worse), means sometimes (more wicked).

The *superlative degree*, is that form of the adjective, which expresses the quality of an object in a *very high*, or in the *highest* state; hence, there are two sorts of superlatives, viz: the *absolute* and the *relative*.

The *superlative absolute*, expresses the quality of an object in a *very high* degree, without reference to any other person, or thing; it is formed by prefixing to the adjective, the adverbs *très*, *fort*, or *bien*, (very): Ex. *Paris est TRÈS beau, FORT grand, et BIEN amusant*, Paris is very beautiful, large, and entertaining.

The *superlative relative*, expresses the quality of an object in the *highest* degree, with reference to some other person, or thing; it is formed by putting the words *le*, *la*, *les*; *mon*, *ton*, *son*; *ma*, *ta*, *sa*; *mes*, *tes*, *ses*; *notre*, *votre*, *leur*; *nos*, *vos*, *leurs*; before *meilleur*, *moindre*, *pire*, *plus*, or *moins*: Ex.

<i>mon meilleur ami,</i>	my best friend.
<i>sa moindre dépense,</i>	his least expense.
<i>le pire de nos ennemis,</i>	the worst of our enemies.
<i>leur plus grand crime,</i>	their greatest crime.
<i>votre moins belle parure,</i>	your least handsome ornament.

*Remark.*—The terminations *r* or *er*, and *st* or *est*, adopted in English to express the different degrees of the signification of adjectives, are never used in French. The following examples will aid the Learner, in surmounting all the difficulties which may present themselves, in the following and subsequent exercises, viz :

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
{ <i>grand</i> ,	<i>plus grand</i> ,	<i>le plus grand</i> .
{ <i>great</i> ,	<i>greater</i> ,	the greatest.
{ <i>aimable</i> ,	<i>plus aimable</i> ,	<i>le plus aimable</i> .
{ <i>amiable</i> ,	<i>more amiable</i> ,	the most amiable.
{ <i>bon</i> ,	<i>meilleur</i> ,	<i>le meilleur</i> .
{ <i>good</i> ,	<i>better</i> ,	the best.
{ <i>mauvais</i> ,	<i>plus mauvais</i> or <i>pire</i> ,	<i>le plus mauvais</i> , or <i>le pire</i> .
{ <i>bad</i> ,	<i>worse</i> ,	the worst.
{ <i>petit</i> ,	<i>plus petit</i> , or <i>moindre</i> ,	<i>le plus petit</i> , or <i>le moindre</i> .
{ <i>small</i> ,	<i>smaller</i> , or <i>less</i> ,	the smallest, or least.

We may add to this list, the three following comparative adverbs, *mieux*, *pis*, and *moins*, which are generally rendered in English, by the words *better*, *worse* and *less*. The Learner will not confound them with the comparative adjective *meilleur*, *pire*, and *moindre*, which are translated by the same words : Ex.

{ <i>bien</i> ,	<i>mieux</i> ,	<i>le mieux</i> .
{ <i>well</i> ,	<i>better</i> ,	the best.
{ <i>mal</i> ,	<i>pis</i> ,	<i>le pis</i> .
{ <i>bad</i> ,	<i>worse</i> ,	the worst.
{ <i>peu</i> ,	<i>moins</i> ,	<i>le moins</i> .
{ <i>little</i> ,	<i>less</i> ,	the least.

### EXERCISE.

Italian<sup>2</sup> music<sup>1</sup> is soft and harmonious. Cæsar was  
*Italien f. (d. art.) musique f. est doux f. harmonieux f. César était*  
 as ambitious as Alexander. She is taller (*more tall*) than her  
*ambitieux Alexandre elle son*  
 brother. Mr. P. is less prudent than you. My house is  
*Monsieur P. vous ma maison*  
 small, but yours is still smaller. That work is very well  
*petit f. mais (la vôtre) encore f. cet ouvrage bien*  
 written. This little girl is very reasonable. Your pen is  
*écrit m. cette petit f. fille f. raisonnable f. votre plume f.*  
 better than mine. She (gets angry) at the least thing. In  
*f. (la mienne) se fâche de chose f. en*  
 winter the roads are worse (*more bad*) than in summer. The  
*hiver route f. pl. été*  
 remedy is worse than the disease. The lion is the strongest  
*remède m. mal m. s. m. s.*  
 (*more strong*) and most courageous of all animals.  
*courageux m. s. (d. art.) m. pl.*  
 Miss D. is<sup>1</sup> the mildest and politest person<sup>2</sup>  
*Mademoiselle D. doux f. s. (d. art.) poli f. s. (d. art.) personne f.*  
 (I know).  
*que je connaisse.*



## LESSON X.

## OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

Numeral Adjectives, (as we have already observed page 23,) are those which express a definite number. They are divided into *cardinal* and *ordinal*, as follows:

## CARDINAL NUMBERS,

relate only to quantity.

The *ordinal* are formed from the *cardinal* by adding *ième*.

1. *un* m. *une* f.
2. *deux* (*x* is silent)
3. *trois* (*s* is silent)
4. *quatre* (pronounced *catre*)
5. *cinq* (*q* hard)
6. *six* (pron. *siss*)
7. *sept* (pron. *set*)
8. *huit* (*h* is silent, *t* hard)
9. *neuf* (*f* hard)
10. *dix* (pron. *diss*)
11. *onze*
12. *douze*
13. *treize* (*ei* sound. *è*)
14. *quatorze* (pron. *catorze*)
15. *quinze* (pron. *kainze*)
16. *seize* (*ei* sound. *è*)
17. *dix-sept* (*x* is silent)
18. *dix-huit* (pron. *dî-zuit*)
19. *dix-neuf*
20. *vingt* (*g* & *t* are silent)
21. *vingt-et-un* (*t* hard, *g* silent)
22. &c. *vingt-deux*, &c.
30. *trente* (*t* hard)
31. *trente-et-un*
32. &c. *trente-deux*, &c.
40. *quarante* (*t* hard)
41. *quarante-et-un*
42. &c. *quarante-deux*, &c.
50. *cinquante* (*t* hard)
51. *cinquante-et-un*
52. &c. *cinquante-deux*, &c.
60. *soixante* (pron. *soissante*)
61. *soixante-et-un* (*t* hard)
62. &c. *soixante-deux*, &c.
70. *soixante-et-dix*
71. *soixante-onze*
72. &c. *soixante-douze*, &c.
80. *quatre-vingts*
81. *quatre-vingt-un*
82. &c. *quatre-vingt-deux*, &c.
90. *quatre-vingt-dix*
91. *quatre-vingt-onze*
92. &c. *quatre-vingt-douze*, &c.
100. *cent* (pron. *san*)
101. *cent un* (*t* is silent)
102. &c. *cent deux*, &c.
- 1,000. *mille*
- 2,000. *deux mille*
- 3,000. &c. *trois mille*, &c.
- 10,000. &c. *dix mille*, &c.
- 100,000. &c. *cent mille*, &c.
- 1,000,000. &c. *un million*, &c.

## ORDINAL NUMBERS,

relate to the order, or rank, in which persons and things

are supposed to be placed, or to stand.

- 1st. *unième*, or *premier*.
- 2d. *deuxième*, or *second*.
- 3d. *troisième*.
- 4th. *quatrième*.
- 5th. *cinquième*.
- 6th. *sixième*.
- 7th. *septième*.
- 8th. *huitième*.
- 9th. *neuvième*.
- 10th. *dixième*.
- 11th. *onzième*.
- 12th. *douzième*.
- 13th. *treizième*.
- 14th. *quatorzième*.
- 15th. *quinzième*.
- 16th. *seizième*.
- 17th. *dix-septième*.
- 18th. *dix-huitième*.
- 19th. *dix-neuvième*.
- 20th. *vingtième*.
- 21st. *vingt-et-unième*.
- 22d. &c. *vingt-deuxième*, &c.
- 30th. *trentième*.
- 31st. *trente-et-unième*.
- 32d. &c. *trente-deuxième*, &c.
- 40th. *quarantième*.
- 41st. *quarante-et-unième*.
- 42d. &c. *quarante-deuxième*, &c.
- 50th. *cinquantième*.
- 51st. *cinquante-et-unième*.
- 52d. &c. *cinquante-deuxième*, &c.
- 60th. *soixantième*.
- 61st. *soixante-et-unième*.
- 62d. &c. *soixante-deuxième*, &c.
- 70th. *soixante-et-dixième*.
- 71st. *soixante-onzième*.
- 72d. &c. *soixante-douzième*, &c.
- 80th. *quatre-vingtième*.
- 81st. *quatre-vingt-unième*.
- 82d. &c. *quatre-vingt-deuxième*, &c.
- 90th. *quatre-vingt-dixième*.
- 91st. *quatre-vingt-onzième*.
- 92d. &c. *quatre-vingt-douzième*, &c.
- 100th. *centième*.
- 101st. *cent unième*.
- 102d. &c. *cent deuxième*, &c.
- 1,000th. *millième*.
- 2,000th. *deux millième*.
- 3,000th. &c. *trois millième*, &c.
- 10,000th. &c. *dix millième*, &c.
- 100,000th. &c. *cent millième*, &c.
- 1,000,000th. &c. *millionième*, &c.

## OBSERVATIONS

UPON SOME OF THE CARDINAL AND ORDINAL NUMBERS.

*Unième*, (first), is only used in compound numbers; as, *vingt-et-unième*, twenty-first; *trente-et-unième*, thirty-first, &c. But *deuxième* and *second*, are employed indiscriminately, except in compound numbers, in which *second* is never admitted.

*Quatre*, and generally all *cardinal numbers* ending in *e* mute, from their *ordinal* by changing this termination into *ième*; as, *quatre*, *quatrième*; *onze*, *onzième*; *trente*, *trentième*, &c.

*Neuf*, and all its compounds, such as *dix-neuf*, *vingt-neuf*, &c. form their *ordinal numbers*, by changing their final *f* into *vième*: Ex. *neuf*, *neuvième*; *dix-neuf*, *dix-neuvième*, &c.

*Quatre-vingts*, does not take *s*, when followed by another number; we may say, for example, *quatre-vingts ans*, eighty years; *quatre-vingts hommes*, eighty men; but in *quatre-vingt-deux ans*, *quatre-vingt-deux hommes*, the *s* is omitted.

*Cent* follows the same rule as *quatre-vingts*, and takes an *s* in the plural; as, *deux cents élèves*, two-hundred pupils; *neuf cents soldats*, nine hundred soldiers; but *cent* followed by another number does not take the mark of the plural; thus, we write without *s* *deux cent deux élèves*, two hundred and two pupils; *neuf cent un soldats*, nine hundred and one soldiers, &c.

*Mille*, (a thousand), never takes *s*; but *mille*, (a mile), takes an *s* in the plural: Ex. *trois mille maisons*, three thousand houses; *trois milles font une lieue*, three miles make a league.

*Mil* instead of *mille*, is used for mentioning the christian *era*; as, *L'an mil huit cent trente-deux*, the year one thousand eight hundred and thirty-two.

Besides these two kinds of numbers, there are the following, which belong to the class of substantives, viz: the *Collective*, the *Distributive*, and the *Proportional*.

The *Collective number* denotes a collection, or a determinate quantity of persons or things; as, *une douzaine*, a dozen; *une vingtaine*, a score; *une centaine*, five score, &c.

The *Distributive number* expresses the different parts of a whole; as, *la moitié*, the half; *le tiers*, the third; *le quart*, the fourth or quarter; *le cinquième*, the fifth; &c. to which add the ordinal numbers *sixième*, *septième*, *huitième*, &c. which are also distributive.

The *Proportional number* is that which signifies increase, or progression; as, *le double*, the double, *le triple*, the triple; *le quadruple*, the quadruple, or four-fold; *le quintuple*, five-fold, &c.

## EXERCISE.

My uncle gave<sup>2</sup> me<sup>1</sup> five dollars, and my father ten. I  
 mon (a donné) me piastre pl. mon je  
 bought two dozen knives, three dozen forks, and twenty  
 (ai acheté) pl. de couteau pl. de fourchette pl.  
 one silver<sup>2</sup> spoons.<sup>1</sup> When you (have read) the first and<sup>2</sup>,  
 f. de argent cuillère pl. quand vous aurez lu m. s.  
 second<sup>3</sup> volumes,<sup>1</sup> I (will lend)<sup>2</sup> you<sup>1</sup> the third and  
 (d. art.) ——— m. s. ——— m. s. prêterai m. s.  
 fourth. Learn by heart the first and twenty-first  
 (d. art.) m. s. apprenez par cœur f. s. (d. art.) f. s.

pages of your Grammar. Napoleon landed at Frejus on the  
 — f. s. votre Grammaire. — débarqua à — \*  
 first of March one thousand eight hundred and fifteen, with  
 m. s. \* \* \* avec  
 six hundred men, and entered Paris on the twentieth,  
 entra dans — \* (cardin. numb.)  
 with an army of thirty thousand, after travelling six hun-  
 avec armée f. après (avoir fait)  
 dred miles in twenty days. The independence of the United<sup>2</sup>  
 en pl. Independence f. s. Unis  
 States<sup>1</sup> of America, was declared on the fourth of July  
 Etats Amérique fut déclarée \* (cardin. numb.) \* Juillet  
 one thousand seven hundred and seventy six, by a National<sup>2</sup>  
 \* \* par —  
 Congress<sup>1</sup> composed of fifty six representatives.  
 Congrès m. s. composé représentans.

## LESSON XI.

### OF THE PRONOUN.

The Pronoun is a word which takes the place of a noun, to avoid its repetition; as, *Charles est très studieux; IL a de longues leçons, et IL les apprend bien.* Charles is very studious; he has long lessons, and he learns them well. Instead of *CHARLES est très studieux; CHARLES a de longues leçons, et CHARLES les apprend bien.*

There are six different kinds of pronouns; viz. the *personal*, the *possessive*, the *relative*, the *interrogative*, the *demonstrative*, and the *indefinite*.

### OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

*Personal pronouns* are used for the names of *persons*, or *things*.

There are but three persons: The first person *speaks*; the second is *spoken to*; and the third is the person, or thing *spoken of*.

Personal pronouns admit of *gender*, *number* and *case*.

### PRONOUNS OF THE FIRST PERSON.

These pronouns are both *masculine* and *feminine*, that is, of the same gender as the *person*, or *persons* they represent.

## EXAMPLES :

SINGULAR.		
NOMINATIVE.	<i>je</i>	I,
	<i>moi</i>	I,
	PLURAL.	
	<i>nous</i>	we,
	<i>je parle,</i>	I speak.
	<i>moi qui parle,</i>	I who speak.
	<i>nous parlons,</i>	we speak.
SINGULAR.		
OBJECTIVE.	<i>me</i>	me,
	<i>moi</i>	me,
	PLURAL.	
	<i>nous</i>	us,
	<i>il me voit,</i>	he sees me.
	<i>il me parle,</i>	he speaks to me.
	<i>il parle de moi,</i>	he speaks of me.
	<i>il nous voit,</i>	he sees us.
	<i>il nous parle,</i>	he speaks to us.
	<i>il parle de nous,</i>	he speaks of us.

## PRONOUNS OF THE SECOND PERSON.

These pronouns also apply to both genders. They are *masculine*, when a man speaks, and *feminine*, when a woman.

## EXAMPLES :

SINGULAR.		
NOMINATIVE.	<i>tu</i>	thou,
	<i>toi</i>	thou,
	PLURAL.	
	<i>*vous</i>	ye or you,
	<i>tu parles,</i>	thou speakest.
	<i>toi qui parles,</i>	thou who speakest.
	<i>vous parlez,</i>	ye or you speak.
SINGULAR.		
OBJECTIVE.	<i>te</i>	thee,
	<i>toi</i>	thee,
	PLURAL.	
	<i>*vous</i>	ye or you,
	<i>il te voit,</i>	he sees thee.
	<i>il te parle,</i>	he speaks to thee.
	<i>il parle de toi,</i>	he speaks of thee.
	<i>il vous voit,</i>	he sees ye or you.
	<i>il vous parle,</i>	he speaks to ye or you.
	<i>il parle de vous,</i>	he speaks of ye or you.

## PRONOUNS OF THE THIRD PERSON.

These pronouns are different from the other two kinds, which only refer to persons : These apply both to *persons* and *things*, and should always agree in *gender* and *number* with the *person* or *thing*, whose place they supply.

## EXAMPLES :

SINGULAR.		
NOM.	<i>il m.</i>	he,
	<i>lui m.</i>	he,
	<i>il m.</i>	it,
	<i>elle f.</i>	she,
	<i>elle f.</i>	it,
	PLURAL.	
	<i>ils m.</i>	they,
	<i>eux m.</i>	they,
	<i>elles f.</i>	they,
	<i>il parle,</i>	he speaks.
	<i>lui qui parle,</i>	he who speaks.
	<i>il croit, (as a tree) m.</i>	it grows.
	<i>elle parle,</i>	she speaks.
	<i>elle qui parle,</i>	she who speaks.
	<i>elle croit, (as a plant) f.</i>	it grows.
	<i>ils parlent,</i>	they speak.
	<i>eux qui parlent,</i>	they who speak.
	<i>elles parlent,</i>	they speak.
	<i>elles qui parlent,</i>	they who speak.

\* Politeness has led to the use of the plural *vous*, instead of the singular *tu* ; as, *mon frère vous vous trompez*, (brother you are mistaken), for *mon frère tu te trompes*.

## SINGULAR.

OBJ.	le m.	him,	<i>Je le vois, (a man)</i>	I see him.
	le m.	it,	<i>Je le vois, (a tree,) m.</i>	I see it.
	lui m.	him,	<i>Je lui dis,</i>	I tell him.
		to him,	<i>Je lui parle,</i>	I speak to him.
		of him,	<i>Je parle de lui,</i>	I speak of him, or of it.
	la f.	her,	<i>Je la vois, (a woman)</i>	I see her.
	la f.	it,	<i>Je la vois, (a house) f.</i>	I see it.
	lui f.	her,	<i>Je lui dis,</i>	I tell her.
		to her,	<i>Je lui parle,</i>	I speak to her.
	elle f.	of her,	<i>Je parle d'elle.</i>	I speak of her, or of it.
PLURAL.				
	les m. & f.	them,	<i>Je les vois,</i>	I see them.
	leur m. & f.	them,	<i>Je leur dis,</i>	I tell them.
		to them,	<i>Je leur parle,</i>	I speak to them.
	eux m.	of them,	<i>Je parle d'eux,</i>	I speak of them.
	elles f.	of them,	<i>Je parle d'elles,</i>	I speak of them.

There are two other pronouns of the third person, both *singular* and *plural*, and belonging to *both genders*. They are always used in the objective case, viz :

*se*, (before a verb) } oneself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves,  
*soi*, (after a verb) } themselves, each other, one another, &c.

N.B. The word *même*, (self), is sometimes added to the personal pronouns *moi*, *toi*, *soi*, *nous*, *vous*, *lui*, &c. and forms a kind of compound pronoun, which specifies more particularly the person, or persons spoken of; as, *moi-même*, (myself); *toi-même*, (thyself); *soi-même*, (oneself); *nous-mêmes*, (ourselves); *vous-mêmes*, (yourselves); &c.

## EXERCISE.

I (will do)<sup>2</sup> it<sup>1</sup> if I can. I who loved<sup>2</sup> him<sup>1</sup> so tenderly!  
*ferai m. si (le puis) qui aimais si tendrement*  
 thou art a rogue, and I (will have)<sup>2</sup> thee<sup>1</sup> hung. It is<sup>2</sup>  
*es coquin m. ferai pendre Ce*  
<sup>1</sup>neither<sup>3</sup> I, nor thou, nor he who has broken the glasses;  
*ne ni ni qui avons cassé verre pl.*  
 but it is she who has<sup>2</sup> done<sup>3</sup> it<sup>1</sup>. He is older than I, by two  
*mais a fait (plus âgé) de*  
 years; but I am taller than he, by six inches. She writes<sup>2</sup>  
*an pl. mais suis de ponce pl. écrit*  
 (to her)<sup>1</sup> three times a week. How amiable<sup>3</sup> you<sup>1</sup> are<sup>2</sup>  
*fois par semaine que aimable êtes*  
 (to have thought) of us! I (will see)<sup>2</sup> them<sup>1</sup>; but I shall  
*de vous être occupé verrai mais \**  
<sup>1</sup>not<sup>4</sup> speak<sup>3</sup> (to them)<sup>2</sup>. What (has been said) of them?  
*ne pas parlerai que a-t-on dit m.*  
 Were you<sup>2</sup> speaking<sup>1</sup> of them? I, speak<sup>2</sup> (to him)<sup>1</sup>! no, never.  
*\* parliez f. parler non jamais*  
 Who (is calling)<sup>2</sup> me<sup>1</sup>? it is I. My father wishes (to speak)<sup>2</sup>  
*qui appelle ce est mon désire*



(to you)<sup>1</sup>. Tell him that, if he desires (to see)<sup>2</sup> me,<sup>1</sup> he  
 (must come) <sup>dites</sup> himself. She <sup>que</sup> gives<sup>2</sup> <sup>si</sup> herself<sup>1</sup> <sup>voir</sup> (a great deal) of  
<sup>faut que il vienne</sup> trouble. He <sup>m.</sup> tires<sup>2</sup> himself<sup>1</sup>. People should (very seldom) speak  
<sup>peine</sup> of themselves. <sup>lasse</sup> <sup>on</sup> <sup>doit</sup> <sup>rarement</sup> <sup>parler</sup>

## LESSON XII.

### OF THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

*Possessive pronouns* are those which denote *property* or *possession*; as, *Voici MON livre, et voilà LE vôtre*. Here is *my* book, and there is *yours*. Instead of *Voici le livre (qui est à moi)*, and *voilà le livre (qui est à vous)*.

*Possessive pronouns* are divided into *absolute* and *relative*.

The *absolute* are so called, because they always precede the substantive to which they are joined, and agree with it in gender and number,\* for which reason they must be repeated before every noun in the same sentence: Ex:

*mon père, ma mère, et mes frères sont à la campagne*  
 My father, mother, and brothers are in the country.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	m	f.	m. and f.	
1st. pers.	<i>mon</i>	<i>ma</i>	<i>mes</i>	my.
2d.	<i>ton</i>	<i>ta</i>	<i>tes</i>	thy.
3d.	<i>son</i>	<i>sa</i>	<i>ses</i>	his, her, or its.
1st. pers.	<i>notre</i>	<i>notre</i>	<i>nos</i>	our.
2d.	<i>votre</i>	<i>votre</i>	<i>vos</i>	your.
3d.	<i>leur</i>	<i>leur</i>	<i>leurs</i>	their.

N. B. *Mon, ton, son*, instead of *ma, ta, sa*, are to be used before a noun feminine, beginning with a vowel, or *h* mute; thus, *mon ame*, (my soul), and not *ma ame*; *ton amitié*, (thy friendship), and not *ta amitié*; *son humeur*, (his humour), and not *sa humeur*; &c.

The *relative* are so called, because they always relate to, and agree with, a substantive already expressed, or sometimes understood, which is implied in the pronoun: Ex.

*Voici mon parapluie: prenez le vôtre, et laissez le sien.*  
 here is my umbrella: take yours, and leave his, or hers.

\* These pronouns, which, in English, agree with the *possessor*, must, in French, agree with the object *possessed*; so that, in speaking of a man, we should say *son âge*, (his age); of a woman, *son âge*, (her age), and of a thing, *son âge*, (its age), because the word *âge*, belongs to the masculine gender.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.		
	m.	f.	m.	f.	
1st. pers.	<i>le mien</i>	<i>la mienne</i>	<i>les miens</i>	<i>les miennes</i>	mine.
2d.	<i>le tien</i>	<i>la tienne</i>	<i>les tiens</i>	<i>les tiennes</i>	thine.
3d.	<i>le sien</i>	<i>la sienne</i>	<i>les siens</i>	<i>les siennes</i>	his, hers, or its.
1st. pers.	<i>le nôtre</i>	<i>la nôtre</i>	<i>les nôtres</i>	<i>les nôtres</i>	ours.
2d.	<i>le vôtre</i>	<i>la vôtre</i>	<i>les vôtres</i>	<i>les vôtres</i>	yours.
3d.	<i>le leur</i>	<i>la leur</i>	<i>les leurs</i>	<i>les leurs</i>	theirs.

N. B. When *notre* and *votre*, are preceded by an article, they take a circumflex accent over the *o*; thus, *le nôtre*, *la nôtre*, *les nôtres*; *du vôtre*, *de la vôtre*, *des vôtres*; *au nôtre*, *à la nôtre*, *aux nôtres*, &c. And when through politeness, *vous* is used instead of *tu*, then *votre* and *vos*, must take the place of *ton*, *tâtes*, and *le vôtre*, *la vôtre*, *les vôtres*, that of *le tien*, *la tienne*, *les tiens*, *les tiennes*.

## EXERCISE.

I have lost my Dictionary and Grammar. My paper  
*ai perdu m. s. (pron) f. s. papier m. s.*  
 ink and pens are in your desk. Lend me  
*(pron.) encr. f. s. (pron.) plume pl. sont dans pupitre m. s. prêtez-*  
 your scissors, for I do <sup>1</sup>not<sup>3</sup> know<sup>2</sup> where I have put mine.  
*ciseau m. pl car \* ne pas sais où ai mis m. pl.*  
 We have seen her father, mother and brothers in Paris. Your  
*avons vu père m. mère f. frère pl. à —*  
 progress, (will, depend) on your attention. Your house is  
*progress pl. dépendront de — maison f. s. est*  
 better than mine, but theirs is better than yours. My necklace  
*f. s. f. s. mais f. s. f. s. f. s. collier m. s.*  
 is prettier than yours, but yours is stronger than mine. Her  
*m. s. m. s. m. s. m. s.*  
 watch is smaller and richer than any of ours. Brother,  
*montre f. s. f. s. f. s. aucune f. pl. (pron.) frère m.*  
 are you sick? no sister. Good night father.  
*êtes- malade non (pron.) sœur f. bon soir (pron.) père*

## LESSON XIII.

## OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

*Relative pronouns* are those which relate to a preceding noun, or pronoun, called the antecedent; as, *La Dame qui joue*, the Lady *who* plays; *le Dieu que nous aimons*, the God *whom* we love. Here *qui* and *que* are relative pronouns, because they relate to the substantives *Dame* and *Dieu*, which are their antecedents.



*Relative pronouns* generally apply to *persons* and *things*, and always agree in *gender* and *number* with the substantives to which they refer; they are the following:

<i>qui</i> ,	(nominative)	who, which, or that.
<i>que</i> ,	(objective)	whom, which, or that.
<i>de qui</i> , or <i>dont</i> ,		of whom, whose, or of which.
<i>quoi</i> ,	(relates only to things)	what, or which.

The *interrogative* pronoun *quel*, (what), becomes a *relative* pronoun, when preceded by one of the articles *le*, *la*, *les*; *du*, *de la*, *des*; *au*, *à la*, *aux*, as follows:

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL

m. { <i>lequel</i> ,	{ <i>laquelle</i> ;	{ <i>lesquels</i> ,	{ <i>lesquelles</i> ;	which.
f. { <i>duquel</i> ,	{ <i>de laquelle</i> ;	m. { <i>desquels</i> ,	f. { <i>desquelles</i> ;	of which.
{ <i>auquel</i> ,	{ <i>à laquelle</i> ;	{ <i>auxquels</i> ,	{ <i>auxquelles</i> ;	to which.

The preposition *en*, and the adverbs *y* and *où*, are also frequently used as relative pronouns; they all apply to persons and things, and mark the *place*, *object*, or *cause* spoken of. These pronouns are of both *genders* and *numbers*, and rendered as follows:

*en*, of him, of her, of it, of them, hence, thence, &c.

*y*, to him, to her, to it, to them, here, there, &c.

*où*, at which, in which, with which, where, whence, &c.

## EXERCISE.

God is an<sup>1</sup> infinite<sup>3</sup> Being,<sup>2</sup> who sees all, who knows all,  
*Dieu est infini Etre m. s. voit tout sait*  
 and who is (every where). He is a man whom I love, whom  
*partout. ce aime*  
 I respect, and who well<sup>3</sup> deserves<sup>2</sup> it<sup>1</sup>. Do you<sup>2</sup> know<sup>1</sup> the  
*respecte bien mérite m. \* connaissez-*  
 Ladies (of whom) you speak? I know the person from whom  
*dames parlez connais personne f.*  
 you have this ring. That is a circumstance without which  
*tenez cette bague ce circonstance f. s. sans f. s.*  
 he had<sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>not<sup>3</sup> succeeded. That is an event upon which  
*eût ne pas réussi événement m. s. de m. s.*  
 depended his<sup>2</sup> whole<sup>1</sup> fortune<sup>3</sup>. That young man pleases<sup>2</sup>  
*dépendait tout f. s. — f. s. plaît*  
 you,<sup>1</sup> you speak<sup>2</sup> (of him)<sup>1</sup> often. He is an honest man,  
*parlez souvent ce honnête*  
 trust (to him). Come with me, I (will show)<sup>2</sup> you<sup>1</sup> the  
*(fiez-vous) venez avec montrerai*  
 house where (in which) I live.  
*maison f. s. \* demeure*

## LESSON XIV.

## OF THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

*Interrogative pronouns* are so called, because they are only used in asking questions; as, *QUI est là?* *who is there?* *QUE voulez-vous?* *what do you want?* These pronouns have no antecedent. They are the following:

*qui*, (applies only to persons) who, *or* whom.  
*à qui*, to whom, *or* whose.  
*que*, (applies to things) what.  
*quoi*, (applies to indeterminate objects only) what.

*quel*, (what), always precedes a substantive, with which it agrees in *gender* and *number*, as follows: *quel homme*, m. s. *quelle femme*, f. s. *quels hommes*, m. pl. *quelles femmes*, f. pl.

*Quel*, (which), preceded by one of the following articles: *le, la, les; du, de la, des; au, à la aux*; is generally used to mark a distinction between several objects, either expressed, or understood: Examples:

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

m. { <i>lequel</i> ,	f. { <i>laquelle</i> ;	m. { <i>lesquels</i> ,	f. { <i>lesquelles</i> ;	which. of which. to which.
<i>duquel</i> ,	<i>de laquelle</i> ;	<i>desquels</i> ,	<i>desquelles</i> ;	
<i>auquel</i> ,	<i>à laquelle</i> ;	<i>auxquels</i> ,	<i>auxquelles</i> ;	

Who knocks? Whom do you<sup>2</sup> seek<sup>1</sup>? What are you<sup>2</sup> doing<sup>1</sup>? What shall I<sup>3</sup> say<sup>2</sup> (to him)<sup>1</sup>? What is your name?

What do you<sup>2</sup> say<sup>1</sup>? What are your occupations? In what can I serve<sup>2</sup> you<sup>1</sup>? Which of these Ladies is the prettiest?

To which of these pictures do you<sup>2</sup> give<sup>1</sup> the preference?

I know well which I (would choose). Whose child<sup>3</sup> is<sup>1</sup> this<sup>3</sup>?

Whose books<sup>3</sup> are<sup>1</sup> these<sup>2</sup>? To whom shall I<sup>2</sup> apply<sup>1</sup>?

## LESSON XV.

## OF THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

*Demonstrative pronouns* are those which express, or point out, as it were, a particular *person* or *thing*. These pronouns are divided into two classes, viz :

THOSE ALWAYS JOINED TO A SUBSTANTIVE, AS

<i>ce</i> , m. s. (before a consonant, or <i>h</i> aspirated)	}	this, or that.
<i>cel</i> , m. s. (before a vowel, or <i>h</i> mute)		
<i>cette</i> , m. s. (before either)		
<i>ces</i> , m. and f. plural.		these, or those.

THOSE NEVER JOINED TO A SUBSTANTIVE, AS

<i>celui</i> , m. s. }	} this or that.	<i>celui qui</i> , he who, that which, &c.
<i>celle</i> , f. s. }		<i>celle qui</i> , she who, that which, &c.
<i>ceux</i> , m. pl. }	} these or those.	<i>ceux qui</i> , they who, those which, &c.
<i>celles</i> , f. pl. }		<i>celles qui</i> , they who, those which, &c.
<i>celui-ci</i> }	} m. s.	{ this (here)
<i>celui-là</i> }		{ that (there)
<i>celle-ci</i> }	} f. s.	{ this (here)
<i>celle-là</i> }		{ that (there)
<i>ceux-ci</i> }	} m. pl.	{ these (here)
<i>ceux-là</i> }		{ those (there)
<i>celles-ci</i> }	} f. pl.	{ these (here)
<i>celles-là</i> }		{ those (there)
<i>ce qui</i> , m. s. (Nominative)		} that which, or what.
<i>ce que</i> , m. s. (Objective)		

*ceci*, m. s. this, for *cette chose-ci*, this thing } N.B. These last four have no  
*celà*, m. s. that, for *cette chose-là*, that thing } plural, and generally refer to in-  
determinate objects.

REMARK.—The adverbs *ci* and *là*, are frequently added to the pronouns *ce*, *cel*, *cette*, and *ces*, to point out the object more forcibly, or to mark the distance; the substantive is then placed between them, as follows: *ce livre-ci*, this book, (here); *cet homme-là*, that man, (there); *ces maisons-ci*, these houses, (here); *ces montagnes-là*, those mountains, (there).

## EXERCISE.

This hat is too narrow. That man, that woman, and  
*chapeau m. trop étroit*  
those children are very unhappy. This man has<sup>2</sup> nothing<sup>3</sup>  
*sont malheureux a ne rien*  
in common with that hero. Your horse is younger than  
*de commun avec héros h. asp. cheval*  
that of my brother. Her<sup>2</sup> ear-rings<sup>1</sup> are handsomer  
*m. s. frère d'oreille boucles f. pl.*  
than those of her sister. These pictures (here) are those  
*f. pl. f. s. sœur m. pl.-ci m. pl. que*

I wanted (to buy) this morning. Those who practise  
*voulais acheter matin m. s. m. pl. pratiquent (d. art.)*  
 virtue live happy. He who despises learning does  
*vertu f. vivent heureux. m. s. méprise (d. art.) science f. s. \**  
<sup>1</sup>not<sup>4</sup> know<sup>3</sup> its<sup>2</sup> value. Go and tell the king what  
*ne pas connaît en (d. art.) prix m. s. allez \* dire à roi m. s.*  
 (has passed), do <sup>1</sup>not<sup>3</sup> forget<sup>2</sup> what you have seen and what  
*s'est passé \* oubliez avez vu*  
 you have heard. (Here are) two pears: take this (here)  
*entendu. voici poires prenez f. s.*  
 and I (will take) that (there). This (this thing) is low and  
*prendrai f. s. \* est bas*  
 mean, but that (that thing) is grand and sublime.  
*rampant mais \**

## LESSON XVI.

### OF THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

*Indefinite pronouns* are those which refer to *indefinite*, or *indeterminate* objects; as, *on frappe à la porte*, somebody knocks at the door; *Je ne vois PERSONNE*, I see nobody.

Here *on* and *personne*, are two *indefinite pronouns*, because they both supply the place of a noun, which is understood.

Of the *indefinite pronouns*, some are used as *adjectives*, being generally prefixed to a *substantive*, whose *gender* and *number* they take; others are merely used as pronouns.

They are the following :

<i>aucun</i> , m. s.	<i>aucune</i> , f. s.	none, nobody, no.
<i>nul</i> , m. s.	<i>nulle</i> , f. s.	no, nobody, none.
<i>pas un</i> , m. s.	<i>pas une</i> , f. s.	not one, nobody, no.
<i>personne</i> , (invariable.)		nobody, none.
<i>chaque</i> , m. & f. s. (inv.)		each, every.
<i>chacun</i> , m. s.	<i>chacune</i> , f. s.	every one, each of them.
<i>quelque</i> , m. & f. s.	<i>quelques</i> , m. & f. pl.	some, any.
<i>quelqu'un</i> , m. s.	<i>quelqu'une</i> , f. s.	} somebody, anybody.
<i>quelques-uns</i> , m. pl.	<i>quelques-unes</i> , f. pl.	
<i>autre</i> , m. & f. s.	<i>autres</i> , m. & f. pl.	other, any other.
<i>autrui</i> , (inv.)		others, other people.
<i>plusieurs</i> , m. & f. pl. (inv.)		several, many.
* <i>on</i> or <i>l'on</i> , (inv.) one, people, somebody, they, we,		I, a man, &c.
<i>certain</i> , m. s.	<i>certaine</i> , f. s.	} certain, some.
<i>certain</i> , m. pl.	<i>certaines</i> , f. pl.	

\* *L'on* instead of *on*, is often used, for euphony, when preceded by the conjunction *et*, or any other monosyllable ending with a vowel; as, *si, ou, qui, quoi*. But *l'on* is never employed before another word beginning with an *l*; thus, instead of *l'on l'a vu*, (they have seen him), write *on l'a vu*.

<i>rien</i> , (inv.)		nothing, any thing.
<i>même</i> , m. & f. s.	<i>mêmes</i> , m. & f. pl.	same.
<i>quiconque</i> , (inv.)		whoever, whosoever, &c.
<i>quelconque</i> , m. & f. s.	<i>quelconques</i> , m. & f. pl.	whatever, whatsoever, &c.
<i>qui que ce soit</i> , (inv.)		whoever he may be, &c.
<i>quoi que ce soit</i> , (inv.)		whatever it may be, &c.
<i>quel que</i> , m. s.	<i>quelle que</i> , f. s.	} whoever, whatever, &c.
<i>quels que</i> , m. pl.	<i>quelles que</i> , f. pl.	
<i>quelque—que</i> , m. & f. s.	<i>quelques—que</i> , m. & f. pl.	however, whatever, &c.
<i>l'un l'autre</i> , m. s.	<i>l'une l'autre</i> , f. s.	} one another, each other.
<i>les uns les autres</i> , m. pl.	<i>les unes les autres</i> , f. pl.	
<i>l'un et l'autre</i> , m. s.	<i>l'une et l'autre</i> , f. s.	} both.
<i>les uns et les autres</i> , m. pl.	<i>les unes et les autres</i> , f. pl.	
<i>l'un ou l'autre</i> , m. s.	<i>l'une ou l'autre</i> , f. s.	} either.
<i>les uns ou les autres</i> , m. pl.	<i>les unes ou les autres</i> , f. pl.	
<i>ni l'un ni l'autre</i> , m. s.	<i>ni l'une ni l'autre</i> , f. s.	} neither.
<i>ni les uns ni les autres</i> , m. pl.	<i>ni les unes ni les autres</i> , f. pl.	
<i>tel</i> , m. s.	<i>telle</i> , f. s.	} such, like.
<i>tels</i> , m. pl.	<i>telles</i> , f. pl.	
<i>tel que</i> , m. s.	<i>telle que</i> , f. s.	} such as.
<i>tels que</i> , m. pl.	<i>telles que</i> , f. pl.	
<i>tout</i> , m. s.	<i>toute</i> , f. s.	} all, every, every thing.
<i>tous</i> , m. pl.	<i>toutes</i> , f. pl.	
<i>tout—que</i> , m. s.	<i>toute—que</i> , f. s.	} as, although, however.
———, m. pl.	<i>toutes—que</i> , f. pl.	
<i>tout le monde</i> , (inv.)		every body, any body.

## EXERCISE.

I know none of his relations. (There is) no truth in all  
*Je ne connais* m. s. *parents* pl. *il n'y a* f. s. *vérité* dans  
 he says. Has he many friends? not one. He trusts  
*ce que* *dit* *a-t-* *beaucoup d'amis* m. s. (*ne se fie à*)  
 nobody. Each language has its peculiar<sup>2</sup> idioms.<sup>1</sup> Every  
*langue* *a* *particulier* m. pl. *idiome* m. pl. m. s.  
 one lives after his (own manner). They have (each of them)  
*vit* *à* f. s. *mode* f. s. *f. pl.* *ont* f. s.  
 an income of twenty thousand dollars. (Make use) of another  
*revenu* m. *piastre* pl. *servez-vous* f. s.  
 expression. Do <sup>1</sup>not<sup>3</sup> do<sup>2</sup> to others, what you would<sup>2</sup>  
 \* *ne pas faites* *à* (*ce que*) *voudriez*  
<sup>1</sup>not<sup>3</sup> (have done to you). People think and \* say  
*ne pas* *qu'on vous fit* *pense* *pron.* *dit*  
 openly that you (did not act right). Several persons  
*ouvertement* *que* *n'avez pas bien agi* *personne* pl.  
 told<sup>2</sup> me<sup>1</sup> the same thing. Nothing is more surprising.  
 (*ont dit*) *chose* f. s. *n'est* *surprenant*  
 Whosoever does <sup>1</sup>not<sup>3</sup> speak<sup>2</sup> French, (shall be fined). Who-  
 \* *parlera français* *sera mis à l'amende*  
 ever told<sup>3</sup>, you<sup>1</sup> so<sup>2</sup>, (was mistaken). Whatever  
*ce soit qui* (*ait dit*) *le* *s'est trompé* m. pl.  
 attempts you (may make), you will <sup>1</sup>never<sup>3</sup> succeed<sup>2</sup>.  
*effort* pl. *que* *fassiez* \* *ne jamais réussirez.*

## LESSON XVII.

### INDECLINABLE PARTS OF SPEECH.

Under this head are comprehended *adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, and interjections.*

#### OF THE ADVERB.

The *Adverb*, is a word added to a *verb*, an *adjective*, and sometimes another *adverb*, to express some quality, or to limit its signification; as, *elle chante BIEN*, she sings *well*; *elle est FORT jolie*, she is *very* pretty; *elle a agi TRÈS imprudemment*, she acted *most* imprudently.

Here, the words *bien, fort, très*, are three adverbs, the 1st of which modifies the signification of the verb *elle chante*, (she sings); the 2d, that of the adjective *jolie*, (pretty); and the 3d, that of the word *imprudemment*, (imprudently), which is also an adverb.

REMARK.—Some adjectives are often used as adverbs; as, *chanter JUSTE*, to sing correctly; *chanter FAUX*, to sing out of tune; *vendre CHER*, to sell *dear*, &c.

Adverbs, agreeably to their different significations have been divided into *seven* classes; Namely:

#### OF TIME.

##### PRESENT.

*Aujourd'hui*, to-day;  
*Maintenant*, now;

*À présent*, at present.  
*Sur le champ*, immediately.

##### PAST.

*Hier*, yesterday;  
*Avant-hier*, the day before yesterday;  
*Autrefois*, formerly;  
*Anciennement*, anciently;

*Dernièrement*, lately.  
*Auparavant*, before.  
*Depuis peu*, not long since.  
*Jadis*, in old times.

##### FUTURE.

*Demain*, to morrow;  
*Bientôt*, soon, shortly;  
*Tantôt*, by and by, a little while ago;

*Désormais*, henceforth.  
*Dorénavant*, hereafter.  
*À l'avenir*, for the future.

##### INDETERMINATE.

*Souvent*, often;  
*D'abord*, at first;  
*Quelquefois*, sometimes;  
*Jamais*, never, ever;  
*Toujours*, always, ever;

*Rarement*, seldom.  
*Soudain*, suddenly.  
*Tôt*, soon, quickly.  
*Matin*, early.  
*Tard*, late, &c.



## OF PLACE.

<i>Où</i> , where ;	<i>Deçà</i> ,	} this side, on this side.
<i>D'où</i> , whence ;	<i>En-deçà</i> ,	
<i>Ici</i> , here, hither ;	<i>Au-deçà</i> ,	
<i>D'ici</i> , hence ;	<i>Par-deçà</i> ,	
<i>Par ici</i> , this way ;	<i>Près</i> , or <i>proche</i> , near, nigh.	
<i>Là</i> or <i>y</i> , there, thither ;	<i>Loin</i> , far.	
<i>De là</i> , thence ;	<i>Devant</i> , before.	
<i>Delà</i> ,	<i>Derrière</i> , behind.	
<i>Au-delà</i> ,	<i>Dessus</i> , above, upon.	
<i>Par-delà</i> ,	<i>Dessous</i> , underneath, beneath.	
<i>çà</i> , hither ; <i>Ex</i> : <i>venez-çà</i> , come hither ;	<i>Dedans</i> , within.	
<i>çà et là</i> , here and there, up and down ;	<i>Dehors</i> , without.	
<i>Là-haut</i> , above ; <i>en-haut</i> , up stairs ;	<i>Ailleurs</i> , elsewhere.	
<i>Là-bas</i> , below ; <i>en-bas</i> , down stairs ;	<i>Partout</i> , every where, &c.	

## OF ORDER OR RANK.

<i>Premièrement</i> , first, at first ;	<i>Enfin</i> , in fine, at last.
<i>Secondement</i> , 2dly, &c.	<i>A la fin</i> , at length.
<i>Ensuite</i> , afterwards, then ;	<i>A la file</i> , in a row, in a file.
<i>Avant</i> , before ;	<i>Alternativement</i> , alternately.
<i>Après</i> , after ;	<i>Tour-à-tour</i> , by turns.
<i>En avant</i> , forward ;	<i>Ensemble</i> , together.
<i>En arrière</i> , backward ;	<i>Pêle-mêle</i> , pell-mell, &c.

## OF QUANTITY.

<i>Une fois</i> , once ; <i>deux fois</i> , twice ;	<i>Assez</i> , enough.
<i>Trois fois</i> , thrice, or three times, &c.	<i>Encore</i> , again, yet, still.
<i>Combien</i> , how much, how many ;	<i>Tant</i> , so much, so many.
<i>Peu</i> , little, few ;	<i>Tant soit peu</i> , ever so little.
<i>Beaucoup</i> , much, many ;	<i>Trop</i> , too much, too many.
<i>Guère</i> , or <i>guères</i> , not much, not many ;	<i>Trop peu</i> , too little.

## OF AFFIRMATION, NEGATION OR DOUBT.

## AFFIRMATION.

<i>Oui</i> , yes ;	<i>Volontiers</i> , willingly.
<i>Certes</i> , truly ;	<i>Soit</i> , let it be so.
<i>Vraiment</i> , indeed ;	<i>D'accord</i> , agreed.
<i>Certainement</i> , certainly ;	<i>Incontestablement</i> , incontestably.
<i>Sans doute</i> , undoubtedly ;	<i>Innouvablement</i> ,
<i>Assurément</i> , surely ;	<i>Infailliblement</i> ,

## NEGATION.

<i>Ne</i> , <i>non</i> , no, not, nay ;	<i>Ne-plus</i> , no more, no longer.
* <i>Ne-pas</i> ,	<i>Ne-que</i> , only, nothing but.
* <i>Ne-point</i> ,	<i>Ne-nulle part</i> , no where.
<i>Ne-personne</i> , nobody ;	<i>Ne-ni-ni</i> , neither—nor.
<i>Ne-jamais</i> , never ;	<i>Nullément</i> , by no means.
<i>Ne-rien</i> , nothing ;	<i>Point du tout</i> , not at all, &c.

## DOUBT.

*Peut-être*, perhaps.

## OF COMPARISON.

## EQUALITY.

<i>Comme</i> , as, like, how ;	<i>Pareillement</i> , likewise.
<i>De même</i> , in like manner, so ;	<i>Aussi</i> , as, so.
<i>Ainsi</i> , thus, so ;	<i>Si</i> , so, &c.

\* The dash placed between *ne* and *pas*, *ne* and *point*, &c. points out the place which the French verb must occupy : see *avoir*, conjugated negatively. Observe that *ne-pas*, generally expresses a negative without affirming it, whereas *ne-point*, denies and affirms at the same time ; *ne-pas*, often denies but partly, or with some modification, *ne-point*, on the contrary, always denies absolutely, totally, and without any reserve.



## INFERIORITY.

*Moins*, less;  
*A-peu-près*, nearly, almost;

*Presque*, (*quasi*), almost, very near.  
*Tout au plus*, at most, &c.

## SUPERIORITY.

*Plus*, more;  
*Davantage*, more, more of it;  
*Plus—plus*, the more—the more;  
*De plus*, moreover;  
*De plus en plus*, more and more;

*Très*, very, or most.  
*Fort*, very, or hard.  
*Bien*, very, or well.  
*Mieux*, better.  
*De mieux en mieux*, better and better.

## OF QUALITY OR MANNER.

*En sursaut*, suddenly;  
*En ami*, friendly;  
*A l'amiable*, amicably;  
*A la mode*, fashionably, in the fashion;  
*A l'Anglaise*, after the English fashion;  
*A la Française*, after the French fashion;

*A tort*, wrongfully.  
*A tort et à travers*, at random.  
*Modestement*, } modestly.  
*Avec modestie*, }  
*Sévèrement*, } severely.  
*Avec sévérité*, }

REMARK.—Most adverbs denoting *manner*, are formed from the feminine of adjectives, by adding *ment*; as, *cruel*, m. *cruelle*, f. *cruellement*, adv. (cruelly); *doux*, m. *douce*, f. *doucement*, adv. (softly); &c. But should the masculine singular of the adjective end with a vowel, then *ment*, is added to the masculine; as, *poli*, m. *polie*, f. *poliment*, adv. (politely); *sensé*, m. *sensée*, f. *sensément*, adv. (rationally); &c.

## EXERCISE.

We did <sup>1</sup>not<sup>4</sup> expect<sup>3</sup> you<sup>2</sup> to-day. The day before yesterday I <sup>\*</sup>met <sup>attendions</sup> your brother in Boston. Her father will soon<sup>2</sup> <sup>rencontrai</sup> (come back)<sup>1</sup>. Do you<sup>2</sup> sometimes<sup>3</sup> play<sup>1</sup> at <sup>\*</sup>chess? <sup>reviendra</sup> He asked<sup>2</sup> me<sup>1</sup> who I was; whence I came, and where I <sup>demandai</sup> (was going). We ought first (to avoid) doing <sup>allais</sup> evil; <sup>il faut</sup> afterwards we ought (to do) <sup>éviter</sup> good. I spoke<sup>3</sup> (to her)<sup>2</sup> <sup>faire (d. art.) bien m. s. (ai parlé)</sup> <sup>1</sup>only once, but I saw<sup>2</sup> her<sup>1</sup> twice. Do you<sup>2</sup> know<sup>1</sup> your <sup>ne que f. s. mais (ai vue)</sup> lesson? Yes, sir. Will you come with me? No, madam. <sup>leçon</sup> I will<sup>2</sup> <sup>voulez-</sup> neither<sup>3</sup> see<sup>5</sup> him<sup>4</sup> nor<sup>6</sup> speak<sup>8</sup> (to him)<sup>7</sup>. You (will <sup>venez</sup> see)<sup>2</sup> him<sup>1</sup> perhaps to-morrow. I (shall punish)<sup>2</sup> them<sup>1</sup> as <sup>verrez</sup> they deserve. Your Grammar is like mine. The more one <sup>m. le méritent</sup> has, the more one wishes (to have). <sup>est</sup> They read <sup>f. s.</sup> French <sup>a</sup> better and better. <sup>veut</sup> She dresses (after the English fashion), <sup>m. pl. lisent le français</sup> <sup>s'habille</sup> but she lives (after the French manner). <sup>mais</sup> <sup>vit</sup>

## LESSON XVIII.

### OF THE PREPOSITIONS.

The Preposition shows the relation that one word has with another; it is generally prefixed to a *noun*, or a *pronoun*, which it governs, and which is called its complement, or regimen; as, *Venir DE Londres*, to come *from* London; *Aller à Paris*, to go *to* Paris, &c.

Here *de* and *à*, are two prepositions, whose complements, or regimens, are the words *Londres* and *Paris*.

The following are principally used to denote :

PLACE ; as, <i>Chez soi</i> , at home, &c. <i>Chez moi, vous, lui, &amp;c.</i> to my house, &c. <i>Dans</i> , in, into ; <i>Devant</i> , before ; <i>Derrière</i> , behind ; <i>Parmi</i> , among, amidst ; <i>Sous</i> , under ; <i>Sur</i> , on, upon ; <i>Vers</i> , towards, about, &c.	SEPARATION ; as, <i>Sans</i> , without. <i>Excepté</i> , except, or save. <i>Hors</i> , except, or out. <i>Hormis</i> , except, or but.
ORDER ; as, <i>Avant</i> , before ; <i>Après</i> , after ; <i>Près</i> , or <i>auprès</i> , near ; * <i>Entre</i> , between ; <i>Depuis</i> , since ; <i>Dès</i> , from or since ;	OPPOSITION ; as, <i>Contre</i> , against. <i>En dépit de</i> , } in spite of. <i>Malgré</i> , } <i>Nonobstant</i> , notwithstanding.
UNION ; as, <i>Avec</i> , with ; <i>Durant</i> , } during ; <i>Pendant</i> , } <i>Outre</i> , besides ; <i>Selon</i> , } according to, &c. <i>Suivant</i> , }	END ; as, <i>Envers</i> , towards, to. <i>Concernant</i> , concerning. <i>Pour</i> , for. <i>Touchant</i> , touching.
	CAUSE ; as, <i>A cause de</i> , } on account of. <i>Attendu</i> , } <i>Moyennant</i> , by the means of, for. <i>Vu</i> , considering.
	SPECIFICATION ; as, <i>A</i> , (or <i>à</i> ), to, at. <i>De</i> , of or from. <i>En</i> , in, into, at. <i>Par</i> , by.

#### EXERCISE.

One is<sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>never<sup>3</sup> perfectly happy but (at home). I (was going)  
*ne-jamais parfaitement heureux que* *allais*  
 (to your house) when I met<sup>2</sup> you<sup>1</sup>. Go and take a walk in the  
*lorsque rencontrai* *allez \* faire un tour m.*

\* The use of this preposition is attended with some difficulties, and the more strongly to impress it upon the mind of the learner, we have deferred our observation on it, to the present lesson.

The preposition *entre*, as we have remarked (Lesson 1st, page 8,) drops its last vowel before another vowel, or *h* mute; but this rule applies to a few words only; as, *acte*, (an act of a play); *aider*, (to help); *ouïr*, (to hear); *ouvrir*, (to open); *accuser*, (to accuse); *aimer*, (to love); *appeler*, (to call); *avertir*, (to give notice); *empêcher*, (to hinder); *égorger*, (to cut the throat); *cux*, *m. elles*, *f.* (them); *autres choses*, (other things). The final *e* being always retained in any other case.

garden. Hide yourself behind the door. I (was up) this  
*cachez- vous f. me suis levé*  
 morning before day-light. He walked before me to serve<sup>2</sup>  
*matin m. s le \* marchait pour servir*  
 me<sup>1</sup> as a guide. Will you come with us to the play. Al-  
*de \* — voulez- venir comédie f. s.*  
 ways<sup>2</sup> act<sup>1</sup> (according to) the rules of politeness. All  
*agissez règles (d. art.) politesse f. s. m. pl.*  
 knew their lesson, except John and Mary. Be always charitable  
*savaient leçon Jean Marie soyez —*  
 to (for towards) the poor. I (cannot go) to the theatre  
*\* pauvre m. pl. ne saurais aller — m. s.*  
 to night, (on account of) my father<sup>2</sup>'s illness<sup>1</sup>. What  
*ce soir de \* (d. art.) maladie f. s. que*  
 have you done during my absence? I have learned my fable  
*avez- fait — f. s. ai appris — f. s.*  
 by heart.  
*cœur.*

## LESSON XIX.

### OF THE CONJUNCTIONS.

The conjunction is generally used to connect words, or sentences together; as, *Paul et Pierre sont heureux*, *PARCE QU'ils sont bons*, Paul and Peter are happy, because they are good.

Here *et* is a conjunction, because it unites the two words *Paul* and *Pierre*, and *parce que*, is another conjunction, which connects the second sentence *ils sont bons*, to the first *Paul et Pierre sont heureux*.

The following are principally used to express :

UNION; as,  
*Et* (affirmatively) and; ·  
*Ni* (negatively) neither, nor, &c.

DISTINCTION; as,  
*Ou*, or, either;  
*Soit que*, whether, or;  
*Tantôt*, sometimes, &c.

RESTRICTION; as,  
*Sinon*, but, except;  
*Quoique*,  
*Encore que*, } though, although;  
*Bien que*, }  
*A moins que*, unless, till, &c.

OPPOSITION; as,  
*Mais*, but;  
*Cependant*, } yet, nevertheless;  
*Toutefois*, }  
*Néanmoins*, for all that;  
*Pourtant*, however, yet, &c.

AUGMENTATION; as,  
*D'ailleurs*, besides.  
*Outre que*, besides that.  
*De plus*,  
*Au surplus*, } besides, furthermore, &c.

DIMINUTION; as,  
*Du moins*,  
*Au moins*, } at least, &c.  
*Pour le moins*, }

CAUSE OR REASON; as,  
*Car*, for.  
*Comme*, as,  
*Attendu que*, seeing that.  
*Parce que*, because.  
*Puisque*, since.  
*Pour que*, for to.  
*Afin que*, to the end that.  
*Afin de*, in order to.  
*D'autant que*, so much as, whereas, &c.

## CONDITION ; as,

## CONCLUSION ; as,

*Si*, if;*Sinon que*, except that ;*Soit*, either, whether ;*Pourvu que*, provided that ;*A condition que*, on condition that, &c.

CONSENT ; as,

*A la verité*, indeed ;*A la bonne heure*, very well, &c.

EXPLANATION ; as,

*Savoir*, viz. namely ;*C'est-à-dire*, that is to say ;*Comme*, as, whereas ;*Surtout*, above all, &c.

COMPARISON ; as,

*Comme*, as ;*De même*, as just as ;*Ainsi que*, as, even as ;*Autant que*, as much as ;*Si-que*, so that, &c.

TRANSITION ; as,

*Car*, for.*En effet*, in effect, indeed.*Au reste*, besides, otherwise.*A propos*, apropos, by the by.*Après tout*, after all, &c.*Ainsi*, thus.*Or*, now.*Donc*, then.*Que*, that, than.*De manière que*, } so that.*De sorte que*, }*C'est pourquoi*, therefore, &c.

## TIME or CIRCUMSTANCE ; as,

*Quand*, } when.*Lorsque*, }*Pendant que*, } whilst, while.*Tandis que*, }*Tant que*, as long as.*Depuis que*, since, from the time that.*Avant que*, before.*Dès que*, }*Aussitôt que*, } as soon as.*D'abord que*, }*A peine*, hardly, scarcely.*Après que*, after that.*Enfin*, in fine, finally, &c.

## EXERCISE.

Gold and silver are less useful than iron. I

(d. art.) or (d. art.) *argent sont utiles* (d. art.) *fer m. s.*

like neither flatterers nor the wicked. Whether he

*n'aime* (d. art.) *flatteur m. pl.* *méchant m. pl.*

win or lose, he is always pleased. Though he be young

*gagne (qu'il perde) est content* *soit jeune*and rich, she does <sup>1</sup>not<sup>4</sup> love<sup>3</sup> him<sup>2</sup>. I have studied my lesson,*riche \* ne pas aime ai étudié leçon f. s.*but I do <sup>1</sup>not<sup>4</sup> know<sup>3</sup> it<sup>2</sup> yet<sup>5</sup>. If men were wiser, they*sais f. s. (d. art.) homme pl. étaient*(would be) happier. The thing happened even as I had<sup>2</sup>*seraient chose f. s. (se passa) avais*foreseen<sup>3</sup> it<sup>1</sup>. When he had done speaking, he (fell asleep).*prévu le eut fini de parler s'endormit*We had scarcely arrived, when it began to rain. Do <sup>1</sup>not<sup>3</sup>*fûmes arrivés que il commença pleuvoir \**play<sup>2</sup> on the piano while I (am writing) my exercise. We*jouez de m. s. — écris thème m. s. il*

ought (to love) what is amiable ; now, virtue is amiable ;

*faut aimer (nominat) est aimable (d. art.) vertu f. s.*

therefore, we ought to love virtue.

## LESSON XX.

### OF THE INTERJECTIONS.

The Interjection is a word which is used to express a sudden emotion of the mind; as, *Bon! les voici*, Good! here they are; *O ciel! quel malheur!* O Heaven! what a misfortune!

Here *Bon* and *O*, are two interjections.

The French Interjections, as well as the English, are comprised within a small compass. They are of different sorts, according to the different *emotions* which they serve to express: The principal are the following:

Of joy,	<i>Ah! bon! ho, ho!</i>	Ah! good! ho, ho!
Of grief,	<i>Hélas! O! oh!</i>	Alas! O! oh!
Of pain,	<i>Aie! ouff!</i>	Oh! oh dear!
Of fear,	<i>Ha! hé!</i>	Ah! eh!
Of aversion,	<i>Fi! fi donc!</i>	Fy, fy! for shame!
Of encouraging,	<i>Allons! courage!</i>	Come on! courage!
Of calling,	<i>Holà, ho! hem, hem!</i>	Halloo! hem, hem!
Of silence,	<i>Paix! silence!</i>	Hush! silence! &c.

### EXERCISE.

Ah! ah! exclaimed the (old man), it is then thou who  
*s'écria                      vieillard                      ce                      donc*  
stealest my money! O God! have mercy upon us!  
*me dérobes                      trésor m. s.                      ayez                      pitié                      de*  
Alas! what (will become of me) if he (goes away).  
*deviendrai-je                      s'en va*  
Ah! exclaimed he, trembling with fear, the world (is coming) to  
*s'écria-t-                      tremblant                      de                      peur                      m. s.                      touche*  
an end! Ah! what a monster! I am afraid (to come near it).  
*sa fin!                      quel \* monstre!                      ai                      peur                      d'en approcher*  
Fy, fy<sup>2</sup>! Robert<sup>1</sup>, you do <sup>1</sup>not<sup>3</sup> think<sup>2</sup> of what you say. Come  
*\*                      pensez a (object)                      dites*  
on, my boys, courage! the victory is ours. Halloo!  
*enfant pl.                      victoire f.                      est à nous.*  
(is any one) here? Hush there! silence! you make (too much)  
*y a-t-il quelqu'un                      -là                      faites*  
noise.  
*de bruit.*

# MEMOIR

OF

THE

LIFE

OF

THE

REVEREND

FATHER

AND

DEAR

AND

DEAR

AND

DEAR

## PART II.

### SYNTAX.

*Syntax* treats of the proper arrangement of the *parts of speech*, in order to form correct sentences.

A *sentence* is an assemblage of words, making a complete sense.

Sentences are of two kinds, *simple* and *compound*.

A *simple sentence*, is that which contains a *nominative*, a *verb*, and a *regimen*.

A *compound sentence*, is that which may be divided into two or more simple ones.

The *nominative*, or *subject* of a sentence, is the thing, or person spoken of; the *verb*, is the word expressing the state of the nominative, as *being*, *doing*, or *suffering*; the *object* or *regimen*, is generally a substantive, a pronoun, or a verb, which receives *directly* or *indirectly*, the action expressed by another verb—Hence there are two kinds of regimens: *direct* and *indirect*.

A *direct regimen*, is that which is not governed by a preposition, and which generally answers to the question *qui?* (who?) or *quoi?* (what?): Examples: *Je vous vois*, I see you; *elle écrit une lettre*, she is writing a letter—Here we may say: *Je vois*, (qui?) *vous*, I see, (who?) you; *elle écrit*, (quoi?) *une lettre*, she is writing, (what?) a letter: *vous* and *une lettre*, are, therefore, direct regimens.

An *indirect regimen*, is that which is governed by a preposition, either expressed, or understood, and which generally answers to the question *à qui?* or *à quoi?* (to whom? or to what?); *de qui?* or *de quoi?* (of whom? or of what?); Examples: *Je parlerai de vous à mon père*, I will speak of you to my father; *Il s'applique à l'étude des Mathématiques*, he applies himself to the study of Mathematics—Here we may say: *Je parlerai* (de qui?) *de vous*, (à qui?) *à mon père*, I will speak, (of whom?) of you, (to whom?) to my father; and *Il s'applique*, (à quoi?) *à l'étude*, (de quoi?) *des Mathématiques*, He applies himself, (to what?) to the study, (of what?) of Mathematics—*vous*, *mon père*, *l'étude*, *les Mathématiques*, are, therefore, indirect regimens.

*Syntax* treats, besides, of the *agreement* of the parts of speech, that is to say, of their similarity in *person*, *number*, *gender*, *case*, *mood*, *tense* or *form*.



## LESSON XXI.

## SYNTAX OF THE ARTICLE.

(Page 17, Lesson 4.)

## USE OF THE ARTICLE.

**GENERAL RULE.**—The definite articles *le* or *l'*, *la* or *l'*, *les*, (the), are to be USED, in French, before all common substantives taken in a *general sense*,\* or denoting a whole species of *animals*, or *things*; also, before proper names of *countries*, *provinces*, *regions*, *rivers*, *mountains*, *winds*, *seasons*, and the *four parts of the world*.

**REMARK.**—The definite article, being declinable in French, and consequently admitting of different variations, ought to be repeated before all the *substantives* of a sentence, and agree with them in gender and number; Example:

The father, mother and children.  
*le père, la mère et les enfans.*

## EXERCISE.

Man is the lord of the earth. Woman is the  
*homme h. m. est maître m. s. terre f. s. femme*  
 master-piece of nature. Grass is green.  
*chef-d'œuvre m. s. (d. art.) —f. s. herbe f. s. h. m. vert. f. s.*  
 Birds fly. Trees grow well on the banks of  
*oiseau m. pl. volent arbre m. pl. croissent sur bord m. pl. (d. art.)*  
 rivers. Holland is a marshy<sup>2</sup> country<sup>1</sup>. Provence  
*rivière f. pl. Hollande f. s. h. asp. marécageux pays m. s. —f. s.*  
 produces oranges and lemons. The four  
*produit (c. art.) —f. pl. (c. art.) citron m. pl.*  
 cardinal<sup>2</sup> points<sup>1</sup> are the east, west, south and  
*—m. pl. —m. pl. orient m. s. occident m. s. midi m. s.*  
 north. The Rhone is a very<sup>3</sup> dangerous<sup>3</sup> river<sup>1</sup>. France  
*nord m. s. Rhône m. s. dangereux fleuve m. s. —f. s.*  
 is separated from Italy by the Alps. The  
*séparé f. s. (d. art.) Italie f. s. par Alpes f. pl.*  
 (north-wind) is the coldest of all. Summer is a  
*aquilon m. s. m. s. tout m. pl. les vents été m. s.*  
 sickly<sup>2</sup> season<sup>1</sup>. America is a free<sup>2</sup> country<sup>1</sup>.  
*malsain f. s. saison f. s. Amérique f. s. libre pays m. s.*

\* In English, the article is not used before common substantives taken in a *general sense*.

## EXCEPTIONS.

EXCEPTION 1.—When two substantives follow one another, and the second is used to denote a *quality, kindred, office, rank, or dignity*, the article, though expressed in English, must be omitted in French; Ex :

*Diane, sœur d'Apollon et fille de Latone,* Diana, the sister of Apollo and the daughter of Latona.

*Louis-Philippe, Roi des français,* Louis-Phillipe, the King of the French.

EXCEPTION 2.—When the style is animated; that is, when several substantives follow each other in a quick succession, and the word *tout*, (every body, every thing) makes an aggregate of them all, the article is expressed neither in French nor in English; Ex :

*La ville fut prise d'assaut: hommes, femmes, enfans, vieillards, tout fut mis à mort,* The city was taken by storm: men, women, children, old-people, every body was put to death.

EXCEPTION 3.—When the conjunction *ni*, (neither, nor) precedes a substantive and implies a complete negation, the article must be omitted in both languages; Ex :

*Le sage n'a ni amour ni haine,* The (wise man) has neither love nor hatred.

But, when the signification of the substantive, thus preceded by *ni*, is extended to a subsequent idea, the article is added in French, and the negation *ne* in both cases, placed before the verb; Ex :

*Ce n'est ni l'or ni la grandeur qui nous rendent heureux,* It is neither gold nor greatness that makes us happy.

EXCEPTION 4.—No article is used before the names of countries governed by the preposition *en*, or bearing the name of their *capitals*, or when those names are preceded by a verb expressing *motion or stay*; as, *aller*, to go; *venir*, to come; *demeurer*, to live, &c.; Ex :

*Naples est un charmant pays,* Naples is a delightful country.

*J'irai en France l'année prochaine,* I will go to France next year.

*Je voyagerai en Suisse et en Allemagne,* I will travel in Switzerland and Germany.

*Mon oncle demeure en Espagne,* My uncle lives in Spain.

However, before the names of countries, either *distant*, or *little known*, custom generally allows the use of the article; as, *aller au Pérou*, to go to Peru; *venir du Japon*, to come from Japan; &c.

EXCEPTION 5.—Common substantives used in the form of an *adverb*, or preceded by the verbs *faire*, to make, and *avoir*, to have, with which they form only one idea, do not take the definite article; Ex :

*Parlez-lui avec amitié, (or amicalement),* Speak to him in friendship.

*Allez-vous-en, vous me faites peur,* Go away, you make me afraid.

EXCEPTION 6.—Nouns used as an *apostrophe*, or *interjection*, and those employed in the form of a *title*, or an *address*, admit no article before them; Ex:

*Courage, soldats, tenez ferme,*                      *Courage, soldiers, stand firm.*  
*Préface. Livre premier. Chapitre dix,*      *Preface. Book the 1st. Chap. the 10th.*

EXCEPTION 7.—The definite article is not used before nouns, either preceded by the preposition *en*, or by one of the following pronouns, viz: *mon, ton, son, notre, votre, leur, &c. ce, cet, cette, ces; aucun, autre, certain, chaque, même, nul, plusieurs, quel, quelque, tel, tout* (used for *chaque*), &c.; Ex:

*Il voyage de ville en ville,*                      *He travels from town to town.*  
*Votre frère a agi en homme d'honneur,*      *Your brother has acted like an honourable man.*

### EXERCISE.

Philip, the king of Macedonia, was the father of Alexander.  
*Philippe roi Macédoine (Ind. 3.) père Alexandre.*  
 Houses, palaces, public<sup>2</sup>-buildings<sup>1</sup>, (every thing) became a  
*maison pl. palais pl. — pl. édifice m. pl. devint (d. art.)*  
 prey to the flames. That man has<sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>neither<sup>3</sup> justice nor  
*proie f. s. de flamme f. pl. ne ni — f. s.*  
 humanity. It is<sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>neither<sup>3</sup> glory nor conquests that constitute  
*humanité f. s. ce gloire f. s. conquêtes f. pl. qui font*  
 the happiness of nations. Corfu is the bulwark of Italy.  
*bonheur m. s. (c. art.) — f. pl. Corfou rempart m. s. Italie f. s.*  
 (I have) travelled in England, Scotland and Ireland.  
*voyagé Angleterre f. (prep.) Ecosse f. (prep.) Irlande f.*  
 Her brother is gone to Havana, and mine to the East<sup>2</sup>-Indies<sup>1</sup>.  
*frère allé Havane f. s. m. s. oriental f. pl. Inde f. pl.*  
 Pay attention to your copy and write with care. The  
*faites — f. s. exemple f. s. écrivez soin m. s.*  
 writings of Voltaire, whether in verse or prose, (will be)  
*écrit m. pl. — soit vers m. pl. (prep.) — f. s. (Ind. 7.)*  
 transmitted to (the most<sup>2</sup>) remote<sup>3</sup> posterity<sup>1</sup>.  
*transmis f. s. reculée (d. art.) postérité f. s.*

## LESSON XXII.

## SYNTAX OF THE ARTICLE.

(Page 17, Lesson 4.)

## OMISSION OF THE ARTICLE.

**GENERAL RULE.**—The definite articles *le* or *l'*, *la* or *l'*, *les*, (the), are to be OMITTED, in French, before all common substantives taken in a *limited* or *indeterminate* sense, that is, when nothing is said as to the extent of their signification; also, before proper names of *deities*, *men*, *women*, *animals* and *towns*, the *days* of the week, the *months*, and the *cardinal numbers*.

## EXERCISE.

It is better (to be) without money than without friends.  
*il vaut sans argent m. s. ami m. pl.*  
 Jupiter was the first of the gods. Shakspeare and Milton  
 ——— (Ind. 3.) m. s. dieu m. pl. ———  
 are the two best poets of England. Seigne (or  
 (Ind. 1.) m. pl. poète m. pl. Angleterre f. s. Sévigné  
 Mad. de Sévigné) is an elegant writer. Bucephalus was  
 \* charmant écrivain m. s. Bucephale (Ind. 3.)  
 Alexander<sup>2</sup>'s horse<sup>1</sup>. London is (larger) than Paris.  
 de Alexandre \* (d. art.) cheval m. s. Londres m. s.  
 Sunday is the first day of the week. May and September  
 Dimanche m. s. jour m. s. semaine f. s. Mai Septembre  
 are the two finest months of the year in the south of  
 m. pl. mois m. pl. année f. s. sud m. s.  
 France. Four and six, (are how many?) ten.  
 ——— f. s. combien font-ils?

## EXCEPTIONS.

**EXCEPTION 1.**—The article is placed before proper names of *deities*, *men*, *women*, *animals* and *towns*, when used in a *definite* or *determinate* sense, that is, when besides naming them, we wish to convey an idea of *property*, or *dependence*; Ex :

Le Jupiter des Egyptiens se nommait Ammon,	The Jupiter of the Egyptians was called Ammon.
Béranger est le Pindare du dix-neuvième siècle.	Beranger is the Pindar of the nineteenth century.
L' Athalie de Racine est un chef-d'œuvre dramatique,	Racine's Athalia is a dramatic masterpiece.
Le Bucephale d'Alexandre était un cheval blanc,	The Bucephalus of Alexander was a white horse.
La Rome moderne ne ressemble plus à la Rome des Césars,	Modern Rome no longer resembles the Rome of the Cæsars.

**EXCEPTION 2.**—When the *days* of the week and the *cardinal numbers*, are employed to specify some particular *day*, or *days*, or a limited number of *persons*, or *things*, relating to something else either expressed or understood in the same sentence, the definite article is to be used ; Ex :

<i>Le Dimanche de Pâques,</i>	Easter-Sunday.
<i>Le Vendredi-saint,</i>	Good-Friday.
<i>Elle prend leçon tous les Lundis,</i>	She takes a lesson every Monday.
<i>Les neuf Muses étaient sœurs d'Apollon,</i>	The nine Muses were the sisters of Apollo.
<i>Les trois cents soldats de Léonidas moururent aux Thermopyles,</i>	The three hundred soldiers of Leonidas fell at Thermopylæ.

**EXCEPTION 3.**—Proper names of *individuals*, distinguished for their *learning*, *good qualities*, &c. are sometimes, in French, preceded by the definite article plural, in order to convey the exalted opinion we entertain of them ; but the name of the person remains in the singular ; Ex :

<i>Les Washington et les Franklin ne mourront jamais,</i>	Washington and Franklin will never die.
---	---

However, when applied to some other persons, for the sake of comparison, these names in both languages are put in the plural ; Ex :

<i>Les Washingtons seront dans tous les siècles, beaucoup plus rares que les Franklins,</i>	The Washingtons will be in every age, much more rare than the Franklins.
---	--

**EXCEPTION 4.**—*Adjectives*, *pronouns*, *verbs*, *adverbs*, *prepositions*, *conjunctions* and *interjections*, when used substantively, are always preceded by the article, or by a possessive or demonstrative pronoun ; Ex :

<i>Prenez le bon et laissez le mauvais,</i>	Take what is good and leave what is bad.
<i>Il m' impatientait avec son qui ? et son quoi ?</i>	He vexed me with his <i>who ?</i> and his <i>what ?</i>
<i>Le dire et le faire sont deux choses bien différentes,</i>	Saying and doing are two very different things.
<i>C'est un " jamais," dont je me souviendrai toujours,</i>	It is a " never," I shall always recollect.
<i>Je veux savoir le pour et le contre de cette affaire,</i>	I wish to be thoroughly acquainted with that business.
<i>Il ne loue guère sans quelque " mais,"</i>	He seldom praises without a " but."
<i>Tous ses Hélas ! ne le sauveront pas,</i>	All his Exclamations, will not save him.

### EXERCISE.

The Apollo di Belvidere, and the Venus of Medicis, are  
*Apollon du Belveder*  
 valuable<sup>a</sup> remains<sup>1</sup> of antiquity. Boileau is the  
*précieux (c. art.)* *reste m. pl.* *(d. art.)* *antiquité f. s.*  
 Horace of France. Voltaire<sup>2</sup>'s Merope<sup>1</sup> is one  
 — *h. m.* *(d. art.)* — *f. s.* *de* — *(d. art.)* — *f. s.*

of his best tragedies. Apollo's Pegasus was a winged<sup>2</sup>  
*meilleur f. pl. — f. pl. de Apollon Pégase (Ind. 3.) ailé*  
 horse<sup>1</sup>. The Paris of our time is different from the Paris of  
*cheval — m. s. jour pl.*  
 (former times). Shrove<sup>2</sup> -Tuesday<sup>1</sup>, among<sup>2</sup> the<sup>3</sup> French<sup>4</sup> is<sup>1</sup>  
*autrefois gras Mardi-m. s. pour Français pl.*  
 a day of mirth. The three Graces are: Euphrosine, Thalia  
*jour m. folie pl. — — — — — Thalie*  
 and Aglaia. Bayard and Turenne, are models of  
*Aglaïa (d. art.) — (d. art.) — (c. art.) modèle pl.*  
 honour, patriotism and wisdom. Lannes and Ney,  
*honneur, (prep.) patriotisme (prep.) sagesse. — — — — —*  
 are the Bayards of our age. When we have (that which is)  
*siècle m. s. on (sing.) \**  
 necessary and convenient all the rest is<sup>2</sup>  
*(d. art.) nécessaire m. s. (d. art.) commode m. s. m. s. reste m. s.*  
 I<sup>1</sup>mere<sup>3</sup> cupidity. Thou and Thee are more  
*ne que cupidité. (d. art.) m. s. (d. art.) m. s.*  
 frequently used in French than in English. That<sup>5</sup> man<sup>6</sup>'s  
*fréquemment employés Français Anglais \**  
 manner of<sup>4</sup> laughing<sup>1</sup> and<sup>2</sup> speaking<sup>3</sup> is so  
*\* (d. art.) rire m. s. (d. art.) parler m. s. sont*  
 ridiculous, that he displeases (every body). Let me see the  
*ridicule pl. déplaît à faites voir*  
 inside of that (musical-box). He would<sup>2</sup> I<sup>1</sup>never<sup>3</sup> tell<sup>2</sup> me<sup>1</sup>  
*dedans m. s. f. s. boîte-à-musique. voulut dire*  
 why, or how. The top and \*  
*ni (d. art.) pourquoi m. s. ni (d. art.) comment m. s. dessus m. s.*  
 bottom of this (snuff-box) are enamelled.  
*dessous m. s. tabatière f. s. en émail.*

## LESSON XXIII.

### SYNTAX OF THE ARTICLE.

(Page 17, Lesson 4.)

#### USE OF THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

GENERAL RULE.—The indefinite article *un*, or *une*, (a, an), is to be USED, in French as in English, before nouns taken in an *indefinite sense*, and in the singular *only*. By some Grammarians this article is considered as an indefinite pronoun, and its plural is the indefinite pronoun *plusieurs*, (many or several).

REMARK.—Before translating the following Exercise, the Learner will do well to refer to page 31 of this Grammar, where he will find, that *un* and *une*, are also used as *cardinal numbers*, answering to the English *one*.



## EXERCISE.

Your sister has<sup>1</sup> a silk<sup>2</sup> gown<sup>1</sup> and a gold<sup>2</sup> thimble<sup>1</sup>. A  
sœur de soie robe f. s. de or dé m. s.  
 man had<sup>2</sup> only<sup>3</sup> one horse, one cow, and one ox, and  
(Ind. 3.) ne que cheval vache bœuf  
 could plough a field of one acre and a third in less  
pouvait labourer champ. m. s. — m. s. tiers m. s. en  
 than one day. One is seldom happy for a<sup>2</sup> whole<sup>1</sup> day<sup>3</sup>.  
de jour m. s. On m. s. \* tout  
 After an hour's walk, we arrived at a kind of Circus, very  
de marche arrivâmes espèce f. s. Cirque m. s.  
 spacious, environed by a thick forest: the middle of the  
vaste entouré de épais f. s. forêt f. s. milieu m. s.  
 Circus was an arena prepared for the combatants; it  
Cirque (Ind. 3.) arène f. s. préparé f. s. — m. pl. elle  
 was surrounded by a large amphitheatre of fresh<sup>2</sup>  
(Ind. 3.) bordé f. s. grand m. s. — m. s. un frais  
 turf<sup>1</sup>, upon which was seated and ranged an innumerable<sup>2</sup>  
gazon m. s. lequel (Ind. 3.) assis rangé innumérable  
 crowd<sup>1</sup>.  
peuple m. s.

## EXCEPTIONS.

EXCEPTION 1.—The indefinite article *un*, (or *une*), is not used in French before the numeral adjectives *cent*, (a hundred), and *mille*, (a thousand); Ex:

*Les ennemis perdirent dans cette campagne mille canons, et plus de cent drapeaux,* The enemy lost in that campaign a thousand cannon, and more than a hundred standards.

EXCEPTION 2.—When the neuter verb *être*, (to be), is followed by a substantive in the singular number, expressing *rank*, *office*, *trade*, or any *quality* whatever, the indefinite article, though expressed in English, must be omitted in French; Ex:

\* *Il est Capitaine, et son frère Général,* He is a Captain, and his brother is a General.

Should, however, the substantive thus used adjectively, be modified by another adjective, or restricted by a subsequent idea, the indefinite article is to be employed in both languages; Ex:

*Je suis un Prince très-malheureux,* I am a very unfortunate Prince.

EXCEPTION 3.—The indefinite article *a* (or *an*), used in English before nouns of *measure*, *weight* or *quantity*, is rendered in French by the definite article *le* or *la*; Ex:

*Les cerises se vendent six sous la livre,* Cherries are sold at six pence a pound.

\* The verb *être*, (to be), when used impersonally, is always preceded by the demonstrative pronoun *ce*, (it), and commands the indefinite article *un* or *une*, before the substantive which follows it; *ce, c'est un Roi*, (he is a king); *c'est une Reine*, (she is a queen); &c. But it would be very improper to say: *il est un Roi*, or *elle est une Reine*.



In speaking of time, or portions of time, *a* (or *an*), is expressed in French by *par*, (by); **Ex:**

*Je lui donnerai dix schelings par semaine, ou trente dollars par an,* I will give him ten shillings a week, or thirty dollars a year.

**EXCEPTION 4.**—In English *a* (or *an*), is always put after *what*, in an exclamation, but in French the article is never expressed in similar cases; **Ex:**

*Quel homme! Quelle femme!* What a man! What a woman!  
*Quel bel enfant! or (le bel enfant!)* What a fine child!

When a verb is to be used in English, at the end of the sentence, as *What a beautiful girl Mary is!* The French give it quite a different turn: They begin the sentence with the definite article, and prefix *que*, (that), to the name of the person, or thing spoken of; **Ex:**

\* *Le bon garçon que Jean!* What a good boy John is!  
 \* *Le beau pays que l'Italie!* What a fine country Italy is!

**EXCEPTION 5.**—When two indefinite articles are used in English, each prefixed to a noun, as *What a miser of a man!* neither article is expressed in French; **Ex:**

*Quel sot de domestique!* What a fool of a servant!

**EXCEPTION 6.**—*A*, or *an*, is often used in English after *such*, as *such a man*; or after *so*, followed by an adjective, as *so good a man*; &c. In phrases of this sort, the French place the article *un*, or *une*, before *tel*, (such), and *si*, (so); **Ex:**

*Une telle histoire est incroyable,* Such a story is incredible.  
*Je n'ai jamais vu un si beau jardin,* I have never seen so fine a garden.

**EXCEPTION 7.**—The adjective *whole*, (tout), which generally follows the indefinite article in English, in French precedes it; **Ex:**

*Je l'ai attendu toute une semaine,* I waited for him a whole week.

### EXERCISE.

Each regiment was composed of a thousand soldiers.

— (Ind 3.) composé soldat pl.  
 The English<sup>2</sup> fleet<sup>1</sup> reckoned more than a hundred sail.

flotte f. s. comptait de voile pl.  
 Moliere was an actor of great merit, and a writer of superior<sup>2</sup>

— (Ind. 3.) acteur un mérite écrivain un supérieur talent<sup>1</sup>. Corn (sells for) a crown a bushel. He gives his  
 — m. s. blé m. s. se vend écu m. s. boisseau m. s. donne à  
 son three shillings a day. She takes<sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>only<sup>3</sup> two lessons a  
 fils schelings prend leçon pl.

\* "These two sentences, put into English literally, would stand thus:

*The good boy that John!*

*The fine country that Italy!*

"These seem, at first sight, to be two pieces of prime nonsense; but they contain perfectly good sense; and are much more obviously consonant with reason than the English sentences are. They are purely exclamatory: they, therefore, need neither article nor verb. They are full as expressive in French as they are in English; and they are, beyond all comparison, more elegant."—COBBETT'S FRENCH GRAMMAR.

week. What a misfortune ! What a beautiful carriage ! What  
*semaine malheur ! m. s. beau f. s. voiture !*  
 a pretty little woman Mrs. D. is ! What a fool of a general !  
*joli f. petit f. Madame D. ! \* sot*  
 He will <sup>1</sup>never<sup>3</sup> consent<sup>2</sup> to such an arrangement. I had<sup>2</sup>  
*\* consentira m. s. (Ind. 3.)*  
<sup>1</sup>never <sup>3</sup>made<sup>4</sup> so bad a bargain. Helen wept a whole day  
*fait marché m. s. Hélène pleura jour m. s.*  
 for the death of her favorite<sup>2</sup> bird<sup>1</sup>.  
*\* mort f. s. favori oiseau m. s.*

---

## LESSON XXIV.

### SYNTAX OF THE ARTICLE.

(Page 18, Lesson 5.)

### USE OF THE COMPOUND ARTICLES.

**GENERAL RULE.**—The compound articles *du* or *de l'*, *de la* or *de l'*, *des*, (of the), and *au* or *à l'*, *à la* or *à l'*, *aux*, (to the), are so called, (as we have said, page 18, of this Grammar), because they are made up of *an article* and *a preposition*; as such, therefore, they are liable to the rules and exceptions already given for the use of the *simple articles*, and in this respect it is observable that the two languages, do not differ materially from each other.

The scholar should bear in mind, in writing the following Exercise, that the compound articles *of the* and *to the*, are sometimes suppressed in English, and oftener rendered by the prepositions *of* and *to*, only, the definite article being understood; but the French, in similar cases, make use of the compound article.

### EXERCISE.

Geography is the description of the earth. Light is an  
*Géographie f. s. — f. s. terre f. s. lumière f. s.*  
 emanation of the rays of the sun. The Rhine flows from  
*écoulement m. s. rayon pl. soleil m. s. Rhin m. s. coule*  
 the south to the north, and the Danube from the west to  
*midi m. s. nord m. s. — m. s. occident m. s.*  
 the east. The worship of \* fire was almost universal  
*orient m. s. culte m. s. feu m. s. (Ind. 3.) universel*

among the Pagans; it went from the Chaldeans to the  
*dans Paganisme m. s. m. passa Chaldéen m. pl.*  
 Persians, from the Persians to the Greeks, from the Greeks  
*Perse m. pl. Grec m. pl.*  
 to the Romans. The history of \* man under all the  
*Romain m. pl. histoire f. s. homme dans*  
 circumstances of \* life is the study of the wise. The  
*circonstance f. pl. vie f. s. étude f. s. sage m. s.*  
 lily is the emblem of \* virtue, candour,  
*lis m. s. symbole m. s. vertu f. s. (c. art.) candeur f. s. (c. art.)*  
 innocence and purity. The happiness of a feeling<sup>2</sup>  
 ——— f. s. (c. art.) pureté f. s. bonheur m. s. sensible  
 man<sup>1</sup> is to relieve the wants of the poor.  
*de subvenir à besoin m. pl. pauvre m. s.*

## EXCEPTIONS.

EXCEPTION 1.—When two or more substantives come together in a sentence, having a dependence on each other, and united by the sign of the English possessive case ('s), or ('') only, as in *George's hat*, *The two brothers' house*, &c. The French, in similar cases, give the sentence a complete turn: They place the last substantive first, in prefixing an article to it, and add a compound article to the other substantive, or the preposition *de*, only, before proper names, thus: *Le chapeau de George*, *La maison des deux frères*; &c. literally: *The hat of George*, *The house of the two brothers*; Ex:

*Le domestique du fils du général, est le* The general's son's servant, is her  
*cousin germain de sa mère,* mother's first cousin.

EXCEPTION 2.—When a substantive employed in an *indefinite*, or *indeterminate* sense, is governed by another substantive in the same sentence, and the second substantive expresses the *character, cause, country, matter, nature, or quality* of the former, the preposition *de*, (of or with), must be used in French, instead of *du, de la, des*; Ex:

*Les montagnes escarpées sont généralement* Steep mountains are generally covered  
*ment couvertes de neige,* with snow.  
*Paris est un séjour plein d'attraits,* Paris is an abode full of charms.

## EXERCISE.

Modesty is a woman<sup>2</sup>'s (greatest ornament)<sup>1</sup>. My friend<sup>2</sup>'s  
*Modestie f. s. \* le plus grand ornement ami m. \**  
 brother<sup>1</sup> is the king's (prime minister), and his sister is the  
*frère roi \* premier ministre sœur \**  
 queen<sup>2</sup>'s (first Lady of honour)<sup>1</sup>. The governor's son's  
*reine \* première Dame d'honneur gouverneur \* fils \**  
 wife is Mr. B<sup>2</sup>'s (eldest<sup>2</sup> daughter<sup>1</sup>)<sup>1</sup>. These hills  
*femme Monsieur B. \* aînée fille coteau m. pl.,*  
 are covered with trees, loaded with fruit already ripe.  
*couvert pl. arbre m. pl. chargé pl. — m. pl. déjà mur pl.*

I prefer a country<sup>2</sup>-house<sup>1</sup> to a king<sup>2</sup>'s palace<sup>1</sup> A flock  
*préfère (de campagne) maison f. s. \* palais m. s. troupeau m.*  
 of sheep and a cottage were the (old man's) fortune.  
*brebis chaumière f. s. (Ind. 3.) vicillard \* — f. s.*

## LESSON XXV.

### SYNTAX OF THE ARTICLE.

(Page 19, Lesson 5.)

### USE OF THE PARTITIVE ARTICLES.

**GENERAL RULE.**—The partitive articles *du* or *de l'*, *de la* or *de l'*, and *des*, (some or any), are to be USED, in French, before all common substantives employed in a *partitive sense*, although generally expressed only once in English, and sometimes not at all. But, in French, this article is declinable, and, therefore, must be invariably repeated before every substantive in a sentence, whether used in the *nominative*, or in the *objective* case; Ex :

<i>Donnez-moi du fil, de la soie, et des aiguilles;</i>	Give me some thread, silk and needles.
<i>Avez-vous de l'avoine? non, Monsieur, mais j'ai de l'orge,</i>	Have you any oats? no, Sir, but I have some barley.
<i>Du pain, de la viande, et de l'eau, lui suffisent,</i>	Bread, meat and water, are sufficient for him.

### EXERCISE.

When you are in Havana, do <sup>1</sup>not<sup>2</sup> forget<sup>2</sup> to send<sup>2</sup> me<sup>1</sup>  
*Quand serez à Havane f. s. \* oubliez de envoyer*  
 some cocoa, cochineal and indigo. Have you any oranges  
*cacao m. s. cochenille f. s. — m. s. — f. pl.*  
 and lemons? no, Madam, but I have (pine-apples). France  
*citron m. pl. ananas m. pl. — f. s.*  
 produces wheat, corn, barley, oats, and rye. American<sup>2</sup>  
*produit froment m. s. blé m. s. seigle m. s. Américain m. pl.*  
 vessels<sup>1</sup> (carry over) to Europe, sugar, coffee, cotton,  
*navire m. pl. transportent en — sucre m. s. café m. s. coton m. s.*  
 tobacco, cod-fish, (lamp-oil), hides, planks,  
*tabac m. s. morue f. s. huile-à-brûler f. s. h. m. peau f. pl. planche f. pl.*  
 and many other commodities; and they (bring back) in  
*beaucoup de autres marchandise pl. m. rapportent*

exchange, wine, brandy, (sweet-oil), iron, steel,  
*échange vin m. s. eau-de-vie f. s. huile-d' olive f. s. fer m. s. acier m. s.*  
 hemp, (woollen-cloth), (linen-cloth), and (silk-stuffs), of  
*chanvre m. s. drap m. s. toile f. s. soierie f. pl.*  
 all kinds.  
*espèce f. s.*

## EXCEPTIONS.

**EXCEPTION 1.**—When a substantive, is employed in a *partitive sense*, and followed by its adjective, the partitive article is to be used in French; but should the adjective precede the substantive, then the preposition *de*, or *d'*, must take the place of *du*, *de la*, *de l'* or *des*; **Ex**:

*Ce sont des gens honnêtes,*  
*Ce sont d' honnêtes gens,*  
*Ce sont de bonnes gens,*

They are polite people.  
 They are honest people.  
 They are good people.

However, when a substantive in the plural number, is so united with its adjective, as to form but one and the same idea, then the partitive article *des*, must be used, and not *de*; **Ex**: *des petits-maîtres*, (fops); *des grands-seigneurs*, (great lords); *des beaux-esprits*, (wits); &c.

**EXCEPTION 2.**—The preposition *de*, or *d'*, whether expressed in English, or not, is to be used in French, instead of *du*, *de la*, *des*, after words of *quantity*, or *number*; such as: *combien*, (how much, how many); *tant*, (so much, so many); *autant*, (as much, as many); *beaucoup*, (much, many, a great deal); *assez*, (enough); *trop*, (too much, too many); *peu*, (few); *plus*, (more); *moins*, (less); *pas* or *point*, (no, not); *jamais*, (never); *rien*, (nothing); *quelque chose*, (something); and *que*, (what), standing for *combien*; **Ex**:

*Combien de livres avez-vous ?*  
*Il a tant d'orgueil, qu' il en est détestable,*

How many books have you ?  
 He has so much vanity, that he is detested for it.

*J' ai autant d' amis que vous,*  
*Cet homme-là a beaucoup de mérite,*  
*Aurez-vous assez de patience pour faire cela ?*

I have as many friends as you.  
 That man has a great deal of merit.  
 Will you have patience enough to do that.

*Elles ont toujours trop d' ouvrage,*  
*Je vous souhaite moins de malheur, et plus de réussite,*  
*Peu de gens savent se contenter de peu,*

They always have too much work.  
 I wish you less ill-luck, and more success.  
 Few persons know how to be satisfied with little.

*Il n' a point d' argent, et pas de crédit,*  
*Elle n' est jamais de bonne humeur,*  
*Il n' y a rien d' inutile sur la terre,*  
*N' oubliez pas de m' apporter quelque chose de bon,*  
*Que de peines et de soins !*

He has no money and no credit.  
 She is never in a good humour.  
 There is nothing useless upon earth.  
 Do not forget to bring me something good.  
 What care and trouble !

**REMARK.**—The adverb *bien*, (much, many, a great deal), when used instead of *beaucoup*, is always followed by the

partitive article *du, de la, or des*, whilst *beaucoup*, takes after it the preposition *de*, only; Ex :

*J' ai bien du chagrin*, (or *beaucoup de chagrin*) ; I have much sorrow.  
*Elle a bien de la haine*, (or *beaucoup de haine*) ; She has much hatred.  
*Nous aurons bien des ennemis*, (or *beaucoup d' ennemis*) ; We shall have many enemies.

## EXERCISE.

I have bought some very fine pictures at the fair. These  
acheté beau tableau m. pl. foire f. s.  
 men are some unfortunate Poles, who having<sup>2</sup> no<sup>1</sup> longer<sup>3</sup> a  
malheureux Polonais, ne plus \*  
 country, come (to seek) an asylum in America. How many  
patrie viennent asile m. s.  
 (acres of land)<sup>2</sup> (are there)<sup>1</sup> on that farm? So much insolence  
— terre y a-t-il ferme f. s.  
 and self-love, do not (at all)<sup>2</sup> become<sup>1</sup> a<sup>1</sup> well<sup>3</sup> bred<sup>4</sup> man.<sup>2</sup>  
amour-propre \* ne nullement conviennent à élevé  
 They have quite (as much) right as you to the inheritance  
f. pl. tout droit m. pl. que héritage m. s.  
 of their uncle. Many people think that (in order to) be happy  
oncle gens m. pl. pensent que pour heureux  
 they must be rich, but they (are mistaken). Persons<sup>2</sup> enough<sup>1</sup>  
il faut riche se trompent autre pl.  
 besides you (will know) how (to turn) this<sup>2</sup> business<sup>3</sup>  
sans sauront \* tirer affaire f. s.  
 (to advantage).<sup>1</sup> A little less of honour and more of profit,  
parti de m. peu honneur  
 such is the language of avarice. (There were) at the  
m. s. langage m. s. (d. art.) — f. s. Il y avait  
 ball very few Ladies, but (a great many) Gentlemen.  
bal m. s. Dames Cavalier pl.  
 (Unless you have) patience, you (will never) succeed.  
si vous n' avez pas — n' aurez point succès  
 (There were) too many people at the last concert. He  
monde dernier — m. s.  
 'never<sup>3</sup> wears<sup>2</sup> a hat. (There is) 'nothing<sup>3</sup> dearer to us  
porte \* chapeau il y a pour  
 upon earth than a good mother. If you learn your<sup>2</sup>  
(d. art.) terre f. s. mère f. s. apprenez  
 lesson<sup>3</sup> well<sup>1</sup> I ' (will give)<sup>3</sup> you<sup>2</sup> something good. What  
leçon f. s. donnerai m. s. que  
 advantages do we<sup>3</sup> 'not<sup>4</sup> derive<sup>2</sup> from a good education!  
avantages \* on retire — f. s.  
 Many men are blind to their own faults.  
bien aveugle pl. sur propre défaut pl.



---

## LESSON XXVI.

---

### SYNTAX OF THE SUBSTANTIVE.

(Page 20, Lesson 6.)

---

**RULE 1.**—In French, a substantive can never be governed by another substantive, (though this is often the case in English), except when preceded by a preposition; such as, *de, à, pour, &c.*; **Ex:**

*Le mari de ma sœur,  
L'amour de la gloire,  
Son goût pour le plaisir,  
Votre application à l'étude,*

*My sister's husband.  
The love of glory.  
His taste for pleasure.  
Your application to study.*

**REMARK.**—A substantive may be employed in a sentence, as the *subject*, the *object* or *regimen*, or the *Apostrophe*; and, as to the place it must occupy in both languages, there is scarcely any other difference than the following.

**RULE 2.**—When two substantives are united by a hyphen, and form what is generally called in English, a compound noun, and the first is employed to specify the *use, nature, occupation*, or the *substance* of which the other is made; as, *a night-cap, a river-fish, a school-master, a gold-watch, &c.*; the French, who have none of these words in their language, place, in similar cases, the first substantive last, and unite them by the preposition *de*, (of); thus: *un bonnet de nuit, un poisson de rivière, un maître d'école, une montre d'or, &c.*; literally: *a cap of night, a fish of river, a master of school, a watch of gold.*

**REMARK.**—If the second substantive express an object so well adapted to the first as not to be conveniently separated from it; as, *the kitchen-door, the chamber-window, &c.*; the French, after inverting the two substantives, as in the above rule, join them by a compound article; thus: *la porte de la cuisine, la fenêtre de la chambre, &c.*; that is to say: *the door of the kitchen, the window of the chamber.*

**RULE 3.**—When two words, in English, are united by a hyphen, the first being either a verb, or the object appropriated for using the second, or, more commonly, the object prepared by the second; as, *a dining-room, a wine-glass, a paper-mill, &c.*; the French still invert the two words, and unite them by

the preposition *à*, (to); thus: *une salle à manger, un verre à vin, un moulin à papier, &c.*; literally: *a room to eat (in), a glass to (put) wine (in), a mill to (make) paper.*

REMARK.—If the first word in English, (which is always the second in French), serve to denote some particular *commodity*, or *liquor*, either *sold*, or *contained* by the second; as, *the oyster-woman, the oil-bottle, the water-jug, &c.*; then the *definite article* is to be added, in French, to the preposition *à*; thus: *la femme aux huitres, la bouteille à l'huile, la cruche à l'eau, &c.*; that is to say: *the woman to (sell, or selling) the oysters, the bottle to (put in, or containing) the oil, the jug to (put in, or containing) the water.*

RULE 4.—In English, when a noun is followed by a *cardinal number*, prefixed to a *substantive of measure*, and an *adjective of dimension* terminates the sentence; as, *a house sixty feet high*; the substantive of dimension, and not the adjective, must be used in French,\* and the preposition *de*, placed before both the cardinal number and this substantive; thus: *une maison de soixante pieds de hauteur*. When two dimensions, belonging to the same object, are used in English, in sentences of this sort, the French preposition *sur*, may elegantly fill the place of the conjunction *et*; thus: *C'est un fossé de dix pieds de profondeur sur quinze de largeur*, It is a ditch ten feet deep and fifteen feet broad.

REMARK.—When the verb *to be*, is used in English, after the first noun; as, *this street is one hundred feet broad*; the verb *to be*, must be rendered in French by *avoir*, (to have); thus: *cette rue a cent pieds de largeur*.

### EXERCISE.

(There are) several gold<sup>2</sup> and silver<sup>3</sup> mines<sup>1</sup> in this country.

Il y a or argent ——— pays-ci m. s.

The silence of the night, the calmness of the sea, and the

— m. s. nuit f. s. calme m. s. mer f. s.

trembling<sup>2</sup> light<sup>1</sup> of the moon, diffused over the surface of

tremblant f. s. lumière f. s. lune f. s. répandu f. s. sur — f. s.

the water, served to heighten the beauty of the scene.

eau f. s. servaient rchausser beauté f. s. spectacle m. s.

Bring me my morning<sup>2</sup>-gown<sup>1</sup>. This table is made with

apportez- chambre robe f. s. — f. s. faite de

oak<sup>2</sup>-wood.<sup>1</sup> Burgundy<sup>2</sup>-wine<sup>1</sup> and champagne-wine,

chêne bois (d. art.) Bourgogne vin m. s.

are among the best French<sup>2</sup>-wines.<sup>1</sup> Tell John to shut

sont (au nombre de) pl. France pl. dites à de

\* Though it be more elegant, in French, to use the substantive of dimension, than the adjective, yet the latter may also be used, when prefixed to a numeral, followed by a substantive of measure; thus: *Une table longue de dix pieds et large de huit*, A table ten feet long and eight broad.

the street<sup>2</sup> -door<sup>1</sup>, the garden<sup>2</sup> -gate<sup>1</sup>, and to bring<sup>2</sup> me<sup>1</sup> the  
*rue f. s. porte f. s. jardin m. s. grille f. s. de*  
 cellar- key. Have you seen the water<sup>2</sup> -mill<sup>1</sup> which my  
*cave f. s. clef f. s. vu moulin m. s. que*  
 father has bought? no, but I have seen the wind<sup>2</sup> -mill<sup>1</sup> which  
*acheté? mais vent*  
 your brother has built. Will our dancing<sup>2</sup> -master<sup>1</sup> come  
*bâti \* danser maître (viendra-t-il)*  
 this evening? Where (did you put) my work<sup>2</sup> -basket<sup>1</sup>?  
*soir m. s. avez-vous mis ouvrage panier m. s.*  
 Madam, it is in your bed<sup>2</sup> -room<sup>1</sup>. The butter<sup>2</sup> -boy<sup>1</sup> and  
*m. coucher chambre beurre m. s. garçon*  
 the greens<sup>2</sup> -girl<sup>1</sup> (did not come) this morning. (Take away)  
*légume pl. fille ne sont pas venus matin m. s. emportez*  
 the vinegar- bottle, and bring<sup>2</sup> me<sup>1</sup> the sugar- dish  
*vinaigre m. s. bouteille f. s. sucre m. s. pot m. s.*  
 and the cream- basin. I know a man seven feet high. The  
*crème f. s. bassin m. s. connais hauteur.*  
 walls of Algiers are sixteen feet thick, and thirty feet  
*mur pl. Alger épaisseur \**  
 high.  
*hauteur.*

## LESSON XXVII.

### SYNTAX OF THE ADJECTIVE.

(Page 23, Lesson 7.)

#### AGREEMENT OF THE ADJECTIVE WITH THE SUBSTANTIVE.

**RULE 1.**—The adjective, in French, must *always agree* in gender and number with the substantive *to which it relates*; **Ex :**

*Un bon père et une bonne mère, ont généralement des enfans bons, respectueux, et obéissans,* A good father and a good mother, generally have good, respectful, and obedient children.

**RULE 2.**—When an adjective qualifies two or more substantives singular of the same gender, it must be put in the plural, and agree with them in gender; **Ex :**

*Le roi et le berger sont égaux après la mort,* The king and the shepherd are equal after death.  
*On trouve la vertu, la modestie, la jeunesse, et la beauté, réunies dans sa personne,* We find virtue, modesty, youth, and beauty, united in her person.

**RULE 3.**—When an adjective qualifies two or more substantives singular of *different genders*, it must be put in the *masculine plural*; Ex :

<i>Le frère et la sœur sont très savans,</i>	The brother and sister are very learned.
<i>Notre valet et notre servante sont paresseux, impertinens, et raisonneurs,</i>	Our man and our maid are idle, impertinent, and will retort.

**RULE 4.**—When an adjective qualifies only two substantives, if these substantives represent some inanimate objects, and be used in a sentence as the regimen, the adjective must agree with the last only; Ex :

<i>Elle a la bouche et les yeux ouverts; or</i>	} She has her mouth and eyes open.
<i>Elle a les yeux et la bouche ouverte,</i>	
<i>Tenez la porte et les fenêtres fermées; or</i>	} Keep the door and windows shut.
<i>Tenez les fenêtres et la porte fermée,</i>	

However, modern Grammarians prefer the agreement even in this case.

### EXERCISE.

A (young lady), mild, polite, and delicate, is very certain of  
*demoiselle doux f. poli f. décent f. assuré f.*  
 being beloved and esteemed by every body. (Uncivilized men)  
*être aimé f. estimé f. de (d. art.) sauvage m. pl.*  
 are generally tall, stout, and well-made; dexterous at the  
*grand pl. robuste pl. fait pl. adroit pl.*  
 chase, averse to labour, and very superstitious. A  
*chasse f. s. ennemi pl. du travail superstitieux pl. (d. art.)*  
 liar and a flatterer are equally despicable.  
*menteur m. s. (d. art.) flatteur m. s. également méprisable pl. (d. art.)*  
 Virtue and merit alone<sup>2</sup> are<sup>1</sup> calculated to please  
*Vertu f. s. (d. art.) mérite m. s. seul fait pour plaire*  
 us always. The courage and intrepidity of that man are  
*m. s. intrépidité f. s.*  
 wonderful. (Here is) a little boy who has a very<sup>4</sup> sprightly<sup>5</sup>  
*étonnant roûlé petit garçon qui spirituel*  
 air<sup>1</sup> and<sup>2</sup> countenance<sup>3</sup>. That man (has gained)  
*(d. art.) — m. s. (d. art.) physionomie f. s. s'est acquis*  
 over us an absolute<sup>4</sup> power<sup>1</sup> and<sup>2</sup> authority<sup>3</sup>. The celebrated  
*sur absolu pouvoir m. autorité f. célèbre*  
 Talma, performed with a charming<sup>4</sup> taste<sup>3</sup> and<sup>2</sup> dignity<sup>1</sup>.  
*— jouait charmant goût m. noblesse f.*

### THE PLACE OF ADJECTIVES.

**RULE 1.**—Contrary to the English idiom, every adjective in French, *when used in its literal and proper signification*, most generally follows the substantive to which it relates; any deviation from this rule being considered, either as a license, or, as an alteration made in the *original meaning* of the adjective; Ex :

*Un homme grand,*  
*Un grand homme,*  
*Une femme belle,*  
*Une belle femme,*  
*Un homme superbe,*  
*Un superbe homme,*  
*Une femme jolie,*  
*Une jolie femme,*

A tall man.  
 A great man.  
 A handsome woman.  
 A tall well-made woman.  
 A proud magnificent-man.  
 A beautiful man.  
 A pretty woman.  
 A handsome well-made woman.

**RULE 2.**—In English, when two adjectives qualify the same substantive, they are placed before this substantive, without being united by a conjunction; but, in French, the conjunction must be used, and both adjectives placed after the substantive;  
**Ex :**

*C'est un homme aimable et poli,*  
*C'est une femme bonne et vertueuse,*

He is an amiable well-behaved man.  
 She is a good virtuous-woman.

**REMARK.**—When three or more adjectives relate to the same noun, the conjunction is then placed between the two last, and the adjectives always put after the noun; thus: *Un ami constant, sincère, et désintéressé, est rare*: A constant, sincere, and disinterested friend, is rare.

**RULE 3.**—Adjectives expressing *moral qualities*, may, according to some Grammarians, be indifferently placed before, or after their substantives; but, then, they must deviate from their real meaning; for, as Mr. de Levizac observes in his Grammar of the French Tongue, “In conversation, or in a broken, loose style, it may be indifferent to say *femme aimable*, “or *aimable femme*: *talens sublimes*, or *sublimes talens*, &c.; “but in the dignified style, the place of the adjective may, in “a variety of instances, affect the beauty of a sentence.”

Therefore, *taste* and an *attentive ear*, added to the *careful reading* of good authors, and above all, *frequent conversations* with the well-informed of the French, will, almost in every instance, assign the adjective its proper place, and be the best guide for the pupil.

**RULE 4.**—The adjectives *demi*, (half), *nu*, (bare), and *feu*, (late), do not always agree with their substantives, as all other adjectives do: Their agreement entirely depends on the place which they occupy in a sentence; as follows:

1. When the adjective *demi*, precedes a substantive, it is invariable, and united to it by a hyphen; but when it follows, it agrees in *gender* with that substantive; **Ex :**

*Revenez dans une demi-heure,*  
*Donnez-moi trois verges et demie de*  
*dentelle,*

Come back in half an hour.  
 Give me three yards and a half of  
 lace.

Say, however, *Cette horloge sonne les heures et les demies*,  
 That clock strikes both the hours and half hours.



2. The adjective *nu*, when prefixed to the words *tête*, (head); *bras*, (arms); *jambes*, (legs); and *pieds*, (feet); is always unalterable, and united to them by a hyphen; but when it follows, it agrees with them in *gender* and *number*; Ex :

*En été, les petits enfans doivent toujours aller nu-bras, or les bras nus;* In summer, young-children should always go with their arms naked.

3. The adjective *feu*, is always of the *feminine gender*, when preceded by the article *la*, or the possessive pronouns *ma*, *ta*, *sa*, and *notre*, *leur*, used in the feminine; but, when *feu*, is prefixed to one of these words, it remains in the *masculine*; Ex :

*Feu sa tante, or sa feue tante était une femme accomplie,* Her late aunt was an accomplished woman.  
*Feu notre reine, or notre feue reine était adorée,* Our late queen was idolized.

REMARK.—The substantive *gens*, (people), though *masculine* of itself, requires that the adjective should be put in the *feminine gender*, when the adjective precedes it; but, should the adjective follow *gens*, then it is invariably put in the *masculine*; Ex :

*Toutes les vieilles gens sont soupçonneux,* All (old people) are distrustful.

Say, however, *tous les gens*, &c. (all people, &c.) and not *toutes les gens*. *Tous* and not *toutes*, is also prefixed to those adjectives which are spelled alike in both genders; as, *tous les pauvres gens*, all poor people; *tous les honnêtes gens*, all honest people; &c.

#### EXERCISE.

Every body knows<sup>2</sup> him<sup>1</sup> for a polite<sup>2</sup> well<sup>3</sup>-bred<sup>4</sup> man<sup>1</sup>,  
connait honnête élevé  
 and more<sup>2</sup> over<sup>1</sup>, for a truly honest man. She is a good<sup>2</sup>  
de parfait ce bon  
 charitable<sup>3</sup>-woman<sup>1</sup>. I do.<sup>1</sup> not<sup>3</sup> like<sup>2</sup> long<sup>5</sup>, complicated<sup>6</sup>,  
\* aime longue, compliqué,  
 and<sup>7</sup> perplexing<sup>8</sup> Grammars.<sup>4</sup> Give me half<sup>2</sup> a<sup>1</sup>  
embarrassant (d. art.) Grammaire f. pl. donnez- demi-  
 dollar and then you (will only owe me) a dollar and a half.  
piastre f. s. \* ne me devez plus que piastre \* demi.  
 (There is) a great difference, in French, between a man  
il y a f. s. Français  
 (complaisant to the ladies), and a gentle-man; an author  
galant galant auteur  
 (without money), and an author<sup>2</sup> (without reputation)<sup>1</sup>; a good<sup>2</sup>  
pauvre pauvre  
 child<sup>1</sup> and a good fellow. He ran through the streets  
m. s. enfant m. s. courait \* rue f. pl.  
 like a madman, bare-footed and bare-headed. When they  
comme fou, Lorsque on



conducted<sup>3</sup> him<sup>1</sup> before the Judge, he was bare<sup>2</sup> -footed<sup>1</sup>  
*conduisit devant Juge il avait (d. art.) nu pied m. pl.*  
 and bare<sup>2</sup> -headed<sup>1</sup>. The<sup>2</sup> late<sup>1</sup> queen, and my<sup>2</sup> late<sup>1</sup>  
*(d. art.) nu tête f. s. reine*  
 mother, were of the same age; but, a thing more surprising  
*mère (Ind 3.) — m. s. \* surprenant f. s.*  
 is, that the late queen and my late mother died precisely  
*ce que (sont mortes) précisément*  
 on the same day. Foolish people, are often very  
*\* jour m. s. (d. art.) sot gens de*  
 wicked people. All men of honour (will disapprove) of  
*méchiant pl. (d. art.) gens honneur desapprouveront \**  
 his conduct. All rich<sup>2</sup> people<sup>1</sup> are<sup>4</sup> <sup>3</sup>not<sup>5</sup> happy.  
*conduite f. s. (d. art.) gens heureux*

## LESSON XXVIII.

### SYNTAX OF THE ADJECTIVE.

(Continued.)

### REGIMEN OF ADJECTIVES.

**RULE 1.**—Several adjectives have a *regimen*; some require the preposition *de*, and others the preposition *à*, before the *substantive*, or *verb*, that follows them, which is then called their *complement*, *government*, or *regimen*; **Ex** :

*Digne de récompense,*  
*Indigne de régner,*  
*Utile à l' homme,*  
*Bon à manger,*

Worthy of reward.  
 Unworthy of reigning.  
 Useful to man.  
 Good to eat.

**RULE 2.**—The adjectives which, in French, govern the following *noun*, or *verb*, by the aid of the preposition *de*, are, most generally, those expressing *desire*, *satisfaction*, *recollection*, *exemption*, *knowledge*, *ignorance*, *fear*, &c. In similar cases, *de*, must be rendered, in English, by one of the following prepositions: *of*, *from*, *after*, *with*, *by*, &c.; **Ex** :

*Vous êtes incapable de mensonge,*  
*Je suis exempt de danger,*  
*Elle est avide de richesses,*  
*Il est content de son sort,*  
*Vous serez aimé d' elle, &c.*

You are incapable of an untruth.  
 I am free from danger.  
 She is greedy after riches.  
 He is satisfied with his lot.  
 You will be loved by her, &c.

**RULE 3.**—The adjectives which, in French, govern the following *noun*, or *verb*, by the aid of the preposition *à*, are, most generally, those expressing *aptness, fitness, inclination, conformity, habit, disposition, submission, &c.* In similar cases, the French *à*, must be rendered, in English, by one of the following prepositions: *to, for, in, after, &c.*; Ex:

*Cela est nuisible à la santé,*

*Elle est propre à tout,*

*Soyez ponctuel à vos engagements, et*

*zélé à remplir vos devoirs;*

*Il est âpre au gain, (for à le).*

That is hurtful *to* health.

She is fit *for* any thing.

Be punctual *in* your engagements, and

zealous *in* discharging your duty.

He is eager *after* gain.

**REMARK.**—There are a few adjectives, in French, very often followed by the preposition *envers*, (towards); which preposition is sometimes rendered in English by *to*, as in the following examples: *Soyons charitables ENVERS les pauvres*, Let us be charitable *to* the poor; *Ne soyez jamais cruel ENVERS vos ennemis*, Never be cruel *to* your enemies; &c.

**RULE 4.**—A *substantive* may be governed by *two adjectives*, provided these adjectives can be followed by the same preposition; as, *Il est cher et utile à sa famille*, He is dear and useful *to* his family; for, should we invert the two adjectives, thus: *Il est utile et cher à sa famille*, He is useful and dear *to* his family, the sentence would be still correct. But it would be very improper to say: *Il est chéri et utile à sa famille*, because the adjective *chéri*, (beloved), governs the preposition *de*, and not *à*.

### EXERCISE.

Virtuous<sup>2</sup> men<sup>1</sup> are worthy of esteem. God alone is free  
*Vertueux pl. digne estime f. s. seul exempt*  
 from inconstancy. (Ambitious people) are always more  
*inconstance f. s. ambitieux m. pl.*  
 greedy after dignities than after praises. Has<sup>3</sup> your<sup>1</sup> master<sup>2</sup>  
*avide honneur pl. louange pl. (a-t-il) maître*  
 been pleased with you? A youth who is insensible to the  
*content (jeune homme)*  
 remonstrances of his parents, is unfit for (any thing). She  
*remontrance pl. ne propre rien*  
 is awkward in (every thing). We ought (to be) polite to  
*maladroit f. tout faire. il faut poli*  
 (every body). A powerful<sup>2</sup> ambitious<sup>3</sup> -king<sup>1</sup>, is generally  
*puissant généralement*  
 feared and detested by all his neighbours.  
*craint détesté voisin m. pl.*

---

## LESSON XXIX.

---

### SYNTAX OF THE ADJECTIVE.

(Continued.)

---

#### OF THE COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVES.

(Page 28, Lesson 9.)

**RULE 1.**—The comparative adverbs *si*, (so); *aussi*, (as); *tant*, (so much); *autant*, (as much); *plus*, (more); and *moins*, (less); must be repeated, in French, before every *adjective*, *noun*, or *verb*, in the same sentence, whether they be used in the *comparative*, or *superlative* degree; **Ex :**

<i>Il est aussi jeune, aussi riche, et tout aussi puissant que vous,</i>	He is <i>as</i> young, <i>as</i> rich, and quite <i>as</i> powerful as you.
<i>C'est la Dame la plus aimable, la plus vertueuse, et la plus charitable de la ville,</i>	She is <i>the most</i> amiable, prudent, and charitable Lady in the city.

**RULE 2.**—The conjunction *than*, which is generally placed, in English, after an *adjective*, *substantive*, or *verb*, expressing a comparison, must be rendered, in French, after the following manner; viz :

1. When *than* precedes a *noun*, or *pronoun*, it is rendered by *que*, only; **Ex :**

<i>Je suis plus vieux que mon frère,</i>	I am older than my brother.
<i>Elle est moins belle que sa sœur,</i>	She is less handsome than her sister.

2. When *than* precedes a *number*, it is rendered by *de*, only; **Ex :**

<i>Elle n'a pas plus de vingt ans,</i>	She is not more than twenty.
--	------------------------------

But, should a *noun*, or *pronoun*, be placed between *than* and the *number*, in a comparative sentence, *than*, is then rendered by *que*, and the preposition *by*, answered by *de*, prefixed to the *numerical adjective*; **Ex :**

<i>Quoiqu' il soit plus âgé que moi de deux ans, je suis plus grand que lui de deux pouces,</i>	Though he be older than I by two years, I am taller than he by two inches.
---	--

3. When *than* precedes a verb in the *infinitive mood*, it is rendered by *que de*, or *qu' à*; and by *que ne*, when the verb is not used in the *infinitive*; **Ex :**

<i>Il est plus aisé de critiquer un auteur que de l'imiter,</i>	It is easier to criticise an author than to imitate him.
<i>Il est toujours plus disposé à punir qu'à pardonner,</i>	He is always more ready to punish than to forgive.
<i>Il m'a donné plus d'argent que je n'en demandais,</i>	He gave me more money than I asked for.

But, should a conjunction intervene between *than* and the verb, then, *que* only must be used ; Ex :

<i>On n'est jamais plus heureux que quand on croit l'être,</i>	We are never happier <i>than when</i> we believe ourselves to be so.
--	--

RULE 3.—When the preposition *in*, follows a superlative, in English, it is always rendered, in French, by *du, de la, de l', or des*, and sometimes by *de*, only ; Ex :

<i>L'Italie est le plus beau pays du monde,</i>	Italy is the finest country <i>in</i> the world.
<i>Mademoiselle D. est la meilleure musicienne de la ville,</i>	Miss D. is the best musician <i>in</i> town.

RULE 4.—*The more* and *the less*, either united, or repeated in a sentence, to express a comparison, are to be rendered, in French, by *plus* and *moins*, without the definite article ; Ex :

<i>Plus je la vois plus je l'aime,</i>	The more I see her the more I love her.
<i>Plus on est pauvre moins on a d'amis,</i>	The poorer a man is the less friends he has.

OBSERVE that, the superlative adverb *the most*, or *the least*, prefixed, in English, to an *adjective* or *past participle*, (implying no comparison), is always rendered, in French, by *le plus*, or *le moins*, instead of *la plus*, *la moins*, *les plus*, or *les moins*, which are to be used with comparative adjectives, only ; Ex :

<i>Ce n'est pas quand elle est le plus occupée qu'elle est le moins nouchalante,</i>	It is not when she is the most busy that she is the least indolent.
--	---

### EXERCISE.

Your dress is less handsome, rich, and splendid than that of Mrs. B. Nothing is more lovely than virtue, and nothing is more desirable than wisdom. Paris is less populous than London, but it is<sup>2</sup> much<sup>3</sup> more<sup>4</sup> so<sup>1</sup> than Madrid. His youngest<sup>2</sup> son<sup>1</sup> is more than forty-five. He is taller than his father by the<sup>3</sup> whole<sup>1</sup> head. It is easier to acquire a fortune than to keep<sup>2</sup> it<sup>1</sup>. She is always more ready to prattle than to study. You owe<sup>3</sup> me<sup>1</sup> five dollars, and I could

*parure f. s. riche brillant celle*  
*Rien ne aimable (d. art.) vertu f. s.*  
*sagesse f. s. m. s. peuple*  
*Londres m. beaucoup le*  
*(le plus jeune) a ans. (plus grand)*  
*père tout tête f. s. m. de (d. art.)*  
*f. s. conserver f. disposé f. à*  
*babiller étudier devez gourde pl saurais*

<sup>1</sup>not<sup>3</sup> accept less than you owe<sup>2</sup> me<sup>1</sup>. People are<sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>never<sup>3</sup>  
 \* *accepter* *On* *s.*  
 more generous than when they are poor. If you listen<sup>2</sup>  
*généreux* *on* *pauvre s.* *écoutez*  
 (to him)<sup>1</sup>, he (will tell) <sup>2</sup>you<sup>1</sup> that he is the best man in the  
*le* *dira* *que*  
 world. The more we study the more we learn, and the less  
*monde m. s.* *on étudie* *apprend*  
 difficulties<sup>3</sup> do we<sup>1</sup> encounter<sup>2</sup>. It is<sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>not<sup>3</sup> when you are the  
*de difficultés* \* *éprouve* *Ce*  
 most studious, that you are<sup>2</sup> the least admired (for it)<sup>1</sup>.  
*studieux f. s.* *que* *admiré f. s.* *en*  
 (Here is) the most studious of all my pupils.  
*voici* *studieux f. s.* *écolière f. pl.*

## OF THE NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

(Page 31, Lesson 10.)

## THE CARDINAL NUMBERS.

**RULE 1.**—The cardinal numbers *un, deux, trois, &c.* always precede the substantive to which they relate, and take the definite article before them when this substantive is used in a *definite sense*, otherwise they do not; **Ex :**

*On vient d'arrêter quatre voleurs,* Four robbers have just been arrested.  
*On vient d'arrêter les quatre voleurs* The four robbers I mentioned to you,  
*dont je vous avais parlé,* have just been arrested.

**RULE 2.**—The cardinal numbers are *invariable in their form*, that is to say, they do not agree in *gender* and *number* with the substantive to which they belong, as other adjectives do; from this rule, however, must be excepted \**quatre-vingt, cent, and un million*, which take an *s*, in the plural, when prefixed to a substantive, and *none*, when followed by another numeral; **Ex :**

*Voltaire est mort à l'âge de quatre-vingt-quatre ans, après avoir écrit et publié près de quatre-vingts volumes in-octavo,* Voltaire died at eighty-four years of age, after writing and publishing upwards of eighty volumes in octavo.

*Remark* what has already been said, page 13, of this Grammar, about *quatre-vingt, cent, mille, &c.*

\* *Quatre-vingt*, (eighty), may be indifferently spelled, in French, with or without an *s*, when used by itself.



**RULE 3.**—When a cardinal number, in English, is immediately followed by a substantive and a past participle, the *noun* and *participle* must agree, in French, in *gender* and *number*, and the preposition *de* be placed between them; **Ex :**

*Il y eut trente hommes de tués et cinquante de blessés dans cet engagement,*      There were thirty men killed and fifty wounded in that engagement.

## THE ORDINAL NUMBERS.

**RULE 1.**—The ordinal numbers *premier*, *second*, or *deuxième*, *troisième*, &c. are generally *prefixed* to the substantive to which they relate, agree with it in *gender* and *number*, and take the definite article before them; **Ex :**

*Lisez la première page, or les deux premières pages du second volume,*      Read the first page, or the first two pages of the second volume.

**RULE 2.**—When the ordinal numbers are used to quote a *chapter*, an *article*, *passage* or *paragraph*, or *the page of a book*, they may indifferently precede or follow their substantive; but, in the last instance, the article must be omitted; **Ex :**

*Le dixième chapitre, or chapitre dixième,*      Chapter the tenth.  
*La vingtième page, or page vingtième,*      Page the twentieth.  
*Le troisième livre, or livre troisième,*      Book the third.

## EXCEPTIONS.

**EXCEPTION 1.**—The cardinal numbers are sometimes used as *substantives*, when speaking of *dates* in general, or of *the cards of a game*, &c.; the *cardinal number* is then united to the *substantive* by the preposition *de*; **Ex :**

*Je lui ai écrit le dix et le quinze du mois dernier,*      I wrote to him on the tenth and fifteenth of last month.  
*Il écarta le cinq de carreau et releva le sept de pique,*      He discarded the five of diamonds and took up the seven of spades.

**EXCEPTION 2.**—The *cardinal numbers* are to be used, in French, *instead of the ordinal*, in mentioning *all the days of the month*, *the first excepted*, for which *le premier* must be employed, and not *le un*;<sup>\*</sup> also, in speaking of *sovereigns* and *princes*, the *cardinal numbers* should invariably fill the place of the *ordinal*; **Ex :**

*La société s'assemblera le premier, le deux, le huit, et le onze du mois prochain,*      The society will meet on the first, the second, the eighth, and the eleventh of next month.  
*Charles cinq, roi de France, fut surnommé le Sage,*      Charles the fifth, king of France, was surnamed the Wise.

<sup>\*</sup> *Le un, le huit, le onze, &c.* are always spelled without *Elision*, and are sounded, somewhat as if an *h* aspirated commenced each of those numbers; thus: *le hun, le huit, le honte, &c.* (see, page 13, of this Grammar, *onze, onzième, &c.*)



When alluding to *the first sovereign of a dynasty*, the French use *the ordinal number*, as in English; therefore, they say: *François premier*, Francis the first; *Napoléon, premier*, &c. They also say: *Napoléon second*, or *Napoléon deux*; *George second*, or *George deux*; &c. The *first form* of these expressions, however, is far preferable to the other.

REMARK.—For the two following solitary names of an Emperor and a Pope, and, as a distinction from other sovereigns, the French say: *Charles quint*, Charles the fifth, (Emperor of Germany); and *Sixte quint*, Sixtus the fifth; (Pope); instead of *Charles cinq* and *Sixte cinq*.

## EXERCISE.

His father gave<sup>2</sup> him<sup>1</sup> forty dollars to buy a horse.  
 (a donné) lui pour  
 Has<sup>2</sup> he returned (to you)<sup>1</sup> the ten guineas (you lent him)?  
 -t- rendu vous guinée pl. que vous lui aviez prêtées?  
 One hundred cavalry and two hundred infantry  
 homme de de  
 arrived this morning to reinforce the garrison. The  
 sont arrivés m. pl. matin m. s. pour renforcer garnison f. s.  
 American<sup>2</sup> frigate<sup>1</sup> had<sup>2</sup> only<sup>3</sup> fifteen men killed and thirty  
 Américain frégate f. s. eut de tué  
 wounded during the combat. When you have finished  
 de blessé pendant — m. s. (Ind. 7.) fini  
 reading the first<sup>2</sup> three<sup>1</sup> volumes, of this work, I (will lend)<sup>2</sup>  
 de (Inf. 1.) — m. pl. ouvrage m. s. prêterai  
 you<sup>1</sup> the fourth. It is at the eighteenth page of your Grammar,  
 m. s. Ce — f. s. Grammaire  
 lesson the ninth, rule the fifth, that you (will find) what you  
 trouverez (obj.)  
 (look for). He lost more than one hundred crowns on the  
 cherchez. (a perdu) écu m. pl. sur  
 ten of diamonds. That ship will not<sup>3</sup> sail<sup>2</sup> for  
 carreau m. s. navire m. s. \* partira (d. art.)  
 Europe before the twelfth of next<sup>2</sup> month<sup>1</sup>. The Royal<sup>2</sup>  
 — f. s. m. (c. art.) prochain m. s. — f. s.  
 Library<sup>1</sup> is<sup>2</sup> only<sup>4</sup> (opened to the public)<sup>3</sup> on the first and  
 bibliothèque f. s. ouvert f. s. — m. s. \* m. s.  
 the fifteenth of each month. Lewis the first, son of  
 m. chaque Louis  
 Charlemagne, was surnamed the Meek. Henry the fourth,  
 (Ind. 5.) surnommé débonnaire m. s. Henri  
 king of France, was murdered by Ravallac. Philip the  
 (Ind. 5.) assassiné Philippe  
 fifth, king of Spain, was regretted by all his subjects. The  
 Espagne (Ind. 5.) regretté de sujet m. pl.  
 Pope sixtus the fifth died universally detested for his pride  
 Pape mourut universellement détesté orgueil m. s.  
 and severity.  
 (pron.) sévérité f. s.

---

## LESSON XXX.

---

### SYNTAX OF THE PRONOUN.

(Page 33, Lesson 11.)

---

#### OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

We have now attained the most difficult part of the French Syntax. In the following Exercises the verbs will be frequently used, because without them the place of the pronouns cannot be ascertained. The cases are also of great importance in reference to the personal pronouns. The learner is therefore advised to review with care, what has already been observed upon the subject, page 16, of this Grammar.

#### PRONOUNS OF THE FIRST PERSON.

NOMINATIVE,	{	First person <i>singular</i> of either gender,	{	je or moi, (I).
OBJECTIVE,				me or moi, (me).
NOMINATIVE,	{	First person <i>plural</i> of either gender,	{	nous, (we).
OBJECTIVE,				nous, (us).

#### OF THE PLACE OF THESE PRONOUNS.

**RULE 1.**—*Je* and *moi*, should not be used indifferently, as being *one* and *the same* nominative pronoun; *je*, must invariably precede the verb to which it is the nominative, and never be separated from it, except by some other personal pronoun, or pronouns, used in the objective case, in *affirmative* or *negative* sentences; **Ex**:

*Je donne,*  
*Je vous donne,*  
*Je vous le donne,*  
*Je ne vous le donne pas,*

*I give.*  
*I give (to) you.*  
*I give it to you.*  
*I do not give it to you.*

*Moi*, on the contrary, whenever used as a nominative pronoun, must be separated from the verb by the *relative nominative* pronoun *qui*, (who or that), or by a verb in the infinitive mood; *moi* is also employed in the nominative case, when preceded by the verb *être*, (to be), used impersonally; or at the end of a comparative sentence, when *than*, or *as*, in English, is followed by *I*, with a verb understood; **Ex**:

Moi qui vous parle,  
 Moi, lui parler ! jamais,  
 Qui a fait cela ? C'est moi.  
 Elle parle le Français mieux que moi,  
 Il écrit aussi bien que moi,

I who am speaking to you.  
 I, speak to him ! never.  
 Who has done that ? It is I.  
 She speaks the French better than I.  
 He writes as well as I.

REMARK.—*Je*, is frequently used after certain verbs, in interrogative sentences ; as, *Ai-je ?* (have I) ? *Suis-je ?* (am I) ? *Parlé-je ?* (do I speak) ?

RULE 2.—*Me* and *moi*, are both used in the objective case ; but, with this difference, that *me*, in French, is invariably placed before the verb by which it is governed, and admits of no preposition before it. This pronoun is generally rendered in English, by *me*, or *to me* ; Ex :

Il me vit et me parla,  
 Elle m' écrit souvent, quoiqu' elle ne  
 m' aime pas,

He saw *me* and spoke *to me*.  
 She writes *to me* often, though she  
 does not like *me*.

*Moi*, on the contrary, is always put after the verb, with a preposition prefixed, or a conjunction, (the preposition *à* being excepted) ; Ex :

Ils parlent de moi,  
 Elle travaille pour moi,  
 Voulez-vous venir avec moi ?  
 Il ne sortira pas sans moi,  
 Il n' aime que moi,

They speak *of me*.  
 She works *for me*.  
 Will you come *with me* ?  
 He will not go out *without me*.  
 He loves nobody *but me*.

REMARK.—*Me* and *moi*, are also used with a verb in the imperative mood ; thus : When speaking *affirmatively*, *moi*, and not *me*,\* must be placed after the verb ; as, *Donnez-moi*, give me ; *Parlez-moi*, speak to me ; &c. But, should the verb be used *negatively*, or *interrogatively*, then the objective pronoun *me*, in French, is to be placed before the verb, and never *moi* ; Examples : *Me blâmez-vous ?* do you blame me ? *Ne me parlez-vous pas ?* do you not speak to me ? &c.

Again, when *I* is used instead of *me*, in English, at the beginning, or in the middle of a sentence, the verb being preceded by the relative pronoun *whom*, or *that*, (que), the French *moi* must then take the place of *je* ; Example : *Moi que l' on persécute*, I whom (or that) they persecute. For, we might ask here : Whom do they persecute ? and the answer would be *me*, (*moi*), and not *I*, (*je*).

## EXCEPTIONS TO THE SECOND RULE.

When the preposition *à*, (to), is used in French, after one of the following verbs, the objective pronoun *moi*, (me), must be placed after the verb, as in English ; Ex :

\* There is only one instance, of *me* being placed after the verb. This is, when *moi*, after the imperative, is followed by the relative pronoun *en* ; as, *Donnez-m'en*, Give me some ; &c. instead of *Donnez-moi en*, which is never said.

*Etre à*, (meaning to belong to); as, *Ce livre est à moi*, This book belongs to me.  
*Songer à*, } (to think of); as, *Pensez (or songez) à moi*, Think of me.  
*Penser à*, }  
*Viser à*, (to aim at); as, *Il vise à moi*, He aims at me.  
*Courir à*, } (to run to); as, *Elle court (or elle accourt) à moi*, She runs to me.  
*Accourir à*, }  
*S' abandonner à*, } (to abandon one's self to); *Livrez-vous à moi*, Abandon your-  
*Se livrer à*, } self to me.  
*S' adresser à*, (to apply to); as, *Vous vous adresserez à moi*, You will apply to me.  
*S' attacher à*, (to devote one's self to); as, *Il s' est attaché à moi*, He devoted himself to me.  
*S' habituer à*, } (to accustom one's self to); as, *S' habituera-t-il à moi?* Will  
*S' accoutumer à*, } he get accustomed to me.  
*Se fier à*, (to trust to); as, *Fiez-vous à moi*, Trust to me.  
*Se plaindre à*, (to complain to); as, *plaignez-vous à moi*, complain to me.  
*Se soumettre à*, (to submit, or yield to); as, *Soumettez-vous à moi*, Submit to me.  
*Parler à*, (to direct one's discourse to); as, *Parlez-vous à elle, ou à moi?* Do you speak to her, or to me?

And perhaps a few others.

Whenever a question is asked, in making use of the pronouns *à qui*, *auquel*, *à laquelle*, &c. (to whom, to which, &c.), followed by any of the above verbs; the answer, in French, must be *à moi*, or *à nous*, for the first person; *à toi*, or *à vous*, for the second; and for the third person, *à lui*, *à elle*, *à eux*, or *à elles*; Ex :

<i>A qui parlez-vous, Mademoiselle?</i> An-	To whom are you speaking, Miss?
swer : <i>à vous, Monsieur,</i>	Answer : <i>to you, Sir.</i>
<i>A qui, or à laquelle donnerai-je la mé-</i>	To whom, or to which shall I give the
<i>daille? à moi, à elle, &amp;c.</i>	medal? <i>to me, to her, &amp;c.</i>
<i>A qui, or auquel m' adresserai-je à</i>	To whom, or to which shall I apply?
<i>moi, à lui, &amp;c.</i>	<i>to me, to him, &amp;c.</i>

**RULE 3.**—The first person plural, in French, is the word *nous*, (we or us), which applies to *both genders*. The personal pronoun *nous*, never changes its form; therefore, it must be rendered in English, by *we*, when used in the *nominative case*, and by *us*, in the *objective*; Ex :

<i>Nous aimons,</i>	<i>We love.</i>
<i>Nous vous aimons,</i>	<i>We love you.</i>
<i>Nous ne vous aimons pas,</i>	<i>We do not love you.</i>
<i>Nous qui aimons la musique,</i>	<i>We who love music.</i>
<i>Nous, tremble! Fi donc!</i>	<i>We, tremble! For shame!</i>
<i>Cette maison est à nous,</i>	<i>This house belongs to us.</i>
<i>Il sait sa leçon mieux que nous,</i>	<i>He knows his lesson better than we.</i>
<i>On nous voit et l' on nous écoute,</i>	<i>They see us and listen to us.</i>
<i>On pense à nous et l' on parle de nous,</i>	<i>They think and speak of us.</i>
<i>Elle s' habille comme nous,</i>	<i>She dresses like us.</i>
<i>Nous comprend-il?</i>	<i>Does he understand us?</i>
<i>Ne nous comprend-il pas?</i>	<i>Does he not understand us?</i>
<i>Nous, que l' on accuse d' être paresseux;</i>	<i>We, whom they accuse of being idle.</i>
<i>A qui sont ces pêches? à nous,</i>	<i>To whom do these peaches belong?</i>
	<i>to us.</i>
<i>Donnez-nous en une couple,</i>	<i>Give us a couple (of them).</i>

## EXERCISE.

I love, admire and respect, a just<sup>2</sup> and  
 (aimer, Ind. 1.) pron. — pron. (respecter, Ind. 1.) juste  
 beneficent<sup>3</sup> man<sup>1</sup>. He knew very well that it was I,  
 bienfaisant (savoir, Ind. 3.) ce (Ind. 3.)  
 although he could neither see me nor speak (to me.) My  
 quoique ne pût ni (Inf. 1.) ni (Inf. 1.)  
 mother loved me so tenderly, that she thought<sup>2</sup> of<sup>4</sup> none<sup>1</sup> but<sup>3</sup>  
 (Ind. 3.) que (penser, Ind. 3.) à ne que  
 me, (was wholly taken up) with me, and saw<sup>2</sup> none<sup>1</sup> but me in the  
 ne s'occupait que de (Ind. 3.) ne  
 universe. Do as I do and you (will succeed). She writes  
 univers m. s. Faites comme \* réussir (Ind. 7.) (Ind. 1.)  
 better than I. To whom (shall I apply), to him or to her?  
 qui s'adresser (Ind. 7.)  
 No, apply to me. It is I, and not he, whom they ought  
 (Imper.) Ce (non pas) l'on devrait  
 (to punish), since it is I alone who have<sup>2</sup> deserved<sup>3</sup> it<sup>1</sup>. This  
 puisque seul mérite m.  
 pen does<sup>1</sup> not<sup>3</sup> belong<sup>2</sup> to me. (Though we were) as rich  
 plume f. s. \* est fussions-nous pl.  
 as Cræsus, if we do<sup>1</sup> not<sup>3</sup> know<sup>2</sup> how (to set) bounds to our  
 Cræsus, \* (Ind. 1.) \* mettre des borne pl.  
 desires we will always<sup>2</sup> be<sup>1</sup> poor. Trust to us, and rely  
 désir m. pl. \* (Ind. 7.) pauvre pl. comptez  
 upon us; if the success of that business depends upon us,  
 succès m. s. affaire f. s. dépend de  
 we (will neglect)<sup>2</sup> nothing<sup>3</sup> to oblige you.  
 (Ind. 7.) pour (Inf. 1.)

## PRONOUNS OF THE SECOND PERSON.

NOMINATIVE,	}	Second person <i>sing.</i> of either gender,	{	tu or toi, (thou).
OBJECTIVE,				te or toi, (thee).
NOMINATIVE,	}	Second person <i>plur.</i> of either gender,	{	vous,
OBJECTIVE,				vous,

## OF THE PLACE OF THESE PRONOUNS.

The place which the personal pronouns *tu*, *te*, *toi*, and *vous*, must occupy in a sentence, so perfectly coincides with that of *je*, *me*, *moi*, and *nous*, that no additional rule on the subject seems here to be necessary. Let the Learner, before writing the following Exercise, attentively commit to memory every thing which has already been said about the personal pronouns of the *first person*; then, let him apply these different rules to those of the *second*, and he will find no difficulty whatever in assigning each of these pronouns its proper place.



## EXERCISE.

God, after taking Adam into the garden of Eden,  
(avoir conduit) ——— jardin m. s.  
 said<sup>2</sup> (to him)<sup>1</sup>: 'Thou mayest eat freely of all the  
(Ind. 5.) (pouvoir Ind. 1.) manger  
 fruit of this garden, but as to that of the tree of the  
— m. pl. mais quant ceux arbre m. s.  
 knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt<sup>1</sup> not<sup>4</sup> eat<sup>3</sup>  
science f. s. (c. art.) bien m. s. (c. art.) mal m. s. \* toucheras  
 (of it)<sup>2</sup>; for, in the day that thou eatest<sup>2</sup> thereof<sup>1</sup>, thou<sup>2</sup>  
y car \* que (manger, Ind. 7.) en  
 shalt surely<sup>1</sup> die<sup>3</sup>. The Lord then<sup>2</sup> said<sup>1</sup> to  
\* (sois sûr que) mourir, (Ind. 7.) Seigneur (Ind. 5.)  
 Abraham: Get thee out of thy country unto a land that I  
— va- en \* pays m. s. dans m. autre  
 will shew<sup>2</sup> thee<sup>1</sup>; there I (will bless) thee and make  
\* vais indiquer bénir, (Ind. 7.) (rendre, Ind. 7.)  
 thy name great; I will also<sup>2</sup> bless<sup>1</sup> them that bless thee,  
nom m. s. fameux \* celui m. pl. qui (Ind. 7.)  
 and curse them that curse thee: From thee (will spring)  
(maudire, Ind. 7.) (Ind. 7.) sortir (Ind. 7.)  
 a great nation, and I will bless in thee all thy posterity.  
grand f. — f. s. en postérité f. s.  
 You do<sup>1</sup> not<sup>2</sup> study<sup>2</sup> sufficiently, and you are always<sup>2</sup>  
\* (étudier, Ind. 1.) assez  
 complaining<sup>1</sup> that you (do not improve): Truly, (this is)  
(se plaindre, Ind. 1.) (de ce que) ne faites point de progrès: voilà  
 a circumstance which must appear<sup>2</sup> very singular (to you)<sup>1</sup>:  
circonstance f. s. qui doit (Inf. 1.) singulier f. s.  
 I believe<sup>2</sup> it<sup>1</sup>; but, permit me to tell you, that it has<sup>2</sup>  
(Ind. 1.) m. mais (Imper.)- de (Inf. 1.) que f.  
 never<sup>3</sup> astonished (any body) but yourself.  
(étonner, Inf. 5.) personne que vous.

## PRONOUNS OF THE THIRD PERSON.

NOM.	third person <i>sing.</i>	il,	m.	(he or it).
		lui, (qui),	m.	he, (who).
		elle,	f.	(she or it).
		elle, (qui),	f.	she, (who), &c.
OBJ.	third person <i>sing.</i>	le,	m.	(him or it).
		la,	f.	(her or it).
		lui,	m. and f.	(to him or to her).
		de lui, m. d'elle, f.		(of him) m. (of her) f. &c.
NOM.	third person <i>plur.</i>	ils,	m.	(they).
		eux, (qui),	m.	they, (who).
		elles,	f.	(they).
		elles, (qui),	f.	they, (who), &c.
OBJ.	third person <i>plur.</i>	les,	m. and f.	(them).
		leur,	m. and f.	(to them).
		d'eux,	m.	} (of them), (from them), &c.
		d'elles,	f.	



## OF THE PLACE OF THESE PRONOUNS.

**RULE 1.**—The nominative pronouns *il* and *elle*, are always placed before the verb, in *affirmative* or *negative* sentences, and should never be separated from it, except by a *negation*, or by some other *personal pronouns*, used in the objective case; but, in *interrogative* sentences, the pronouns *il* and *elle*, most generally follow the verb to which they are the nominative; and are united to it by a hyphen; Ex :

<i>Il parle et elle chante,</i>	<i>He speaks and she sings.</i>
<i>Il ne parle pas, elle ne chante pas ;</i>	<i>He does not speak, she does not sing.</i>
<i>Il vous aime et elle vous hait,</i>	<i>He loves you and she hates you.</i>
<i>Il ne vous aime pas, elle ne vous hait pas ;</i>	<i>He does not love you, she does not hate you.</i>
<i>Parle -t- il ? Ne parle -t- il pas ?</i>	<i>Does he speak ? Does he not speak ?</i>
<i>Chante -t- elle ? Ne chante -t- elle pas ?</i>	<i>Does she sing ? Does she not sing ?</i>

**RULE 2.**—The personal pronouns *lui* and *elle*, are also employed in the nominative case, when separated from the verb by the relative pronoun *qui*, (who or that), or by a verb in the *infinitive mood*; also, after the verb *être*, (to be), used impersonally; or, at the end of a *comparative sentence*, when *than*, or *as*, in English, is followed by *he*, or *she*, with a verb understood. Generally speaking, *lui* and *elle* must be used as nominative pronouns, instead of *il* and *elle*, whenever they are separated from the verb, by a *word*, or *words*, making a sort of *incidency*; Ex :

<i>Lui, qui parle toujours,</i>	<i>He, who always speaks.</i>
<i>Elle, qui ne chante jamais,</i>	<i>She, who never sings.</i>
<i>Lui, se plaindre ! Il aurait tort.</i>	<i>He, complain ! He would be wrong.</i>
<i>Elle, m'aimer ! Ne l'espérez pas.</i>	<i>She, love me ! Do not expect it.</i>
<i>N' en doutez pas, ce sera lui ou elle ;</i>	<i>Do not doubt it, it will be he or she.</i>
<i>Elle a autant d'esprit que lui,</i>	<i>She has as much wit as he.</i>
<i>Il a moins d'argent qu'elle,</i>	<i>He has less money than she.</i>
<i>Lui seul le sait ; elle seule le dit ;</i>	<i>He alone knows it ; she alone says it.</i>
<i>Lui et elle, étant les moins studieux,</i>	<i>He and she, being the least studious,</i>
<i>n' ont jamais rien appris.</i>	<i>have never learned any thing.</i>

**RULE 3.**—The articles *le* and *la*; (the), become *personal pronouns*, when they supply the place of the *person*, or *thing* spoken of. These pronouns must be placed, in French, before the verb, (though always after it, in English), and are rendered by *him*, *her*, or *it*, only; that is to say : In neither language, is there a preposition either expressed, or understood; Ex :

<i>Voyez-vous le roi ? Oui, je le vois,</i>	<i>Do you see the king ? Yes, I see him.</i>
<i>Voyez-vous la reine ? Oui, je la vois,</i>	<i>Do you see the queen ? Yes, I see her.</i>
<i>Voyez-vous le soleil ? Oui, je le vois,</i>	<i>Do you see the sun ? Yes, I see him,</i>
	<i>or it.</i>
<i>Voyez-vous la lune ? Oui, je la vois,</i>	<i>Do you see the moon ? Yes, I see her,</i>
	<i>or it.</i>

**RULE 4.**—The objective pronoun *lui*, (to him, to her), applies to both genders, and is also placed before the verb. Here, the scholar will remark, that the word *lui*, is a mere contraction

of *à le* and *à la*, which cannot be used, in French, as personal pronouns; *lui*, consequently, implies the preposition *à*, (to), united to *le*, (him), and *la*, (her); therefore, it must be rendered, in English, by *him* or *her*, governed by the same preposition *to*, either expressed or understood; Ex :

<i>J' ai vu le roi et je lui ai parlé,</i>	I saw the king and spoke <i>to him</i> .
<i>J' ai vu la reine et je lui ai parlé,</i>	I saw the queen and spoke <i>to her</i> .
<i>Je voudrais lui faire un présent, mais</i>	I would make <i>him</i> a present, but I
<i>je ne sais que lui donner ;</i>	know not what to give <i>him</i> .
<i>Voici une montre, il faut la lui envoyer ;</i>	Here is a watch, you should send <i>it to him</i> , or <i>to her</i> .

REMARK.—The only difficulty which the Learner may possibly encounter, with regard to the use of *le*, *la*, or *lui*, consists in knowing when *him* and *her*, in English, are to be rendered by *lui*, or by *le* and *la*, only. Let him reflect, however, that there are in English, as well as in French, a great number of verbs which not only admit of a *direct regimen* after them, but also of an *indirect one*, and very often of *both*; therefore, the task of the student is merely to distinguish, when the pronoun regimen *is*, or *is not* to be governed, in English, by the preposition *to*. Let us illustrate this by a few EXAMPLES.

<i>Je le renverrai,</i>	I will send <i>him</i> away.
<i>Je lui enverrai une lettre,</i>	I will send <i>him</i> a letter.
<i>Je la ferai attendre,</i>	I will make <i>her</i> wait.
<i>Je lui ferai un présent,</i>	I will make <i>her</i> a present.
<i>Je veux le lui donner moi-même,</i>	I wish to give <i>it her</i> myself.

Now, let us give the English sentences a different turn, and begin each of them with an interrogative pronoun, and the answer will indicate the *objective pronoun* which is to be used, in French, *before the verb*; Ex :

Whom will I send away?	Answer: <i>him</i> , (le).
To whom will I send a letter?	Answer: <i>to him</i> , (lui).
Whom will I cause to wait?	Answer: <i>her</i> , (la).
To whom will I make a present?	Answer: <i>to her</i> , (lui).
What do I, myself, wish to give?	Answer: <i>it</i> , (the present), (le).
To whom do I wish to give it?	Answer: <i>to her</i> , (lui).

RULE 5.—When the objective pronouns *le*, *la*, *lui*, are employed with a verb in the *imperative mood*, these pronouns are always placed after the verb, in *affirmative sentences*; but, should the verb be used *negatively*, then *le*, *la*, *lui*, must precede the *imperative*; Ex :

<i>Cherchez-le; ne le cherchez pas ;</i>	Look for <i>him</i> , or <i>it</i> ; do not look for <i>him</i> , or <i>it</i> .
<i>Voyez-la; ne la voyez pas ;</i>	See <i>her</i> , or <i>it</i> ; do not see <i>her</i> , or <i>it</i> .
<i>Parlez-lui; ne lui parlez pas ;</i>	Speak <i>to him</i> , or <i>to her</i> ; do not speak <i>to him</i> , or <i>to her</i> .
<i>Ne lui parlerez-vous pas ?</i>	Will you not speak <i>to him</i> , or <i>to her</i> ?

RULE 6.—The objective pronouns *lui* and *elle*, when preceded by a *conjunction*, or by any *preposition* whatever, (the pre-

position à being excepted), must follow the verb, as in English;  
Ex :

<i>Ils parlent d'elle, or de lui ;</i>	They speak of her, or of him.
<i>Je travaille pour elle, or pour lui ;</i>	I work for her, or for him.
<i>Irez-vous avec elle, or avec lui ?</i>	Will you go with her, or with him ?
<i>Il ne sortira pas sans elle, or sans lui ;</i>	He will not go out without her, or without him.
<i>Vous n'aimez qu'elle, or que lui ,</i>	You love nobody but her, or but him.
<i>Nous le ferons malgré elle, or malgré lui ;</i>	We will do it in spite of her, or in spite of him.

REMARK.—When *he* is used, in English, instead of *him*, at the beginning, or in the middle of a sentence, the verb being preceded by the relative pronoun *whom*, or *that*, (que), the French *lui*, must then take the place of *il* ; Example : *Lui que l'on persécute*, He whom (or that) they persecute. For, we might ask here : Whom do they persecute ? and the answer would be *him*, (*lui*), and not *he*.

RULE 7.—Agreeably to the English idiom, the French objective pronouns *lui* and *elle*, when preceded by the preposition *à*, (to), must be placed after the verb ; but this rule only applies to the following, throughout their moods, tenses, and persons ; Ex :

<i>Etre à lui, or à elle ;</i> (meaning to belong to).	To belong to him, or to her.
<i>Songer à lui, or à elle ;</i>	} To think of him, or of her.
<i>Penser à lui, or à elle ;</i>	
<i>Viser à lui, or à elle ;</i>	To aim at him, or at her.
<i>Courir à lui, or à elle ;</i>	} To run to him, or to her.
<i>Accourir à lui, or à elle ;</i>	
<i>S'abandonner à lui, or à elle ,</i>	To abandon one's self to him, or to her.
<i>Se livrer à lui, or à elle ;</i>	To give one's self up to him, or to her.
<i>S'adresser à lui, or à elle ;</i>	To apply to him, or to her.
<i>S'attacher à lui, or à elle ;</i>	To devote one's self to him, or to her.
<i>S'habituer à lui, or à elle ;</i>	} To accustom one's self to him, or to her.
<i>S'accoutumer à lui, or à elle ;</i>	
<i>Se fier à lui, or à elle ;</i>	To trust to him, or to her.
<i>Se plaindre à lui, or à elle ;</i>	To complain to him, or to her.
<i>Se soumettre à lui, or à elle ;</i>	To submit, or yield to him, or to her.
<i>Parler à lui, or à elle ;</i> (to direct one's discourse to).	To speak to him, or to her.

And perhaps a few others, among the pronominal verbs.

REMARK.—Whenever a question is asked, in making use of the pronouns *à qui*, *auquel*, *à laquelle*, &c. (to whom, to which, &c.), followed by any of the above verbs ; the answer, in French, must be *à lui*, or *à elle*, (to him, or to her), placed after the verb, as in English.

#### EXERCISE.

He has studied the French<sup>2</sup> language<sup>1</sup> with great success.

Does he<sup>3</sup> speak<sup>2</sup> it<sup>1</sup> ? No ; but he writes it perfectly well.

\*

étudié  
parle f.

langue f. s.

(beaucoup de)

écrit

She is<sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>not<sup>3</sup> as old as they say. How old is she?  
vieil f. s. on le (Ind. 1.) Quel age a-t-  
 She is<sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>only<sup>3</sup> fifteen. She is very tall for her age.  
a ne que ans. grand f. s. — m. s.  
 Do you<sup>3</sup> often<sup>4</sup> see<sup>2</sup> her<sup>1</sup>? Yes, I see her and speak to  
voyez- (Ind. 1.) je (Ind. 1.)  
 her every day. Is it he who broke the decanter? No,  
tout pl. les jour pl. -ce (a cassé) carafe f. s.  
 Madam: It is she who (has done) it. However, (some body)  
a fait m. Cependant, quelqu'un  
 assured me that it was he. He, break the decanter!  
(a assuré) que ce (Ind. 3.) (Inf. 1.)  
 How could<sup>2</sup> that<sup>1</sup> be? There was (no body) but she  
Comment (se pourrait-il) cela • Il n'y (Ind. 3.) personne que  
 and I in the room. Bid him come and (send for)<sup>2</sup> her<sup>1</sup>.  
dans chambre f. s. Faites- venir envoyez chercher  
 See him here. There she is. She, who <sup>1</sup>never<sup>3</sup>  
voici • voilà  
 (utters a falsehood)<sup>2</sup>, will tell me the truth. He, whom I  
ment • (Ind. 7.) vérité f. s.  
 believed so sincere, has then told me an untruth. Do you  
(croire, Ind. 3.) — donc dit mensonge m. s. •  
 speak to me, or to her? No, Sir: I address myself to him.  
parlez- adresse me  
 To whom does this<sup>2</sup> handkerchief<sup>3</sup> belong<sup>1</sup>? To him. To  
mouchoir m. s. appartient  
 whom shall I<sup>2</sup> apply<sup>1</sup>? To him, to her, or to me.  
• (m' adresserai)

## PRONOUNS OF THE THIRD PERSON.

(Continued.)

### PLURAL NUMBER.

**RULE 1.**—The nominative pronouns *il*, *elle*, and *lui*, when used in the *plural number*, must be rendered, in French, by *ils*, *elles*, and *eux*; and the learner, will apply to *the latter*, all the rules, remarks and exceptions, already used to illustrate *the former*.

#### EXAMPLES:

*Ils parlent et elles écoutent,*

*They (the Gentlemen) are speaking, and they (the Ladies) listen.*

*Eux qui chantent; elles qui n' écoutent pas;*

*They who sing; they who do not listen.*

Eux seuls, or elles seules n' écoutaient pas ;	They alone did not listen.
Eux que j' aime, et eux qui ne m' aiment pas ;	They whom I love, and they who do not love me.
Ce sont eux. Non, ce ne sont pas eux : Ce sont elles.	It is they, (the Gentlemen). No, it is not : It is they, (the Ladies).
Parlent-ils ? Chantent-elles ?	Do they speak ? Do they sing ?
Elles, chanter ! Elles ne le savent pas,	They, sing ! They do not know how.

**RULE 2.**—The *plural number* of the objective pronouns *le*, (him or it), and *la*, (her or it), is the word *les*, (them) : This pronoun, in French, applies to both genders, as in English, and is always prefixed to the verb by which it is governed. With an *imperative mood*, the objective pronoun *les*, still follows the rules already given for *le* and *la*.

The plural of *lui*, (to him, to her), is the objective pronoun *leur*, (to them) ; this pronoun is also used of both genders, and should invariably precede the verb : There is no exception to this rule but *the imperative*, after which, *leur* must stand, as being the plural of *lui*.

But, when a question is asked, in English, and answered by *to them* ; or, when *to them* follows one of the verbs already mentioned, (Rule 7, of this lesson), the French, in similar cases, make use of *à eux*, for the masculine plural, and *à elles*, for the feminine, instead of *à leur*, which is never said.

The objective pronouns *eux* and *elles*, are also placed after the verb, when these pronouns are governed by any of the prepositions ; (the preposition *à*, being always excepted).

To conclude. Let the student apply to the *plural number* of these pronouns, all the rules of the *singular*, and he will find no difficulty whatever, in assigning to each of them its proper place in a sentence.

#### EXAMPLES.

Je les connais, et je leur parlerai ;	I know them, and I will speak to them.
Voyez-les, mais ne leur parlez pas ;	See them, but do not speak to them.
A qui est cette maison ? à elles,	To whom does this house belong ? to them.
A qui sont ces poires ? à eux,	To whom do these spears belong ? to them.
Donnez-leur en quelques-unes,	Give them a few (of them).
Ne leur en donnerez-vous pas ?	Will you not give them any ?
Je leur en donnerai demain,	I will give them some to-morrow.
Je penserai, or je songerai à elles ;	I will think of them.
Il commence à s' habituer à eux,	He begins to get use to them.
Nous marchâmes derrière elles,	We walked behind them.
Vous ne réussirez pas sans eux,	You cannot succeed without them.
Je ne vois qu' eux, or je ne vois qu' elles ;	I see no body but them.

#### EXERCISE.

I saw your brothers in London, who complained<sup>2</sup>  
 (Ind. 2.) frère pl. à Londres, se sont plaints  
 greatly<sup>1</sup> of you : They told me that they had<sup>2</sup> frequently<sup>4</sup>  
 beaucoup (Ind. 2.) (Ind. 3.) fort souvent



written<sup>3</sup> (to you)<sup>1</sup> and you had<sup>3</sup> <sup>1</sup>never<sup>4</sup> answered<sup>5</sup>  
 (Inf. 5.) m. s. <sup>que</sup> (Ind. 3.) <sup>ne jamais</sup> (Inf. 5.) m. s.  
 them<sup>2</sup>. Miss, you should write to them immediately, and  
<sup>il faut</sup> (Inf. 1.) <sup>à l'instant</sup> <sup>vous</sup>  
 apologize for your neglect. Some rivers are so rapid  
<sup>excuser de</sup> <sup>négligence f. s.</sup> <sup>Quelques rivières f. pl.</sup> <sup>rapide pl.</sup>  
 when they overflow, that they carry away (every thing)  
<sup>(déborder Ind. 1.)</sup> <sup>(entraînent avec elles)</sup> <sup>tout</sup>  
 they meet with in their course; they leave<sup>2</sup>  
<sup>ce que</sup> <sup>(rencontrer, Ind. 1.)</sup> \* \* \* \* <sup>laisser, (Ind. 1.)</sup>  
 nothing<sup>1</sup> behind, (them), but sand and pebbles.  
<sup>ne</sup> <sup>après</sup> <sup>que (c. art.)</sup> <sup>sable m. s.</sup> <sup>(c. art.)</sup> <sup>caillou m. pl.</sup>  
 Those trees are (too much) loaded: strip them of a part  
<sup>arbre m. pl.</sup> <sup>trop</sup> <sup>chargé pl.</sup> <sup>otez- leur</sup> \* <sup>partie f. s.</sup>  
 of their fruit. This dog and these birds are all my pleasure;  
<sup>m. s.</sup> <sup>chien</sup> <sup>oiseau pl. font</sup> <sup>plaisir m. s.</sup>  
 I love<sup>2</sup> nothing<sup>1</sup> but them; they alone are all my  
<sup>(aimer, Ind.)</sup> <sup>ne</sup> <sup>font.</sup>  
 amusement; I think<sup>2</sup> of<sup>4</sup> nothing<sup>1</sup> but<sup>3</sup> them. In the  
<sup>m. s.</sup> <sup>(penser, Ind. 1.)</sup> <sup>à</sup> <sup>ne</sup>  
 education of youth, we should propose (to ourselves)  
<sup>f. s.</sup> <sup>les (jeunes gens)</sup> <sup>on doit</sup> <sup>(Inf. 1.)</sup> <sup>se</sup>  
 to cultivate, to polish their understanding, and thus<sup>4</sup>  
<sup>de leur (Inf. 1.)</sup> <sup>déleur (orner, Inf. 1.)</sup> <sup>(d. art.)</sup> <sup>esprit m. s.</sup>  
 to<sup>1</sup> enable<sup>3</sup> them<sup>2</sup> to fill with dignity the different stations  
<sup>de disposer</sup> <sup>remplir</sup> <sup>dignité</sup> \* <sup>place f. pl. qui</sup>  
 assigned to them: but, above all, we ought (to instruct)  
<sup>sont assignés f. pl.</sup> <sup>on doit</sup>  
 them in that religious<sup>2</sup> worship<sup>1</sup> which God requires of  
<sup>religieux m. s.</sup> <sup>culte m. s.</sup> <sup>que</sup> <sup>(demander, Ind. 1.)</sup>  
 them.  
 m. pl.

## OF THE OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS

### *Se* and *Soi*.

**RULE 1.**—The objective, or reflective pronoun *se*, which is rendered, in English, by *one's self*; *himself*, *herself*, or *itself*; *ourselves*, *yourselves*, *themselves*, *each other*, *one another*, &c. generally applies to *persons* and *things*, and belongs to *both genders*, and *numbers*. This pronoun should always precede the verb to which it is the *complement*, or *regimen*; **Ex** :

<i>Il n' est jamais bien de trop s' exposer,</i>	It is never right to expose <i>one's self</i> too much.
<i>Il s' est blessé au bras droit,</i>	He wounded <i>himself</i> in the right arm.
<i>Votre sœur se fera mal,</i>	Your sister will hurt <i>herself</i> .
<i>La taupe se cache sous terre,</i>	The mole hides <i>itself</i> under ground.



*On ne doit jamais se livrer au désespoir,* We should never abandon *ourselves* to despair.

*Ils se sont tous déshonorés,* They have all disgraced themselves.  
*Les loups ne s'entre-mangent pas,* Wolves do not eat each other.  
*Les hommes doivent s'entr'aider,* Men should help one another.

**RULE 2.**—The compound pronouns *moi-même*, *toi-même*, *soi-même*, *lui-même*, or *elle-même*; *nous-mêmes*, *vous-mêmes*, *eux-mêmes*, or *elles-mêmes*, are sometimes very elegantly used, in French, after a reflective verb, for the sake of precision, *only*; though never expressed in English in similar cases; **Ex** :

*Je me tuerai (moi-même),* I will kill *myself*.  
*Tu te ruineras (toi-même),* Thou wilt ruin *thyself*.  
*Elle se louera (elle-même),* She will praise *herself*.  
*Ils se trahiront (eux-mêmes), &c.* They will betray *themselves*, &c.

But, should these *compound pronouns* be used after an *active verb*, preceded by a *noun*, or *pronoun*, in the nominative case; then, *moi-même*, (*myself*); *toi-même*, (*thyself*); &c. are most generally employed in both languages; **Ex** :

*Je le ferai moi-même,* I will do it *myself*.  
*Nous lui écrirons nous-mêmes,* We will write to him *ourselves*.  
*Vous les enverrez vous-mêmes,* You will send them *yourselves*.  
*Elles les achèteront elles-mêmes, &c.* They will buy them *themselves*, &c.

**RULE 3.**—The objective pronoun *soi*, which, in French, is only used in the *singular* of *both genders*, is rendered, in English, by *one's self*; *himself*, *herself*, or *itself*; *ourselves*, *yourselves* and *themselves*, and applies both to *persons* and *things*. This pronoun is generally employed in a sentence, where there is an *indefinite pronoun*, either expressed or understood, and must invariably follow the *verb*, or the *preposition* by which it is governed, and sometimes also a *conjunction*; **Ex** :

*N'aimer que soi, c'est être égoïste,* To love only one's self is to be selfish.  
*Quiconque ne pense qu'à soi, est méprisable;* Whoever thinks only of himself, is despicable.  
*On ne doit jamais être amoureuse de soi,* A young lady should never be too fond of herself.  
*La vertu est aimable de soi,* Virtue is amiable in itself.  
*On a souvent besoin d'un plus petit que soi,* We often need the assistance of one more insignificant than ourselves.  
*On doit rarement parler de soi,* People should very seldom speak of themselves.

**REMARK.**—In speaking of *persons*, *soi* is very often united to the word *même*; thus : *soi-même*. These two pronouns have absolutely the same meaning, with this difference however, that *soi-même*, is a stronger expression than *soi*; **Ex** :

*Chacun doit travailler pour soi, or pour soi-même,* Every one must work *for himself*.  
*On est rarement content de soi, or de soi-même;* People are seldom pleased *with themselves*.  
*Un véritable ami est un autre soi-même;* A true friend is another *self*.

## EXERCISE.

Children should love one another, play together,  
doivent (Inf. 1. Reflect.) les uns les autres, (Inf. 1.)  
 and <sup>1</sup>never<sup>2</sup> (strike each other). He (was vexed), (got up),  
entre-frapper, Reflect se fâcher, Ind. 5. se lever, Ind. 5.  
 bowed to us, (put on) his hat and went away.  
(saluer, Ind. 5.) mettre Inf. 5. chapeau, m. s. (s' en aller, Ind. 5.)  
 People who confide in (no one), are very apt to  
gens m. pl. ne (se fier, Ind. 1.) à personne sujet, pl.  
 distrust themselves. Self<sup>2</sup>-love<sup>1</sup> refers (every thing)  
(Inf. 1. Reflect.) de m. pl. -propre amour m. s. (rapporter, Ind. 1.) tout  
 to itself. She has too good an opinion of herself. You  
\* — f. s. ne  
 (will hurt) (no one) but yourself. (A man) should  
(faire, Ind. 7.) tort \* que à On doit  
 always (be on his guard) against himself.  
défier Inf. 1. Reflect. de

## DIFFICULTIES

## IN THE USE OF SOME OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

RULE 1.—When *two* or *more* personal pronouns belonging to different persons, relate to the same verb in a sentence, they may, according to *taste* or *experience*, *follow* or *precede* the verb, provided that each of them be used in the *nominative case*, or as a *direct regimen*; and either *nous* or *vous*, must be *prefixed* to the verb, in French, and agree with it in *number*, though these pronouns are never used in English, in similar cases; Ex :

Vous et moi nous les connaissons; or, Nous les connaissons vous et moi;	} You and I know them.
Vous, elle, et moi, nous irons ce soir à la comédie; or, Nous irons ce soir à la comédie, vous, elle, et moi;	
Je vous récompenserai vous et votre frère; or, Vous et votre frère je vous récompenserai;	} I will reward both you and your brother.
Il nous l'a dit, à nous, à lui, et à elle, (Indirect regimens do not admit of any other construction).	
	} He told it, to us, to him, and to her.

REMARK.—Contrary to the above rule, and as a mark of their superiority; a father must say when speaking of his son: *Moi et mon fils*; a mother of her daughter: *Moi et ma fille*;

a master of his footman : *Moi et mon domestique* ; a mistress of her maid : *Moi et ma servante* ; &c.

**RULE 2.**—When *two* or *more* personal pronouns, *all of the third person*, relate to the same verb in a sentence, the construction in French, is the same as in English, and does not admit of the pronoun *nous*, or *vous*, before the verb, as in the foregoing rule ; **Ex :**

*Lui et elle sont raisonnables,*

He and she are reasonable.

*Eux, elle, et son frère, apprennent le Français avec Mr. A.*

They, she, and her brother, are learning French with Mr. A.

**RULE 3.**—When the personal pronouns *elle, elles, eux, lui* and *leur*, are used in the *nominative case*, they generally apply both to *persons* and *things* ; but, should they act as a *regimen*, (or *complement*), they commonly refer to *persons only* : The relative pronouns *y*, (to it), and *en*, (of it), being then used to supply their place, in *most instances*. However, this rule is not without numerous exceptions ; for, *elle, elles, eux, lui* and *leur*, may also frequently be applied to things, when used in the objective case. We, therefore, agree with *Mr. de Levizac*, that the pronouns *elle, elles, eux, lui* and *leur*, ought never to be applied to things, except when custom does not allow them to be replaced by the pronouns *y\** and *en\** ; or by an adverb of place ; such as, *dessus, dessous, dedans, dehors, auprès, &c.* ; **Ex :**

*Voyez-vous cette rose ? Oui, je la vois, elle est superbe,*

Do you see that rose ? Yes, I see it, it is beautiful.

*J'aperçus un arbre, et je m'en approchai ; and not, je m'approchai de lui,*

I perceived a tree, and approached it.

*Voici une bonne plume, servez-vous-en ; and not, servez-vous d'elle,*

Here is a good pen, make use of it.

*Cette planche est pourrie, ne vous y fiez pas ; and not, ne vous fiez pas à elle,*

That plank is decayed, do not trust it.

*C'est un honnête homme, fiez-vous-y, or, fiez-vous à lui,*

He is an honest man, trust to him.

*Cette femme n'est pas sincère, méfiez-vous-en, or, méfiez-vous d'elle,*

That woman is not sincere, distrust her.

*Faites attention à ce tapis, et ne crachez pas dessus ; and not, sur lui,*

Pay attention to this carpet, and do not spit upon it.

#### OF THE OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

**RULE 4.**—When *two* objective pronouns, belonging to *different persons*, apply to the same verb in a sentence, the pronoun of the third person must immediately precede the verb ; **Ex :**

*Il me le donnera,*

He will give it to me.

*Je te la montrerai,*

I will show it to thee.

*Nous vous les renverrons,*

We will return them to you.

\* The Learner will find these pronouns explained, at their proper place, lesson 32, of this Grammar.

But, should both of the objective pronouns belong to the *third person*, then the one which, in French, is governed by the preposition *à*, (understood), must be prefixed to the verb ; Ex :

*Il le lui donnera,  
Je la lui montrerai,  
Nous les leur renverrons,*

He will give *it* to *him*, (or to *her*).  
I will show *it* to *her*, (or to *him*).  
We will return *them* to *them*.

RULE 5.—When *one* or *two* objective pronouns follow a verb in the *imperative mood*, (in affirmative sentences only), the construction, in French, is absolutely the same as in English ; Ex :

*Donnez-le à votre sœur,  
Donnez-lui cette rose,  
Donnez-la lui,  
Montrez-le lui,  
Renvoyez-les-leur,*

Give *it* to your sister.  
Give *her* this rose.  
Give *it* to *her*, (or to *him*).  
Show *it* to *him*, (or to *her*).  
Return *them* to *them*.

*Remark* that, when the objective pronouns precede the imperative, (as they do in negative sentences), these pronouns must then occupy their natural place, as in Rule 4.

RULE 6.—When *two imperatives* are united by the conjunction *et*, (and), or *ou*, (or), if each of them be followed by *one* or *two* objective pronouns, it is more elegant, in French, to place the *second pronoun*, or *pronouns*, before the *second imperative* ; Ex :

<i>Gardez-le, ou le renvoyez ;</i>	or, <i>renvoyez-le,</i>	Keep <i>it</i> , or send <i>it</i> back.
<i>Cherchez-la, et lui dites de venir ;</i>	or, <i>dites-lui de venir,</i>	Look for <i>her</i> , and tell <i>her</i> to come.
<i>Prêtez-les moi, ou me les vendez ;</i>	or, <i>vendez-les moi,</i>	Lend or sell <i>them</i> to me.

#### OF THE OBJECTIVE PRONOUN *Le*.

RULE 7.—When the objective pronoun *le*, is used, in French, to represent a *whole sentence*, or even a *part of one* : or, when it fills the place of an *adjective*, or that of a *substantive taken adjectively*, this pronoun is always *indeclinable*, and generally rendered, in English, by *so*, *it*, or *that*, either *expressed* or *understood* ; Ex :

<i>Voulez-vous me rendre un service ?</i>	<i>Oui, si je le puis,</i>	Will you do me a favour ? Yes, if I can, (do it).
<i>Monsieur, êtes-vous capitaine ?</i>	<i>Oui, je le suis,</i>	Sir, are you a captain ? Yes, I am (so).
<i>Madame, êtes-vous mariée ?</i>	<i>Oui, je le suis,</i>	Madam, are you a married-woman ? Yes, I am, (so).
<i>Mesdames, êtes-vous sœurs ?</i>	<i>Oui, nous le sommes,</i>	Ladies, are you sisters ? Yes, we are, (so).

But, should the objective pronoun *le*, relate to a *substantive*, or an *adjective taken substantively*, then *le*, *la*, or *les*, must be used in French, and agree with the substantive in *gender* and *number* ; Ex :

<i>Monsieur, êtes-vous le curé?</i>	<i>Oui, je le suis,</i>	Sir, are you the parson? Yes, I am.
<i>Madame, êtes-vous la mariée?</i>	<i>Oui, je la suis,</i>	Madam, are you the bride? Yes, I am.
<i>Mesdemoiselles, êtes-vous les sœurs de mon ami?</i>	<i>Oui nous les sommes,</i>	Young ladies, are you my friend's sisters? Yes, we are.

### REPETITION OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

**RULE 8.**—The nominative pronouns of the *first* and *second* persons, must be repeated, in French, before every verb belonging to the same sentence; **Ex :**

<i>Je suis et je serai toujours votre ami,</i>	<i>I am and will always be your friend.</i>
<i>Nous gagnons et nous perdons tour-à-tour,</i>	<i>We win and lose by turns.</i>
<i>Vous l'aimez et vous l'aimerez toujours,</i>	<i>You love and will always love her, or him.</i>

The nominative pronouns of the *third* person, are hardly ever repeated, in French, before verbs, when those verbs are in the same tense; **Ex :**

<i>Il écrit et étudie toute la journée,</i>	<i>He writes and studies the whole day long.</i>
<i>Elle aime le jeu et déteste ses livres,</i>	<i>She likes play, and detests her books.</i>

But, should the verbs be in *different tenses*, then the objective pronouns, according to *taste* or *experience*, *may* or *may not* be repeated; **Ex :**

<i>Il est pauvre et il le sera toujours;</i>	<i>He is a poor-man, and will be so always.</i>
<i>Elle n'a jamais rien appris, et n'apprendra jamais rien,</i>	<i>She never learned any thing, nor ever will.</i>

**RULE 9.**—Nominative pronouns, (to whatever person they may belong), should always be repeated, in French, before every verb in the same sentence, when passing from *affirmation* to *negation*, or from *negation* to *affirmation*: Also, when separated from the verb by a *long incidental phrase*, or united to it by a *conjunction*, (*et* and *ni* being excepted); **Ex :**

<i>Le singulier caractère! Elle veut et elle ne veut pas dans la même minute,</i>	<i>What a whimsical temper! She will and will not in the same moment.</i>
<i>Elle ne le punit pas quand il le mérite, et elle le punit quand il ne le mérite pas,</i>	<i>She does not punish him when he deserves, and punishes him when he does not.</i>
<i>Il me rendit mon salut, et, après m'avoir considéré un moment, il s'approcha de moi,</i>	<i>He answered my salutation, and, after regarding me for a moment, approached me.</i>
<i>Elle ne visitera ni ne recevra personne aujourd'hui,</i>	<i>She will neither visit nor receive any one to-day.</i>

**RULE 10.**—The objective pronouns are to be repeated, in French, before every verb in the same sentence; **Ex :**



*Je vous aime, vous estime, et vous respecte,* I love, esteem and respect you.  
*Nous leur parlerons, et nous leur dirons la vérité ;* We will speak to them, and tell them the truth.  
*Cette idée le poursuit, le tourmente, et l'accable ;* That idea pursues, torments, and overwhelms him.

## EXERCISE

*Upon the ten foregoing Rules.*

You, he, and I, (will go) this evening to the country. My  
*aller, Ind. 7. soir m. s. campagne f. s.*  
 father and I were assaulted by a gang of robbers, who, after  
*(Ind. 5.) attaqué m. pl. bande f. s. voleur pl.*  
 wounding my<sup>3</sup> servant<sup>1</sup> and<sup>2</sup> myself<sup>1</sup>, (took refuge) in the  
*avoir blessé domestique moi se retirer, Ind. 5.*  
 woods. She and her sister are (very much)<sup>3</sup> alike<sup>1</sup>.  
*bois pl. beaucoup (se ressembler, Ind. 1.)*  
 Give him his cane, for he <sup>1</sup>never<sup>3</sup> (goes out)<sup>2</sup> without it.  
*Donnez- canne f. s. car sortir, Ind. 1. f. s.*  
 I (have just received) a box of oranges: Do you<sup>3</sup> want<sup>2</sup>  
*venir, Ind. 1. de recevoir boîte f. s. voulez*  
 some<sup>4</sup> (of them)<sup>1</sup>? Lend her your umbrella, she (will  
*quelques-unes (Prêter, Imp.) parapluie m. s. rendre*  
 return) it (to you) in a moment. I cannot lend it  
*Ind. 7. m. (ne pouvoir pas, Ind. 1.)*  
 (to her); for, I want it myself. (Here is) mine,  
*(avoir besoin, Ind. 1.) en Voici m. s.*  
 but send it back (to me) immediately. Is<sup>2</sup> Mary<sup>1</sup> in her  
*renvoyez- m. (de suite) Marie elle*  
 room? No, Madam. (Look for) her, and tell her I  
*chambre f. s. Chercher, Imp. (dire, Imp.) que*  
 (am waiting for) her. Miss, are you sick? No, I am not, (so).  
*attendre, Ind. 1. malade*  
 Young ladies, are you the daughters of Mr. P? Yes, we are.  
*Mesdemoiselles fille f. pl.*  
 She is blind, and (will be) so all her (life time). He is  
*aveugle Ind. 7. vie f. s.*  
 not rich, but he is young and well educated. She cries and  
*riche mais jeune élève pleure*  
 laughs at the same time. You do not speak when (it is necessary),  
*rit en . tems quand il le faut*  
 and speak when (you should not). My dear child, I love  
*il ne le faut pas enfant m. s. (aimer, Ind. 1.)*  
 you, and I shall never cease (to love) you: but it is that  
*cesserai de mais ce ce*  
 very love that I have for you which obliges me to correct  
*même amour que qui (obliger, Ind. 1.) à reprendre*  
 you for your faults, and to punish you when you deserve, (it).  
*de faute pl. à quand (mériter Ind. 1.) m.*



---

## LESSON XXXI.

---

### SYNTAX OF THE PRONOUN.

(Continued.)

---

#### OF THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

(Page 36, Lesson 12.)

The possessive pronouns, as we have already observed in the first part of this Grammar, are divided into *absolute*, as *mon, ma, mes*, &c. and *relative*, as *le mien, la mienne, les miens, les miennes*, &c. The Learner, therefore, will be very careful to avoid mistakes in the choice of these pronouns; for, *mon*, (my), is never used for *mine*, and *le mien*, (mine), should never be rendered by *my*. *Mon*, is always prefixed to a *noun*, with which it agrees in *gender* and *number*; as, *J' ai perdu MON CHAPEAU*, I have lost *my hat*: *le mien*, on the contrary, must agree with a *noun* which has already been *expressed a little before*, or which is *understood*; as, *Je n' ai pas perdu LE MIEN*, I have not lost *mine*, (meaning *my hat*).

#### OF THE ABSOLUTE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

RULE 1.—These pronouns are subject to the same rules as the articles, that is, they must be repeated, in French, before every substantive in the same sentence, though commonly expressed but once in English; Ex :

Mon père, ma mère, et mes frères, sont arrivés ce matin,    My father, mother, and brothers, have arrived this morning.

Ma sœur, votre cousine, et son amie, n' arriveront que ce soir,    My sister, your cousin, and her friend, will not arrive until this evening.

RULE 2.—When we speak to or answer *parents, relations, friends*, &c. the absolute possessive pronouns, in French, must invariably accompany the noun, though these pronouns are generally omitted in English, in similar cases; Ex :

Mon oncle, dormez-vous? Non, mon neveu,    Uncle, do you sleep? No, nephew.

Ma tante, m' avez-vous apporté ce que vous m' aviez promis? Oui, ma nièce,    Aunt, have you brought me what you promised me? Yes, niece.

RULE 3.—When a *noun*, or *pronoun*, is used in the nominative case, and precedes or follows a *verb* which indicates an ac-

tion over any part of the body, the English possessive pronoun must be rendered, in French, by the definite article, with one of the objective pronouns *me, te, se, nous, vous, lui, &c.* prefixed to the verb; Ex :

<i>Il s' est rompu le bras,</i>	He broke his arm.
<i>Je me suis fait mal à la main,</i>	I have hurt my hand.
<i>Vous vous êtes fait couper les cheveux,</i>	You had your hair cut.

REMARK.—The following are some *idiomatical expressions*, in which the French make use of the words *avoir mal à*, which are always accompanied by the *definite article*, prefixed to a *substantive*, as in the foregoing rule; Ex :

<i>Avoir mal à la tête,</i>	To have the head-ache; <i>or</i> , a pain in the head.
<i>Avoir mal aux yeux,</i>	To have sore eyes.
<i>Avoir mal à l' oreille,</i>	To have the ear-ache; <i>or</i> , a pain in the ear.
<i>Avoir mal à la bouche,</i>	To have a sore mouth.
<i>Avoir mal aux dents,</i>	To have the tooth-ache.
<i>Avoir mal à la gorge</i>	To have a sore throat.
<i>Avoir mal à l' estomac,</i>	To have a pain in the stomach.
<i>Avoir mal au cœur,</i>	To have a sick stomach.
<i>Avoir mal au bras,</i>	To have a sore arm; <i>or</i> , a pain in the arm.
<i>Avoir mal au pied, &amp;c.</i>	To have a sore foot; <i>or</i> , a pain in the foot; &c.

*Avoir une douleur à*, is always rendered, in English, by *to have a pain in*; as, *J' ai une douleur au côté*, I have a pain in my side; &c.

RULE 4.—When the *definite article* cannot be used, in French, without leading to an *ambiguity* in the real meaning of the sentence, the absolute possessive pronouns are then to be employed in both languages; Ex :

<i>Remarquez-vous comme son pied est enflé? and not le pied,</i>	Do you observe how much <i>his</i> foot is swelled?
<i>Elle présente hardiment son bras au chirurgien; and not, le bras,</i>	She boldly presented <i>her</i> arm to the surgeon.
<i>Mettez votre main dans la mienne, et soyons bons amis; and not, la main,</i>	Let us shake hands and be good friends.

RULE 5.—When the possessive pronouns *its* and *their*, apply to *inanimate objects*, and can be rendered in English, by *of it* and *of them*, they must be expressed, in French, by the pronoun *en*, placed before the verb, and the articles *le, la, les*, prefixed to the noun; Ex :

<i>C' est une affaire délicate; le succès en est douteux;</i>	It is a delicate affair; <i>its</i> success is doubtful, <i>or the success of it</i> ; &c.
<i>Philadelphie est une jolie ville; les rues en sont superbes; les maisons en sont belles et uniformes,</i>	Philadelphia is a fine city; <i>its</i> streets are beautiful; <i>its</i> houses are handsome and regularly built.

## OF THE RELATIVE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

**RULE 6.**—These pronouns, being generally used in a sentence to avoid the disagreeable repetition of the same noun, are never to be joined to any substantive; for, the substantive to which they relate, is always implied in the pronoun. In French, the *relative possessive pronouns*, must invariably agree in *gender* and *number* with a noun already *expressed*, or *understood*; **Ex :**

Reprenez votre livre, et rendez-moi le mien; and not, <i>mon livre</i> ,	Take back your book, and restore to me <i>mine</i> ; and not, <i>my book</i> .
Voici les miens; mais je n'ai jamais pu trouver ni les vôtres, ni les siens,	Here are mine, (meaning <i>my gloves</i> ); but I could never find either <i>yours</i> , or <i>hers</i> .

**RULE 7.**—When the relative possessive pronouns *mine*, *thine*, *his*, &c. are preceded by the preposition *of*, they must be rendered, in French, by the absolute possessive pronouns *mon*, *ma*, *mes*, &c. preceded by *de*; **Ex :**

C' est un de mes amis,	He is a friend <i>of mine</i> .
J' ai rencontré deux de vos connaissances,	I met two acquaintances <i>of yours</i> .
Un de leurs chevaux boîte,	A horse <i>of theirs</i> is lame.

**RULE 8.**—In English, when *any one* of these *relative pronouns*, is preceded by the verb *to be*, (meaning *to belong to*), it must be rendered, in French, by one of the objective pronouns *à moi*, *à toi*, *à lui*, *à vous*, &c. used after the verb *être*; **Ex :**

Ce livre n' est pas à moi; par conséquent, il doit être à lui ou à elle,	This book is not <i>mine</i> ; consequently, it must be <i>his</i> or <i>hers</i> .
Cette maison est-elle à vous, ou à eux? Non, elle est à ma sœur,	Is that house <i>yours</i> , or <i>theirs</i> ? No, it belongs to <i>my sister</i> .

## EXERCISE.

Give me my hat, cane, and gloves, and  
 (donner, Imp.) chapeau m. s. canne f. s. gant m. pl.  
 bring me my watch, snuff-box, and spectacles, which  
 (apporter, Imp.) montre f. s. tabatière f. s. lunette f. pl. que  
 you (will find) on my secretary, in my bed-room.  
 trouver, Ind. 7. secrétaire m. s. chambre-à-coucher.  
 Daughter, are you sick? No, father, I have only a head-  
 seulement \*  
 ache. Sister, lend me your pen. I cannot, brother; for  
 (prêter, Imp.) (ne puis)  
 I (am writing) my exercise. He is so awkward, that he  
 écrire, Ind. 1. thème m. s. maladroit  
 can<sup>2</sup> never<sup>3</sup> walk with a Lady, without treading on her  
 peut (se promener) Dame marcher  
 foot. She cut her finger in peeling an orange. I have  
 (s' est coupé) doight — f. s.

the tooth-ache and a pain in my chest. He died (of a) sore  
 throat: See <sup>douleur</sup> how <sup>poitrine f. s.</sup> his head is swelled. Africa is a  
 fine country, but its climate <sup>de (voir, Imp.) comme f. s. enflé f. s. Afrique</sup> is unhealthy. Is it your temper,  
 or hers, that prevent you from living well together? I lost  
 a book <sup>beau m. s. climat m. s. malsain ce humeur f. s.</sup> of mine, and it is a friend <sup>qui empêche (Inf. 1.) ensemble ? (ai perdu)</sup> of yours who has  
 found it. I am sorry <sup>livre m. pl. ce ami m. pl.</sup> he has deceived you, in  
 selling you a horse which <sup>(trouver Inf. 5.) m. s. fâché que ait (tromper, Inf. 5.)</sup> was not his; for that horse is  
 mine. <sup>rendant cheval qui ne (Ind. 3.) pas car</sup>

## LESSON XXXII.

### SYNTAX OF THE PRONOUN.

(Continued.)

#### OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

(Page 37, Lesson 13.)

The relative pronouns, as we have already observed in the first part of this Grammar, are *qui*, *que*, *quoi*; *dont*, *de qui*, or *duquel*, &c.; *lequel*, *laquelle*, &c.; *à quel*, *à laquelle*, &c.; *en*, *y*, *où*. These, like the *personal* and *possessive* pronouns, are to be repeated, in French, before every verb in the same sentence, and agree with their *antecedent* in *gender* and *number*, as follows:

**QUI**, (Who, that, or which).

**RULE 1.**—When *qui*, has for its antecedent a *noun* or *pronoun* used as a nominative to the verb, *qui* is then said to be in the *nominative*, and must be applied indiscriminately, to *persons* and *things*, either *singular* or *plural*, *masculine* or *feminine*. This pronoun generally answers to the English *who* or *that*, when referring to *persons*, and to *that* or *which*, if applied to *things*; **Ex**:

*L' homme qui parle est mon ami,  
La demoiselle qui joue est sa sœur,  
Le cheval qui court est à moi,  
La maison qui brûle est à lui,*

The man *who* speaks is my friend.  
The young lady *who* plays is his sister.  
The horse *that* runs belongs to me.  
The house *which* is burning belongs to him.

When *qui*, on the contrary, has for its antecedent a *noun* or *pronoun* used in the *objective case*, and is followed by another *noun* or *pronoun*, which stands as a *nominative* to the verb, *qui* then becomes an *indirect regimen*, being generally preceded by a preposition. This pronoun, in similar cases, relates to *persons* only, or *personified objects*, and is rendered, in English, by *whom*, governed by a preposition as in French; Ex :

*L' homme à qui je parle est mon ami,  
La demoiselle pour qui je travaille est  
sa sœur,  
La mort, à qui tout cède, ne l' effraie  
pas,  
Dieu, sans qui rien n' existerait, &c.*

The man *to whom* I speak is my friend.  
The young lady *for whom* I am working is his sister.  
Death, *to whom* every thing yields, does not frighten him.  
God, *without whom* nothing would exist, &c.

QUE, (Whom, that, or which).

RULE 2.—The relative pronoun *que*, is always used as an *indirect regimen*, that is, without any preposition prefixed, and should invariably follow its antecedent, with which it agrees in *gender* and *number*. This pronoun applies both to *persons* and *things*, and is generally rendered, in English, by *whom*, *that*, or *which*, either *expressed*, or *understood*; Ex :

*L' homme que je vois est mon ami,  
La demoiselle qu' il aime est riche et  
belle,  
La maison que vous occupez est à mon  
oncle,  
La mort que j' attends ne m' effraie pas,  
Le cheval que vous avez acheté est trop  
vieux,*

The man (*whom*) I see is my friend.  
The young lady (*that*) he loves is rich and handsome.  
The house (*which*) you live in belongs to my uncle.  
The death (*that*) I expect does not frighten me.  
The horse (*which*) you bought is too old.

QUOI, (What, that, or which).

RULE 3.—The relative pronoun *quoi*, refers to *indeterminate objects* only, and ought to bear no relation whatever either to *persons* or *things*. This pronoun is never to be used, in French, in the *nominative case*, as being always governed by a *preposition*, and followed by a *noun*, or *pronoun*, which is the *nominative* of the sentence.

The pronouns *ce*, (it), meaning *cette chose*; *rien*, (nothing), meaning *nulle chose*; and *quelque chose*, (something), are generally used as the antecedents of *quoi*. This pronoun is likewise frequently and properly employed after a verb in the *imperative mood*, whenever it relates to a *vague* and *indefinite object*; Ex :



<i>C' est à quoi il ne pense guère,</i>	It is <i>what</i> he little thinks about.
<i>C' est de quoi elle s' occupe toujours,</i>	It is <i>that about which</i> she always occupies herself.
<i>Il n' y a rien à quoi vous ne soyez propre,</i>	There is nothing <i>which</i> you are not fit for.
<i>Donnez-lui quelque chose, sur quoi il puisse se coucher,</i>	Give him something <i>upon which</i> he can lie down.
<i>Faites cela; sans quoi je vous punirai,</i>	Do that; <i>without which</i> I will punish you.
<i>Avec quoi puis-je le faire? Je n' ai pas même de quoi m' acheter un chapeau,</i>	<i>With what</i> can I do it? I have not even <i>wherewith</i> to buy a hat.

DONT, (Of whom, or whose, and of which).

RULE 4.—This pronoun refers both to *persons* and *things*, either *masculine* or *feminine*, *singular* or *plural*, and may be rendered by *de qui*,\* when applied to *persons only*; Ex :

<i>Voilà le général dont or de qui, vous blâmez tant la conduite;</i>	This is the general, <i>whose</i> conduct you censured so much.
<i>Voilà la personne dont, or de qui, je vous avais parlé;</i>	This is the person <i>of whom</i> I had spoken to you.
<i>Voilà le cheval dont je vous avais parlé, (and not de qui);</i>	This is the horse <i>of which</i> I had spoken to you.
<i>Voilà la maison dont je vous avais parlé, (and not de qui);</i>	This is the house <i>of which</i> I had spoken to you.

When a *noun* governed by a *preposition*, is placed between *de qui* and its *antecedent*, then *duquel*, *de laquelle*, &c. may also be applied to *persons*, to the exclusion of *dont*, which cannot be used in similar cases; Ex :

<i>Trouvez-moi un homme sur la conduite de qui, or duquel, il n' y ait rien à redire;</i>	Find me a man, in <i>whose</i> conduct, or in the conduct <i>of whom</i> , there is nothing to censure.
<i>C' est une personne à la prudence de qui, or de laquel, vous pouvez vous fier,</i>	It is a person, in <i>whose</i> prudence, or in the prudence <i>of whom</i> , you may trust.

But *duquel*, *de laquelle*, &c. and never *de qui*, must be used, when applied to *things only*; Ex :

<i>C' est une affaire, sur le succès de laquelle on ne peut compter:</i>	It is a business, the success <i>of which</i> cannot be depended upon.
<i>Voici un fusil, à la bonté duquel je ne me fie guère,</i>	Here is a gun, the goodness <i>of which</i> I do not trust much.

LEQUEL, m. s. LAQUELLE, f. s. &c. (Which).

RULE 5.—This pronoun applies both to *persons* and *things*, and is never to be employed either as a *nominative* or *regimen*; it is chiefly used to make a distinction between two or more objects, or to point out more particularly the *thing* or *person spoken of*. However, for the sake of perspicuity in a sentence, *lequel* may sometimes be elegantly used in the *nominative* case, instead of *qui*; Ex :

\* Observe, that *from whom* is always rendered by *de qui*, and never by *dont*: as, *La personne de qui j' ai reçu cette lettre, &c.* The person *from whom* I received this letter, &c.



<i>Ce sont trois sœurs, laquelle aimez-vous le mieux?</i>	They are three sisters, <i>which</i> do you like the best?
<i>Voici deux tableaux, lequel préférez-vous?</i>	Here are two pictures, <i>which</i> do you prefer?
<i>La fille de votre ami, laquelle est toujours fort aimable, était ici ce matin,</i>	Your friend's daughter, <i>who</i> is always very amiable, was here this morning.

In this last sentence, *qui* could not be used without leading to an ambiguity in its real meaning; for, were we to say: *La fille de votre ami*, *qui*, &c. the relative pronoun *qui*, might refer both to *ami* and *fille*, without knowing which *antecedent* is to be preferred.

REMARK.—*Lequel*, preceded by a preposition, such as *à*, *sur*, *pour*, *dans*, &c. always applies to *animals*, or *things*; and is generally rendered, in English, by *which*, acted upon by the corresponding prepositions *to*, *on*, *for*, *in*, &c.; Ex:

<i>C'est une réponse à laquelle je ne m'attendais pas,</i>	It is an answer <i>which</i> I did not expect.
<i>L'oiseau, auquel elle a cassé la patte, n'est pas encore mort,</i>	The bird, <i>whose</i> foot she broke, is not yet dead.
<i>Les raisons sur lesquelles il se fonde ne sont pas admissibles,</i>	The reasons, upon <i>which</i> he depends cannot be admitted.
<i>Les détails, dans lesquels il est entré, m'ont impatienté,</i>	The details <i>into</i> which he entered, have put me out of patience.

Où, (In which, from which, through which, &c.)

RULE 6.—When the relative pronoun *lequel*, *laquelle*, &c. is preceded by one of the following prepositions *de*, *dans*, *par*, *vers*, &c. this pronoun may be rendered, in French, by *où*, *d'où*, or *par où*, provided that its antecedent should refer to a verb expressing some kind of *motion* or *rest*. This last pronoun only applies to *things*, and is rendered, in English, by *which*, acted upon by an appropriate preposition; Ex:

<i>Est-ce là la maison où, or dans laquelle, il demeure?</i>	Is this the house <i>where</i> , or <i>in which</i> he lives?
<i>Voilà le chemin par où, or par lequel, je suis venu;</i>	There is the road <i>through which</i> I came.
<i>Voilà le but où, or vers lequel tendent tous mes desirs,</i>	That is the end at <i>which</i> all my desires aim.
<i>Tel est l'embarras d'où, or duquel il s'est sorti,</i>	Such is the embarrassment from <i>which</i> he extricated himself.

En, (Of him, of her, or of it; of them, &c.)

RULE 7.—The relative pronoun *en*, is always employed in the *objective case*, and must invariably precede the verb by which it is governed; it is generally used to avoid the repetition of a noun already *expressed* or *understood*, which is called its *antecedent*. When this pronoun meets, before a verb, with another objective pronoun, it is always placed last, and next to the verb.

*En*, though sometimes applied to *persons*, most commonly refers to *inanimate objects*, and, as we have already noticed

(page 91, of this Grammar), its principal use is to supersede the objective pronouns *elle, elles, eux, lui* and *leur*, when these cannot be applied to *things*.

### EXAMPLES.

<i>Vous aimez les auteurs Français, vous en parlez toujours ;</i>	You like French authors, you are always speaking of them.
<i>Si je vous donnais cette épée, qu' en feriez-vous ?</i>	Were I to give you this sword, what would you do with it ?
<i>Je n' en sais rien,</i>	That I know nothing about.
<i>Je lui en parlerai, si vous le désirez ;</i>	I will speak to her about it, if you desire.
<i>Vous allez à Londres, et moi j' en viens ;</i>	You are going to London, I came from thence.

Observe, that *en*, with an *imperative* used *negatively*, is always placed before the verb, as in the above rule ; but, in *affirmative sentences*, this pronoun should invariably follow the *imperative* ; and, if united to another objective pronoun, it must be put after it. In every instance, however, the objective pronouns *moi* and *toi*, are to be changed into *m'* and *t'* whenever used before *en* ; Ex :

<i>Né m' en parlez plus,</i>	Speak to me no more about it.
<i>Né leur en donnez pas,</i>	Do not give them any.
<i>Ce sont des misérables, défiez-vous-en,</i>	They are wicked people, distrust them.
<i>Prêtez-m' en une,</i>	Lend me one of them.
<i>Non, te dis-je va-t' en,</i>	No, I tell you, begone.

Y, (To him, to her, or to it ; to them, &c.)

**RULE 8.**—The relative pronoun, or adverb *y*, seldom applies to persons ; it is oftener used when speaking of *places, things*, or *indeterminate objects*, and in this last instance, it generally supplies the place of *là*, (there, thither), or *à cela*, (to it, at it, about it, &c.).

The place of *y*, in a sentence, so perfectly agrees with that of *en*, as to render any additional rules on the subject entirely useless : The Learner, therefore, may apply to the latter, all that which has already been said of the former. He will remark, however, that after an imperative, and in order to avoid a disagreeable sound, the personal pronouns *moi* and *toi*, should always follow *y* ; thus : *menez-y-moi*, take me thither ; *transportes-y-toi*,\* repair to that place, &c. instead of *menez-m' y* and *transportes-t' y*, which are never said ; Ex :

<i>C' est un honnête homme, fiez-vous-y,</i>	He is an honest man, trust to him.
<i>Y consentez-vous ? Oui, j' y consens ;</i>	Do you agree to it ? Yes, I do.
<i>Vous y travaillerez toute la vie,</i>	You will work at it all your life-time.
<i>Vous y travaillez, je le sais ;</i>	You work there, I know it.
(better, <i>vous travaillez là</i> .)	

\* This expression, although very correct, is rather harsh and disagreeable to the ear. The French, in similar cases, either avoid it, or make use of the adverb *là*, thus : *transportez-vous-là* ; and *conduis-toi là*, instead of *conduis-y-toi*, behave there, &c.

*Conduisez-les-y tout de suite,  
Il me les y enverra lui-même,*

Take them *thither* immediately.  
He will send them to me *hither* him-  
self.

*Va à l'armée, c'est moi qui t'y engage;  
mais conduis-y-toi comme un héros,  
Procurez-y-moi une sous-lieutenance, et  
j'y vole à l'instant,*

Go to the army, it is I who invite you  
to it; but behave *there* as a hero.  
Procure me, *in it*, a sub-lieutenancy,  
and I fly *thither* instantly.

REMARK.—Should *y* and *en*, be used together, before or af-  
ter the verb, *y* is always to be placed first; Ex:

*Je vous y en porterai moi-même,*

I will bring you *some there* myself.

*Allez-leur-y-en parler,*

Go and carry *some thither* to them.

*Il n'y en a que deux, (deux arbres),  
plantez-y-en un autre,*

There are only two of them, (*two trees*),  
plant *there* another one.

*Y en a-t-il encore? Non, il n'y en a  
plus,*

Is there any more of it? No, there is  
no more of it.

### EXERCISE.

The woman who takes care of her house is estimable.  
(prendre Ind. 1.) *soin ménage m. s.* —  
The book which pleases most is<sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>not<sup>3</sup> always the most.  
*m. s.* (plaire Ind. 1.)  
useful. The person to whom I wrote last<sup>2</sup> year<sup>1</sup>,  
*utile. personne f. s.* (écrire Ind. 2.) *passé l'année f.*  
has answered me this morning. God toward whom you turn  
*répondu matin m. s. Dieu vers tournez*  
your heart, (will help) you. The (young lady) whom you  
*cœur m. s. aider, Ind. 7. demoiselle*  
see in the garden, (is to be) married next<sup>2</sup> week<sup>1</sup>.  
*voyez jardin m. s. doit se marier la prochain f. semaine f. s.*  
The exercise that I give you for to-morrow, (needs no)  
*thème m. s. donne demain n'a pas besoin de*  
explanations. You should always speak French with your  
*explication pl. (devoir Ind. 9.) parler*  
teacher; it is that, however<sup>3</sup>, of<sup>1</sup> which<sup>2</sup> you seldom<sup>2</sup> think.<sup>1</sup>  
*maître \* cependant à guère. ne pensez*  
Do what I tell you, without that you can <sup>1</sup>never<sup>3</sup> succeed<sup>2</sup>.  
*Faites (obj.) dis \* (réussir Ind. 7.)*  
The merchant of whom you (are speaking), is a friend of mine.  
*négociant parler, Ind. 1. ami pl.*  
The hero from whom he received the crown of Europe  
*héros (recevoir Ind. 2.) couronne f. s.*  
died upon a rock. He is a general, upon whose<sup>2</sup> talents<sup>1</sup>  
*(est mort) rocher m. s. Ce à*  
we may depend. Idleness is a disease, the progress  
*on peut (se fier) paresse maladie f. s. à progrès m. pl.*  
(of which) we should always oppose. (Here are) two fans,  
*f. s. doit s'opposer. Voici éventail pl.*  
which shall I<sup>3</sup> give<sup>2</sup> her<sup>1</sup>? It is the work of a young lady,  
*m. s. \* donnerai Ce ouvrage m. s.*  
which (will please) you, I am<sup>2</sup> sure<sup>3</sup> (of it)<sup>1</sup>. Lying is a  
*plaire Ind. 7. certain Mensonge m. s.*  
vice for which young people ought (to have) the greatest  
— *m. s. gens pl. doivent*

horror. The table upon which you (are writing) shakes  
*horreur f. s. — f. s. écrire, Ind. 1. remue*  
 (too much). The horse to which you give some drink, is<sup>2</sup>  
*cheval à boire a*  
<sup>1</sup>only<sup>3</sup> three years old. (This is) the room (in which) you are  
*an pl. \* Voici chambre f. devez*  
 (to sleep). (That is) the door through which you can go  
*coucher Voilà porte f. par pouvez aller*  
 to the garden. (These are) fine oranges, will you give  
*jardin m. s. Voici de beau f. pl. — f. pl. voulez donner*  
 me some? I can<sup>2</sup> give<sup>5</sup> you<sup>3</sup> <sup>1</sup>only<sup>6</sup> one<sup>7</sup>, (of them)<sup>4</sup>, because  
*en puis donner en*  
 I<sup>1</sup> have<sup>3</sup> already<sup>4</sup> promised<sup>5</sup> my cousin two<sup>6</sup> (of them)<sup>2</sup>. I do  
*promis à — f. s.*  
 not believe that woman sincere, I distrust her. What  
*(croire Ind. 1.) (se méfier, Ind. 1.) en Les*  
 beautiful kittens! Give me one<sup>2</sup> (of them)<sup>1</sup>. That  
*beau m. pl. (petit pl. chat pl.) Donnez*  
 reason is good, I yield (to it). America is a fine  
*raison f. s. solide (se rendre, Ind. 1.) y Amérique f. s. beaux*  
 country, I intend (to settle) there.  
*pays m. s. compte se fixer Ind. 1. y*

## LESSON XXXIII.

### SYNTAX OF THE PRONOUN.

(Continued.)

### OF THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

(Page 39, Lesson 14.)

These pronouns, which have *no antecedent* either *expressed* or *understood*, are generally used at the beginning of an interrogative sentence; they are the following: *qui, que, quoi*, indeclinable, and *quel, lequel*, declinable.

QUI, (Who).

RULE 1.—This pronoun applies only to *persons*, and is generally used instead of *quelle personne?* (what person?) It may also be rendered, in French, by *qui est-ce qui*, in familiar language only, when used as a nominative to the verb; Ex:

Qui vous a dit cela? or, qui est-ce qui  
*vous a dit cela?*  
 Qui m' appelle? or, qui est-ce qui m'  
*appelle?*

Who told you that?

Who calls me?

REMARK 1.—QUI, used in the *objective case*, answers to the English *whom*, and may be rendered, in French, by *qui est-ce que*; Ex :

Qui cherchez-vous ? or, qui est-ce que vous cherchez ? Whom do you seek ?

Qui voyez-vous dans le jardin ? or, qui est-ce que vous voyez dans le jardin ? Whom do you see in the garden ?

REMARK 2.—QUI, preceded by a *preposition*, answers to the English *whom*, acted upon by a preposition as in French ; Ex :

A qui écrivez-vous ? To whom do you write ?  
De qui parlez-vous ? Of whom do you speak ?

REMARK 3.—QUI, preceded by the preposition *à*, and used to convey an idea of *dependence* or *possession*, is rendered in English by *whose* ; Ex :

A qui est cet enfant ? Whose child is that ?  
A qui sont ces livres ? Whose books are those ?

### QUE, (What).

RULE 2.—This pronoun relates to *things* only, and is generally used instead of *quelle chose* ? (what thing ?)—QUE may also be rendered, in French, by *qu' est-ce qui*, when used as a nominative to the verb, or by *qu' est-ce que*, if an objective ; Ex :

Que vous est-il arrivé ? or, qu' est-ce qui vous est arrivé ? What has happened to you ?

Que voulez-vous ? or, qu' est-ce que vous voulez ? What do you want ?

### QUOI, (What).

RULE 3.—This pronoun refers to *indeterminate objects* only, and is always preceded, in French, by a preposition, though this preposition may sometimes be omitted in English ; Ex :

\* A quoi s' applique-t-il ? To what does he apply himself ?

\* A quoi cela est-il bon ? What is that good for ?

De quoi s' agit-il ? What is the matter ?

En quoi puis-je vous servir ? In what can I serve you ?

Dans quoi mettrai-je ce collier ? In what shall I put this necklace ?

REMARK 1.—QUOI cannot be used as the *nominative* of a verb expressed, therefore, never say : *quoi faites vous* ? (what are you doing ?) say : *que faites-vous* ?—But, *quoi* may be the *nominative* of a verb understood ; as, *quoi de plus juste que cela* ? (what more just than that ?)—In this sentence the verb *être*, (to be), is understood ; for, it is the same as *quelle chose est plus juste que cela* ? what thing is more just than that ?

\* A quoi, meaning *de quelle manière*, (in what manner), is rendered in English by *how* ; Ex : A quoi passez-vous votre temps à la campagne ? How do you spend your time in the country ?



REMARK 2.—*QUE* followed by a *substantive*, or used instead of *combien*, (how much, how many), and *quoi* followed by an *adjective*, require the preposition *de* after them; Ex :

Que de monde !  
Que d'argent il a !  
Que de belles gravures !  
Quoi de plus agréable ?

What a crowd !  
How much money he has !  
How many fine engravings !  
What more agreeable ?

### QUEL, (what).

RULE 4.—This pronoun applies both to *persons* and *things*, and is always prefixed to a *substantive*, with which it agrees in *gender* and *number*; Ex :

Quel livre lisez-vous ?  
Quelle crainte s'empare de moi ?  
Quels tableaux avez-vous là ?  
Quelles sont ses ressources ?

What book are you reading ?  
What fear takes possession of me ?  
What pictures have you there ?  
What are his resources ?

### LEQUEL, (which).

RULE 5.—This pronoun refers both to *persons* and *things*, and is always used to make a *distinction*, or *choice*, between *two* or *more objects*, either expressed or understood. It generally precedes a *substantive*, with which it agrees in *gender* and *number*, and no other preposition but *de*, is to be placed between them; Ex :

Lequel de ces enfans est le plus âgé ?  
Laquelle de vos sœurs se marie demain ?  
Lesquels de ces gants sont trop petits pour vous ?  
Lesquelles de ces oranges croyez-vous les meilleures ?

Which of these children is the oldest ?  
Which of your sisters is to be married to-morrow ?  
Which of these gloves are too small for you ?  
Which of these oranges do you think the best ?

REMARK.—*To which* is rendered in French by *auquel*, and of *which* by *duquel*; and when followed by a *noun*, these pronouns must, (as *lequel*, which), agree with it in *gender* and *number*; Ex :

Auquel de mes amis m'adresserai-je ?  
A laquelle de vos sœurs donnait-il le bras ?  
Duquel des deux vous plaignez-vous ?  
De laquelle des trois prendrons nous possession ?

To which of my friends shall I apply ?  
To which of your sisters did he give his arm ?  
Which of the two do you complain of ?  
Which of the three shall we take possession of ?

### EXERCISE.

Who is there?—Whom do you (ask for?) For whom is this coat? Whom<sup>2</sup> does this servant demandez belong<sup>3</sup> to<sup>1</sup>? Whose habit, m. s. domestique, m. s. appartient



shoes<sup>3</sup> are<sup>1</sup> those<sup>3</sup>? What has<sup>2</sup> happened<sup>3</sup> (to him)<sup>1</sup> during  
*soulier pl. (est-il) arrivé pendant*  
 my absence? What are you<sup>2</sup> doing<sup>1</sup> here? What<sup>2</sup> are they<sup>4</sup>  
*— f. s. \* faites- \**  
 thinking<sup>3</sup> of<sup>1</sup>? What is more instructive and more amusing  
*(penser, Ind. 1.) à de instructif de amusant*  
 than history? How shall we divert ourselves this  
*histoire, f. s. \* (amuser, Ind. 7.) nous*  
 evening? What<sup>2</sup> game<sup>3</sup> shall we<sup>5</sup> play<sup>4</sup> at<sup>1</sup>? What general  
*soir, m. s. jeu, m. s. \* jouerons- —*  
 commanded in that action? Which of these two houses  
*(commander, Ind. 3.) affaire, f. s. maison, f. pl.*  
 do you<sup>3</sup> advise<sup>2</sup> me<sup>1</sup> to buy? In which do you<sup>2</sup> intend<sup>1</sup> (to  
*\* conseiller- de f. s. \* voulez-*  
 live?) I know<sup>2</sup> not<sup>1</sup> which (to take). Take which you  
*sais ne f. s. Prenes f. s.*  
 choose.  
*voudrez*

## LESSON XXXIV.

### SYNTAX OF THE PRONOUN.

(Continued.)

#### OF THE DÉMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

(Page 40, Lesson 15.)

The learner, before beginning the following rules, will turn back to page 40, lesson 15, and carefully revise what has already been said of these pronouns, which are divided into two classes, viz :

THOSE ALWAYS JOINED TO A SUBSTANTIVE.

CE, (This or that).

RULE 1.—This pronoun applies both to *persons* and *things*, belongs to the *masculine* gender, *singular* number, and answers to the English *this*, or *that*; but it has not the advantage of these *demonstratives*, in distinguishing between an object *near* and one at a *distance*.

The pronoun *ce*, being declinable, is to be repeated, in French, before every substantive in the same sentence, and makes *cette* in the *feminine singular*, and *ces* for the *plural* of both genders; Ex :

Ce chien a mordu ce petit garçon,	That dog bit this little boy.
Cette Dame n'aime pas cette nouvelle mode,	That lady does not like this new fashion.
Ces chapeaux appartiennent à ces Messieurs,	These hats belong to those gentlemen.
Ce papier, cette encre, et ces plumes, ne m'appartiennent pas,	This paper, that ink, and those pens, do not belong to me.

REMARK, that in order to avoid a disagreeable sound, the demonstrative pronoun *ce*, takes a *t*, when prefixed to a substantive masculine singular, beginning with a vowel, or a silent *h*; thus: *cet enfant*, that child; *cet homme*, that man, &c.; instead of *ce enfant*, *ce homme*,—which are never said.

RULE 2.—In order to obviate the uncertain meaning of the demonstrative pronouns *ce*, *cette*, *ces*, when applied to an object near to, or distant from the person who speaks, the French generally add to the substantive that follows them, the adverbs of place, *ci*, (here), and *là*, (there), which are always placed after that substantive, and united to it by a hyphen; Ex:

Ce Monsieur-ci et cette Dame-là sont frère et sœur,	This gentleman and that lady are brother and sister.
Je viens d'acheter ces gravures-ci et ces tableaux-là à l'encan,	I have just bought these engravings and those pictures at auction.

RULE 3.—When *ce* precedes the verb *être*, (to be), it is always indeclinable, and must be rendered, in English, by the personal pronoun *it*, or *they*, according to the number of the substantive to which *ce* relates; Ex:

Lisez ce livre, c'est un bon ouvrage,	Read this book, it is a good work.
Mangez ces pommes, ce sont les meilleures,	Eat these apples, they are the best.
Connaissez-vous ces Dames? Oui, ce sont des Anglaises;	Do you know those ladies? Yes, they are English.

REMARK, that either of the pronouns *il*, *elle*, *ils*, or *elles*, and not *ce*, is to be joined, in French, to the verb *être*, when this verb is followed by an adjective, or a substantive taken adjectively, provided that no article be used; Ex:

Lisez ce livre, il est amusant;	Read this book, it is amusing.
Mangez ces pommes, elle sont bonnes;	Eat these apples, they are good.
Vous voyez ces Dames, elles sont sourdes et muettes;	You see those ladies, they are deaf and dumb.

#### THOSE NEVER JOINED TO A SUBSTANTIVE.

CELUI, (this or that).

RULE 4.—This pronoun is never to be joined to any substantive; it is chiefly used to avoid the repetition of a noun already expressed, with which it must agree in gender and number; thus: Singular, *celui*, m. *celle*, f. (this or that); Plural, *ceux*, m. *celles*, f. (these or those); Ex:



CELUI *qui*, (He who, that which, &c.)

RULE 5.—When the English personal pronouns *he* or *him*, *she* or *her*, *they* or *them*, are followed by *who*, *whom*, or *that*, they are rendered, in French, by *celui qui*, m. s. *celle qui*, f. s. *ceux qui*, m. pl. and *celles qui*, f. pl. if used in the *nominative* case; and by *celui que*, *celle que*, &c. in the *objective*. These pronouns apply both to *persons* and *things*, and always agree with a noun already *expressed*, or *understood*, the place of which they supply.

The same rule must be observed, with regard to such expressions as *that which*, *those who*, *such as*, *the one*, &c. used in the sense of *he who*, *she who*, &c.; Ex:

Celui qui n' aime pas l' étude, n' en connaît pas le prix;	He who does not love study, does not know its value.
Celui que vous avez vu chez moi, est le père de Mr. P.	He whom you saw at my house is Mr. P.'s father.
Ceux qui l' accusent, ne le connaissent pas;	They who, those who, or such as, accuse him, do not know him.
Cette lettre n' est pas celle que j' attendais;	This letter is not the one I expected.
On hait ordinairement celui, (ou ceux), que l' on craint.	We commonly hate him, (or them), whom we fear.

CE *qui*, (that which, or what).

RULE 6.—This pronoun is always used in the *nominative case*, and refers to *indeterminate objects* only: The objective of *ce qui*, is *ce que*, (that which or what).

When *ce qui*, or *ce que*, begins a sentence composed of two members, the indefinite pronoun *ce*, (it), is to be repeated, in French, before the verb *être*, (to be), which generally commences the second member, though this pronoun be omitted in English, in similar cases; Ex:

Ce qui me console, c' est de n' avoir rien perdu;	That which, (or what), consoles me, is to have lost nothing.
Ce que je désire le plus, c' est de le voir heureux;	What, (or that which), I most desire, is to see him happy.

REMARK.—Should an *adjective*, or *past participle*, immediately follow the verb *être*, in the second member of the sentence, then the pronoun *ce*, is to be omitted; Ex:

Ce qui lui est arrivé, est bien fâcheux;	What happened to him, is very distressing.
Ce que je bois, est très amer;	What I drink, is very bitter.

## CECI, (this); CELA, (that).

RULE 7.—When the demonstrative pronouns *this*, (meaning *this thing here*), and *that*, (meaning *that thing there*), are used

in English, to point out an object, without naming it, they are rendered, in French, by *ceci*, if applied to the nearest object, and by *cela*, if the remotest; Ex :

*Je n' aime pas ceci, donnez moi cela ;*  
*Ceci est plus surprenant que cela ;*  
*Cela est vrai ;*

I do not like *this*, give me *that*.  
*This* is more surprising than *that*.  
*That* is true.

REMARK.—*ça*, an abbreviation of *cela*, is only used in familiar language ; when speaking of an upstart, we may say for instance : *ça*, (or *cela*), *veut faire l' homme d' importance ; that fellow* affects to be a man of importance.

### VOICI, VOILÀ.

RULE 8.—These two pronouns are a compound of the verb *voir*, (to see), and the adverbs *ci*, (here), and *là*, (there) ; they both apply to *persons* and *things*, and are generally prefixed to the substantive which they designate : This is the reason why some grammarians call them *prepositions*, and others *adverbs*.

*Voici*, points out an object which is near to the person who speaks, and is always rendered, in English, by *this is* or *here is*, *these are* or *here are*, or by *see here*, *behold*, &c.

*Voilà*, on the contrary, refers to an object more distant, and answers to *that is* or *there is*, *those are* or *there are*, also to *see there*, *behold*, &c. ; Ex :

*Voici ma chambre et voilà la vôtre,*  
*Voilà votre mère dans le jardin,*

*This is my chamber, that is yours.*  
*See there, or there is your mother in the garden.*

*Voici mes domestiques : Où sont les vôtres ?*

*These are my servants : Where are yours ?*

*Voilà une vue magnifique !*

*Behold what a magnificent prospect !*

### EXERCISE.—

He who praises (every thing), is but a flatterer. They  
 that laugh at (every thing), and they that fret  
 at (every thing), are fools<sup>2</sup> alike<sup>1</sup>. This intelligence is more  
 authentic than that which (was circulated) yesterday. That  
 which I hate in a young man is laziness. That which  
 costs little, is too dear, when it is<sup>2</sup> not<sup>3</sup> necessary.  
 This is good, but that is very bad. (Don't buy) that.  
 That is what I like. (Here is) your hat : do you<sup>3</sup>  
 want<sup>2</sup> it<sup>1</sup> ? (See there) the cat playing with his wig.  
 voulez- m. chat, m. s. (qui joue) perruque, f. s.



---

## LESSON XXXV.

---

### SYNTAX OF THE PRONOUN.

(Continued.)

---

#### OF THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

(Page 41, Lesson 16.)

##### AUCUN, PAS UN, NUL.

These three pronouns have nearly the same signification; however, it would be very improper to make use of them *indiscriminately*, in the same sentence.

AUCUN, *m. s.* or AUCUNE, *f. s.* (no, any, &c.)

**RULE 1.**—This pronoun applies both to *persons* and *things*, and is generally followed by a *substantive*, which it modifies: When connected with the negation *ne*, it is rendered, in English, by *no*, *none*, &c.

But, in *interrogative sentences*, or those expressing *doubt*, *exclusion*, &c. *aucun* is always used without the negation *ne*, and answers to the English *any*, *any one*, &c.; **Ex :**

*Il n'a fait aucune difficulté,*

*Je ne connais aucune de ces dames,*

*Aucun homme fut-il jamais plus entre-*  
*prenant ?*

*Je doute qu'aucun y consente,*

He has made *no* difficulty.

I know *none* of these ladies.

Was ever *any* man more enterprising?

I doubt whether *any one* will consent to it.

**REMARK**, that *aucun* and *aucune*, are sometimes to be employed in the *plural*, when the substantive to which they relate cannot be used in the *singular*, or when that substantive is more elegantly used in the *plural number*; **Ex :**

*Elle n'a versé aucuns pleurs,*

*Il n'a fait aucunes dispositions,*

She has shed *no* tears.

He has made *no* dispositions.

PAS UN, *m. s.* or PAS UNE, *f. s.* (not one, not any, &c.)

**RULE 2.**—This pronoun, which denotes a stronger exclusion than *aucun*, applies both to *persons* and *things*, and is always connected with the negation *ne*. It is sometimes prefixed to a substantive, though oftener, *it relates* to one already expressed. *Pas un* is generally used in familiar conversation, and rendered, in English, by *no*, *not one*, *any*, *not any*, &c.; **Ex :**



<i>Il n'y a pas une erreur dans cet ouvrage,</i>	There is no error in that work.
<i>Pas un ne le croit,</i>	<i>Not one</i> believes it.
<i>Je n'en connais pas une,</i>	I do not know <i>one</i> of them.
<i>Il est aussi savant que pas un,</i>	He is as learned as <i>any</i> .

NUL, *m. s.* or NULLE, *f. s.* (no, no one, not one, not any, &c.)

**RULE 3.**—This pronoun has a more absolute meaning than *aucun* and *pas un*; it is generally used in a *vague* and *indeterminate* sense, and always connected with the negation *ne*. When prefixed to a noun, *nul* may apply both to *persons* and *things*, in the *singular*, *masculine*, or *feminine* only, and rendered, in English, by *no*; but should it relate to an indeterminate object, then it is only said of persons, and rendered by *no one*, *not one*, *nobody*, &c.; **Ex**:

<i>Nul n'envisage la mort de sang froid,</i>	No man faces death with indifference.
<i>Nul n'est content de son sort,</i>	<i>No one</i> is satisfied with his lot.
<i>Je n'ai nulle connoissance de cette affaire,</i>	I have <i>no</i> knowledge of that business.
<i>L'homme ne trouve nulle part son bonheur sur la terre,</i>	Man finds his own happiness <i>no</i> where upon earth.

**REMARK.**—That *nul*, preceded by a noun, is sometimes used in the plural; but then it is a mere *adjective*, which must agree with its *substantive* in *gender* and *number*; **Ex**:

<i>Ce mariage a été déclaré nul,</i>	That marriage has been declared void.
<i>Cette lettre de change devient nulle,</i>	That bill of exchange becomes of <i>no</i> value.
<i>Tous ces contrats sont nuls,</i>	All those deeds are void.
<i>Toutes ces procédures sont nulles,</i>	All those proceedings are void.

#### CHAQUE, CHACUN.

**RULE 4.**—These two pronouns, which apply both to persons and things, are not to be used indifferently; *chaque*, though invariable in its form, is always followed by a substantive, in the singular number of either gender, and rendered, in English, by *each* or *every*; **Ex**:

<i>Chaque langue a ses idiomes particuliers,</i>	<i>Each</i> language has its peculiar idioms.
<i>Chaque vertu a sa récompense, et chaque vice a son châtimement,</i>	<i>Every</i> virtue has its reward, and <i>each</i> vice its punishment.

*Chacun*, on the contrary, generally refers to a substantive already *expressed* or *understood*, and makes in the feminine singular *chacune*: It has no plural, and answers to *each* or *every one*; **Ex**:

<i>Remettez ces livres chacun à sa place,</i>	Return those books <i>each</i> into its proper place.
<i>Que chacun se mêle de ses propres affaires,</i>	Let <i>every one</i> meddle with his own business.

**REMARK.**—That *chacun*, prefixed to a noun, or pronoun, is always followed by the preposition *de*, (of), as in English; thus: *chacun de nous*, each of us; *chacune de ces dames*, every one of those ladies, &c.

## EXERCISE.

Of all grammars we should (be a slave) to none.  
 (d. art.) *grammaire, f. pl. on. doit s'attacher.*  
 Did any man ever<sup>2</sup> attain<sup>1</sup> to such a pitch of glory! (Is  
 \* *jamais parvint-il ce \* comble gloire! Y en*  
 there) any of you who applies to study (as much) as he can?  
*a-t-il s'applique l'étude autant que le peut?*  
 No, (there is) not one. No one knows (whether he deserves)  
*il n'y en a sait s'il est digne de*  
 love or hatred. No expression, no truth of design and  
*de — f. s. vérité f. s. dessein de*  
 colouring, no strokes of genius in that great work. 'Those  
*coloris, truit, m. s. génie ouvrage, m. s.*  
 two wills have been declared void. Every age has  
*testament, m. pl. déclaré, pl. — m. s.*  
 its pleasures, and each pleasure has its charms. Every thing  
*plaisir m. pl. charme, pl. chose*  
 in its time. (Every one) to his own trade. All the la-  
*a tems, m. s. \* \* métier, m. s.*  
 dies at the ball were very finely dressed, and each  
*bal, m. s. (Ind. 3.) \* superbement paré f. pl.*  
 differently. What is the price of each of these  
*(avait une parure différente.) Quel prix, m. s.*  
 medals? One dollar each.  
*médaille, f. pl.*

## SYNTAX OF THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

(Continued.)

RIEN, (nothing) ; PERSONNE, (nobody).

**RULE 5.**—These two pronouns are always used in the *masculine singular*, with the negation *ne* prefixed to the verb ; but in *negative sentences*, or those expressing *doubt*, the negation is to be omitted.

When *rien* and *personne* are connected with the negation *ne*, they are rendered, in English, by *nothing* and *nobody* ; on the contrary, should they be used without this negation, then they answer to *something* or *any thing*, and *somebody* or *any body* ;  
 Ex :

Personne n' a le désir de vous tromper,	Nobody wishes to deceive you.
Je doute que personne puisse vous tromper,	I doubt whether anybody can deceive you.
Personne n'aurait-il jamais voulu vous tromper ?	Did ever anybody wish to deceive you ?
Rien ne saurait être plus joli,	Nothing can be prettier.
Je doute qu'il y ait rien de plus joli,	I doubt whether any thing is prettier.
Avez-vous rien vu de plus joli ?	Did you ever see any thing prettier ?

AUTRE, (other); AUTRUI, (others or other people).

RULE 6.—The indefinite pronoun *autre*, applies both to *persons* and *things*, and can be used *with* or *without* a noun expressed. When this pronoun is employed as the *subject* or *object* of a sentence, it may be followed, or not, by an *adjective*.

*Autrui*, on the contrary, refers to *persons* only, is invariable in its form, and always used without being joined to a substantive. This pronoun cannot be the *nominative* of a sentence, and admits of no *adjective* after it; Ex :

<i>Ces souliers sont trop grands; donnez-m'en une autre paire.</i>	These shoes are too large; give me another pair.
<i>En voici d' autres plus petits, essayez-les;</i>	Here are some <i>others</i> smaller; try them on.
<i>Si les autres sont fous, je ne le suis pas;</i>	If <i>others</i> are crazy, I am not.
<i>Je n' envie point le bien d' autrui,</i>	I do not envy the wealth of <i>others</i> .
<i>Il est fâcheux de dépendre d' autrui,</i>	It is unfortunate to depend on <i>others</i> .
<i>Ne parlez jamais aux dépens d' autrui,</i>	Never speak to the prejudice of <i>others</i> .

QUELQUE, (whoever, whatever, &c.)

RULE 7.—There are three different manners of writing *quelque*, viz :

QUELQUE, followed by a verb, is always divided into two words; thus: *quel que*, the first of which *quel*, must agree in *gender* and *number* with the substantive that follows the verb, which is to be used in the *subjunctive mood*; Ex :

<i>Quel que soit cet homme, c'est un coquin;</i>	Whoever that man may be, he is a rogue.
<i>Quelle que soit cette demoiselle, elle est bien mal-honnête;</i>	Whoever this young lady may be, she is very impolite.
<i>Quels que soient ses talens, il n' obtiendra pas cette place;</i>	Whatever his talents may be, he will not obtain that situation.
<i>Quelles que soient vos raisons, tout le monde vous blâmera;</i>	Whatever your reasons may be, every body will blame you.

QUELQUE, followed by a *substantive*, or by a *substantive* joined to its *adjective*, is always spelled as *one word*, and agrees with that substantive in *number* only; the verb following is to be used in the *subjunctive*, preceded by *que*\*; Ex :

<i>Quelque facilité que vous ayez, pour apprendre le Français,</i>	Whatever facility you may have in acquiring the French,
<i>Quelques raisons que vous puissiez me donner,</i>	Whatever reasons you may give me,
<i>Quelques belles promesses que vous puissiez me faire, &amp;c.</i>	Whatever fine promises you may make me, &c.

QUELQUE, followed by an *adjective*, *adverb* or *participle*, is invariable in its form, and requires the verb that follows it, in

\* *Quelque* m. and f. s. is often prefixed to a substantive taken in an *indeterminate sense*, and makes *quelques*, in the plural of both genders. This pronoun answers to the English partitive *some*, and does not admit of the conjunction *que*, after the noun that follows it: it is generally governed by a preposition; Ex :

*Il lit toujours quelque bon livre,  
Il est adonné à quelques vices,*

He is always reading *some* good book.  
He is addicted to *some* vices, &c.

the *subjunctive*, preceded by the conjunction *que*: It is rendered, in English, by *however, whatever, though, &c.*; Ex:

Quelque raisonnable qu' il soit, il est trop jeune pour cet emploi;	However reasonable he may be, he is too young for that office.
Quelque puissans que soit les rois, ils ne sont qu' hommes;	Though kings be ever so powerful, they are only men.
Quelque considérés que nous soyons, n' en abusons jamais;	Whatever consideration we may enjoy, let us not abuse it.
Quelque adroitement qu' il s'y prenne, il ne réussira pas;	However dexterously he may go to work, he will not succeed.

**Tout**, (all, every, quite, although, &c.)

**RULE 8.**—**Tout**, followed by a *verb*, is an *indefinite pronoun*: It is invariable in its form, and rendered, in English, by *all, or every thing*; Ex:

Tout conspire contre moi,	All conspires against me.
Tout lui fait peur,	Every thing frightens him.

**Tout**, followed by a *noun*, becomes an *adjective*, and agrees with its substantive in *gender* and *number*: It generally answers to the English *all, every, or the whole*; Ex:

Tous les hommes doivent s'entr' aider,	All men must help one another.
Toutes les femmes sont plus ou moins spirituelles,	Every woman is more or less witty.
Il a dépensé toute sa fortune,	He has consumed all his fortune.
Là tout l'argent que j'ai,	That is all the money I have.
Tout le monde le sait,	The whole world (or every body) knows it.

**Tout**, followed by an *adjective* or *past participle*, may be an *adverb*, a *conjunction*, or an *adjective*.

When an *adverb*, the word *tout* answers to the English *quite, or entirely*, and is *invariable*; Ex:

Elle est tout aimable,	She is quite lovely.
Elles étaient tout habillées de blanc,	They were entirely dressed in white.
Ils furent tout étonnés,	They were quite astonished.
Elles furent tout interdites,	They were quite thunderstruck.

**REMARK.**—Are to be excepted from this rule, however, all *adjectives* of the *feminine gender*, beginning with a *consonant*, or *h aspirated*, with which custom requires the rules of agreement; Ex:

Elle est toute surprise,	She is quite surprised.
Elles étaient toutes vêtues de blanc,	They were entirely dressed in white.
Ils furent tout honteux,	They were quite ashamed.
Elles furent toutes mouillées,	They were quite wet.

When a *conjunction*, *tout* is used instead of *bien que*, or *quoique*, (though, although), and follows the same rule as *tout* an *adverb*; with this difference, however, that the *adjective*, which is placed after the verb in English, must be placed, in French, immediately after *tout*, and followed by *que*, with a verb in the *indicative mood*; Ex:

Tout aimable qu' elle est,  
 Tout instruites qu' elles sont,  
 Toute malade qu' elle paraît,  
 Toutes hardies qu' elles étaient,  
 Tout charmans qu' ils paraissent être,

Though she is amiable.  
 Although they are well informed.  
 Though she appears very sick.  
 Although they were bold.  
 Although they appear to be charming.

When an adjective, *tout* is to be rendered, into English, by *all*, and must, in every instance, agree in gender and number with a substantive already expressed or understood ; Ex :

Ces dames sont toutes fort aimables,  
 Elles étaient toutes habillées de blanc,  
 Ils furent tous étonnés,

Those ladies are all very lovely.  
 They were all dressed in white.  
 They were all astonished.

### EXERCISE.

Who is there? Nobody. What are you<sup>2</sup> doing<sup>1</sup> there? No-  
 thing. I met (nobody). I doubt whether any body  
 (ai rencontré) (douter) que  
 (ever expressed himself) with more elegance than Fenelon.  
 se soit jamais exprimé de  
 Has any body called on me this morning? Nobody.  
 \* (est-il venu) chez m. s.  
 Did ever<sup>2</sup> (any body)<sup>1</sup> seriously<sup>4</sup> doubt<sup>3</sup> the existence  
 \* (a-t-il jamais) douté de f. s.  
 of God? Nothing is more surprising than the wonders of  
 surprenant merveille pl. (d. art.)  
 nature. (Is there) any thing more admirable? I doubt  
 — f. s. Y a-t-il de  
 whether (there is) any thing better calculated to exalt the soul.  
 que il y ait de plus propre à élever ame, f. s.  
 To most men the misfortunes (of others) are but a  
 pour la plupart (c. art.) mal, m. pl. ne que  
 dream. A charitable<sup>2</sup> man<sup>1</sup> rejoices in the happiness (of  
 songe, m. s. (se réjouir) de bonheur, m. s.  
 others.) (There are) persons whom we hate, and others whom  
 Il y a des personnes (haïr) de  
 we love, without knowing why: the one is an injustice;  
 (aimer) (savoir, Inf. 1.) pourquoi un f. s.  
 the other a weakness. Reason and faith equally<sup>2</sup>  
 faiblesse, f. s. (d. art.) raison, f. s. foi, f. s.  
 demonstrate,<sup>1</sup> that we (were created) for another life. What-  
 démontrer, pl. avons été créés vie, f. s.  
 ever (may be) your birth, whatever (may be) your  
 soit naissance, f. s. soient  
 dignities, you (have no right) (to despise) any body. What-  
 dignité, f. pl. ne devez  
 ever efforts you make, I doubt whether you (will suc-  
 — m. pl. (faire, subj. 1.) douter que réussir, subj. 1.  
 ceed). However surprising that phenomenon (may be), it is  
 (surprendre) phénomène, m. s. il  
 not against the order of nature. However cunning they  
 ordre (d. art.) — f. s. rusé, m. pl.



appear, they are sometimes (taken in). He always<sup>2</sup> has<sup>1</sup>  
 (paraître) quelquefois trompé, m. pl.  
 something to say. I have this news from some persons  
 à (tenir) nouvelle, f. s. personne, pl.  
 whom you know. Every thing forsakes us at the moment  
 (connaître) (abandonner) — m. s.  
 of death; we<sup>2</sup> retain<sup>3</sup> nothing<sup>1</sup> but our good works.  
 (d. art.) mort, f. s. reste (il ne) que œuvre, f. pl.  
 Every moment is dear to him who knows the  
 Tout (d. art.) — m. pl. pl. cher, pl. pour celui (connaître)  
 value of time. Children, amiable as they  
 prix, m. s. (d. art.) tens, m. s. aimable, m. pl. (tout-que)  
 are, have nevertheless many faults which it is important  
 néanmoins bien (s. art.) défaut, pl. que m.  
 to correct. All fools are not knaves, but all knaves  
 de (d. art.) fou, pl. coquin, m. pl. mais  
 are fools.  
 fou, pl.

## LESSON XXXVI.

### SYNTAX OF THE VERB.

#### OF MOODS AND TENSES.

The French verbs, as we have already observed, are divided into *four moods*, and sub-divided into *twenty tenses*, which are either *simple* or *compound*.

A *simple tense*, is that form of the verb which is expressed in *one word* only, and which does not borrow the help of the auxiliary *avoir*, (to have), or *être*, (to be), for its formation; as, *aimer*, (to love); *j'aime*, (I love); *j'aimerai*, (I will love); &c.

There are *eleven* simple tenses in every French verb.

A *compound tense*, on the contrary, is that which is always conjugated with *one* or *both* of the auxiliaries *avoir*, (to have), and *être*, (to be), joined to the past participle of any other verb; as, *j'ai aimé*, (I have loved); *j'ai été aimé*, (I have been loved); &c.

There are *nine* compound tenses in every French verb.

The simple tenses are divided into *primitive* and *derivative*.

The *primitive tenses* are those which have no formation but themselves: They are *five* in every verb; viz:



## PRIMITIVE TENSES,

## OF THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.

Conjugations.	Present of the Infinitive.	Present participle, or Gerund.	Past Participle.	Present of the Indicative.	Preterit definite.
1st	<i>parler</i>	<i>parlant</i>	<i>parlé</i>	<i>je parle</i>	<i>je parlai.</i>
2d	<i>punir</i>	<i>punissant</i>	<i>puni</i>	<i>je punis</i>	<i>je punis.</i>
3d	<i>recevoir</i>	<i>recevant</i>	<i>reçu</i>	<i>je reçois</i>	<i>je reçus.</i>
4th	<i>vendre</i>	<i>vendant</i>	<i>vendu</i>	<i>je vends</i>	<i>je vendis.</i>

The *Imperfect* of the Indicative, the *Future* and *Conditional*, the *Imperative*, the *Present* and *Imperfect* of the Subjunctive, are called derivative tenses, as being derived from the primitives, with the following changes in their terminations; viz :

## FORMATION OF THE DERIVATIVE TENSES.

## IMPERFECT OF THE INDICATIVE.

RULE 1.—The *Imperfect of the Indicative* is formed from the *Gerund* or *Present Participle*, by changing *ant* into *ais*, for the first person singular, and adding the proper pronoun; as, *parlant*, Imperf. *je parlais*; *punissant*, *je punissais*; *recevant*, *je recevais*; *vendant*, *je vendais*.

The remaining five terminations are, invariably, *ais*, *ait*, *ions*, *iez*, *aient*.

## FUTURE, PRESENT, or ABSOLUTE.

RULE 2.—The *Future* is formed from the *Present of the Infinitive*, by adding *ai*, for the first and second conjugations; by changing *oir* into *rai* for the third; and *e* into *ai* for the last; as, *parler*, Futur. *je parlerai*; *punir*, *je punirai*; *recevoir*, *je recevrai*; *vendre*, *je vendrai*.

The remaining five terminations are, invariably, *ras*, *ra*, *rons*, *rez*, *ront*.

## CONDITIONAL.

RULE 3.—The *Conditional* is formed from the *Future*, by changing *rai* into *rais*; as, *je parlerai*, Condit. *je parlerais*; *je punirai*, *je punirais*; *je recevrai*, *je recevrais*; *je vendrai*, *je vendrais*.

The remaining five terminations are, invariably, *rais*, *rait*, *rions*, *riez*, *raient*.

## IMPERATIVE.

RULE 4.—The *Imperative* has no *first person singular*.

The *second person singular* of the *Imperative*, is like the *first* of the *Indicative*, (Present tense), omitting the personal pronoun; as, *je parle*, Imper. *parle*; *je punis*, *punis*; *je reçois*, *reçois*; *je vends*, *vends*.

The *third person singular* of the *Imperative*, is formed from the *third person plural* of the *Indicative*, by dropping *nt*, and adding the conjunction *que*, with the proper pronoun; as, *ils parlent*, Imper. *qu' il parle*; *ils punissent*, *qu' il punisse*; *ils reçoivent*, *qu' il recoive*; *ils vendent*, *qu' il vende*.

The *three persons plural* of the *Imperative*, are like those of the *Indicative*, omitting the personal pronouns of the first two persons, and adding *que* to the *third*; thus: *nous parlons*, *vous parlez*, *ils parlent*; Imper. *parlons*, *parlez*, *qu' ils parlent*, &c.

REMARK.—When the *second person singular* of the *Imperative* ends with a silent *e*; as, *parle*, speak (thou); *donne*, give (thou); *ouvre*, open (thou), &c. an *s* is to be added, in French, to that person, when followed by the relative pronoun *en* or *y*; Ex:

*Parle à ton frère,*  
*Parles-en à ton frère,*  
*Porte ce livre-ci dans ma chambre,*  
*Portes-y aussi celui-là,*  
*Portes-y-en un autre,*

*Speak to thy brother.*  
*Speak to thy brother about it.*  
*Carry this book into my room.*  
*Carry that one thither also.*  
*Carry another one (of them) thither.*

## PRESENT OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

RULE 5.—The *Present of the Subjunctive* is formed from the *third person plural* of the *Indicative*, (Present tense), by dropping *nt*, and adding the proper pronoun, with the conjunction *que*; as, *ils parlent*, Subj. Pres. *que je parle*; *ils punissent*, *que je punisse*, &c.

The remaining *five terminations* are, invariably, *es*, *e*, *ions*, *iez*, *ent*.

OBSERVE, that the *first* and *second person plural* of the *Subjunctive*, are always like those of the *Imperfect of the Indicative*, after adding the conjunction *que*; thus: *nous parlions*, *vous parliez*; Subj. Pres. *que nous parlions*, *que vous parliez*, &c. And the *third person plural* of the *Subjunctive*, is like the *third person plural* of the *Indicative*; as, *ils parlent*, Subj. Pres. *qu' ils parlent*; *ils punissent*, *qu' ils punissent*, &c.

## IMPERFECT.

RULE 6.—The *Imperfect of the Subjunctive* is formed from the *second personal singular* of the *Preterit definite*, by adding *se*, and prefixing the proper pronoun, with the conjunction *que*; thus: *tu parlas*, Imperf. Subj. *que je parlasse*; *tu punis*, *que je punisse*; *tu reçus*, *que je reçusse*; *tu vendis*, *que je vendisse*.

The remaining *five terminations*, (for the *four regular conjugations*), are as follow:

1st conjugation: *asses*, *ât*, *assions*, *assiez*, *assent*.

2d conjugation: *isses*, *ît*, *issions*, *issiez*, *issent*.

3d conjugation: *usses*, *ût*, *ussions*, *ussiez*, *ussent*.

4th conjugation: *isses*, *ît*, *issions*, *issiez*, *issent*.

REMARK.—The verb *venir*, (to come); *tenir*, (to hold); and their derivatives, have their Imperfect Subjunctive in *insse*, *insse*s, *int*; *inssions*, *inssiez*, *inssent*; but these, and all the other irregular verbs, will be more profitably committed to memory, than subjected to the rules of *construction* or *derivation*.

## EXERCISE.

One should never answer but for himself. That man  
doit (Inf. 1.) que de  
 made a fortune by selling almanacs. We perceived on  
(Ind. 2.) \* — en (Inf. 3) des almanacs (Ind. 5.)  
 the road a sign hung from a tree. I <sup>1</sup>only<sup>3</sup> take<sup>2</sup>  
route, f. s. écriteau, m. s. (Inf. 5.) à m. s. (Ind. 1.)  
 what is mine. I waited for you a long while, but you did  
(nomin) à moi (Ind. 5.) \* \* \*  
<sup>1</sup>not<sup>3</sup> come<sup>2</sup>. I (was answering) your letter when you (came  
(Ind. 5.) répondre, (Ind. 3.) à êtes  
 in.) Come to my<sup>2</sup> house<sup>1</sup>, I (will return) you your money.  
entré. (Imper.) \* chez, rendre, (Ind. 7.)  
 I (would sell) you my house, if you gave me a fair price.  
Ind. 9. en (Ind. 3.) bon  
 Answer thy master. Let him answer for himself, and I (will  
(Imper.) à (Imper.) de Ind. 7.  
 answer) for myself. That I may not depend on (any body.)  
moi \* ne (Subj. 1.) de personne.  
 That I might <sup>1</sup>not<sup>3</sup> melt<sup>2</sup> into tears.  
\* (Subj. 3.) en larme, pl.

## DEFINITION OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

The word *Infinitive*, comes from the Latin *Infinitus*, in English *indefinite* or *unlimited*. This mood has no relation whatever either to *number* or *person*, and expresses the action of the verb in an *undeterminate* manner, that is to say, without affirmation.

The *Infinitive mood* is divided into *five* tenses; viz :

- |  |                          |                |
|--|--------------------------|----------------|
| 1. THE PRESENT OF THE INFINITIVE,        | <i>aimer,</i>            | to love.       |
| 2. THE PAST, or COMPOUND OF THE PRESENT, | <i>avoir aimé,</i>       | to have loved. |
| 3. THE GERUND, or PRESENT PARTICIPLE,    | <i>aimant,</i>           | loving.        |
| 4. THE PAST, or COMPOUND OF THE GERUND,  | <i>ayant aimé</i>        | having loved.  |
| 5. THE PAST PARTICIPLE,                  | <i>aimé, m. aimé, f.</i> | loved.         |

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

The word *Indicative*, comes from the Latin *Indicare*, in English to *indicate* or *affirm*. This mood expresses the action of the verb in a *direct, positive* and *absolute* manner, with relation to *time, number* and *person*.

The *Indicative mood* is divided into *ten* tenses; viz :

- |  |                       |                                       |
|--|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. THE PRESENT OF THE INDICATIVE,      | <i>j'aime,</i>        | I love, or do love.                   |
| 2. THE PRETERIT DEFINITE, or COMPOUND, | <i>j'ai aimé,</i>     | I have loved.                         |
| 3. THE IMPERFECT,                      | <i>j'aimais,</i>      | I did love.                           |
| 4. THE PLUSQUERFECT, or COMPOUND,      | <i>j'aurais aimé,</i> | I had loved.                          |
| 5. THE PRETERIT DEFINITE,              | <i>j'aimai,</i>       | I loved.                              |
| 6. THE PRETERIT ANTERIOR, or COMPOUND, | <i>j'eus aimé,</i>    | I had loved.                          |
| 7. THE FUTURE PRESENT, or ABSOLUTE,    | <i>j'aimerai,</i>     | I shall, or will love.                |
| 8. THE PAST, or COMPOUND,              | <i>j'aurai aimé,</i>  | I shall, or will have loved.          |
| 9. THE CONDITIONAL PRESENT,            | <i>j'aimerais,</i>    | I should, would, or could love.       |
| 10. THE PAST, or COMPOUND,             | <i>j'aurais aimé,</i> | I should, would, or could have loved. |

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

The word *Imperative*, comes from the Latin *Imperare*, in English to *command*. This mood is generally used for *commanding, entreating, permitting* or *forbidding*.

The *Imperative* has but *one* tense, which is called *present* and *future*: *Present* with respect to the *injunction*, and *future* with respect to the *thing enjoined*; as, *aime*, (love thou); *qu'il aime*, (let him love); *aimons*, (let us love); *aimez*, (love ye, or you); *qu'ils aiment*, (let them love).

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

The word *Subjunctive*, comes from the Latin *Subjungere*, in English *to subjoin* or *put after*. In effect, the verb in this mood is always placed after another verb, to which it is united by a conjunction, and on which its determinate sense entirely depends: For this reason it may also be called *Conjunctive mood*.

The *Subjunctive* or *Conjunctive mood* is divided into four tenses; viz:

1. THE PRESENT OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE, *que j'aime*, That I may love.
2. THE PRETERIT, or COMPOUND, *que j'aie aimé*, That I may have loved.
3. THE IMPERFECT, *que j'aimasse*, That I might love.
4. THE PLUPERFECT, or COMPOUND, *que j'eusse aimé*, That I might have loved.

## EXERCISE.

She loves to dance. After studying my geography I (will take) my music<sup>2</sup> lesson<sup>1</sup>. It is by working that people enrich themselves. Having well considered the business, I did not regret my money. A king beloved and respected by his subjects, is twice a king. I never (go to bed) before (twelve o'clock.) I have lived in that house. I (was thinking) of you (this very minute.) I had sworn <sup>2</sup>never<sup>3</sup> to<sup>1</sup> forgive<sup>5</sup> him<sup>4</sup>. I found him alone, and spoke (to him) for the first time. I had soon spent all my money. I (will speak) (to you) when I (shall) have dined. (Were I) you, I (would marry) her. In all thy actions consult the light of reason. (Let us not cease) to work. (That I may listen) to that (blockhead.) (That I may have blamed) his conduct. (That I might inhabit) a hut instead of a palace. (That I might have missed) my aim.

*Ind. 1.* *(Inf. 2.)* *f. s.* *Ind. 7.*  
*de* *Ce en* *(Inf. 3.)* *on*  
*(Ind. 1.)* *se* *affaire, f. s.* \*  
*(Ind. 5.)* *m. s.* *(aimer, Inf. 5.)* *(Inf. 5.)* *de*  
*s. jet, pl.* \* *se coucher, Ind. 1.*  
*minuit* *(loger)* *f. s.* *Ind. 3.*  
*à* *à l'instant même* *(jurer)* *de* *(Inf. 1.)*  
*lui* *(Ind. 5.)* *je, (Ind. 5.)* *f. s.*  
*fois* *(Ind. 5.)* *bientôt (dépenser)*  
*you* *(shall)* *Si j'étais* *épouser,*  
*Ind. 9.* — *f. pl. consulte* *f. s.* *(d. art.)* *raison, f. s.*  
*ne pas \* cesser, Imper.* *de* *écouter, Subj. 1.* \*  
*(blockhead.)* *(That I may have blamed)* *conduct.* *(That*  
*lourdeau* *blâmer, Subj. 2.* *conduite, f. s.* *habiter,*  
*Subj. 3.* *chaumière f. s.* *(au lieu)* *palais, m. s.* *manquer,*  
*Subj. 4.* *coup. m. s.*

## RULES FOR USING THE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.

### PRESENT.

**RULE 1.**—The *present of the Indicative* denotes that a thing is *existing, doing or happening*, at the very time we are speaking; as, *je suis malade*, I am sick; *elle joue*, she plays, (or, she is playing\*); *il pleut*, it rains, (or, it is raining\*).

This tense is also used, in lieu of the *Future*, when speaking of an action which is near at hand; Ex :

<i>Je pars demain pour la campagne ;</i> or <i>je partirai demain, &amp;c.</i> <i>Que faites vous ce soir ;</i> or, <i>que ferez-</i> <i>vous, &amp;c.</i>	<i>I set out to-morrow for the country ;</i> or, <i>I will set out to-morrow, &amp;c.</i> <i>What do you do this evening ? or, what</i> <i>will you do, &amp;c.</i>
---	--

### IMPERFECT.

**RULE 2.**—The *Imperfect* denotes the *past* with relation to the *present* ; it indicates that an action, which is now over, was *present, or doing*, at the time of another action which is equally over ; as, *je lisais lorsque vous entrâtes*, I was reading when you came in.

Here, the action of my reading, which is now *past*, was certainly *present*, at the moment of your *coming in*, which is also *past*.

The *Imperfect* serves likewise to denote *habitual actions, or actions often repeated in a past time* ; or, to describe the *qualities*, either good, or bad, of men who are no more ; Ex :

<i>L'hiver dernier j'allais au bal presque</i> <i>tous les soirs,</i> <i>Son père était un honnête homme, qui</i> <i>aimait l'esprit sans en avoir, et qui</i> <i>admirait tout sans savoir pourquoi,</i>	<i>Last winter I went to the ball almost</i> <i>every night.</i> <i>His father was a good sort of a man :</i> <i>he was fond of wit without possessing</i> <i>any ; and admired every thing with-</i> <i>out knowing why.</i>
---	--

### PLUPERFECT.

**RULE 3.**—The *Pluperfect* denotes an action past before another which is past also ; as, *j'avais diné lorsqu' il vint me voir*, I HAD DINED when he came to see me.

Here, the action of my *dining* was certainly *past* at the moment of his *coming*, which is *past* also.

\* In English, the verb *to be* is frequently used with the *Gerund*, or *present participle*, to denote an action either *present, past or future* : as, *I am writing, I was writing, I shall be writing, &c.* This construction is not adopted in French. In cases of this sort, the French verb is to be put in the tense expressed by the English verb *to be*, without regard to the *Gerund*. Thus : *I am writing*, must be rendered by *j'écris* ; *I was writing*, by *j'écrivais* ; and *I shall be writing*, by *j'écrirai*.



## EXAMPLES.

<i>Il avait fini son ouvrage lorsque vous êtes arrivé,</i>	He had done his work when you arrived.
<i>Vous étiez à peine sortie qu'elle vint vous demander,</i>	Hardly had you gone out when she came to ask for you.

## PRETERIT DEFINITE.

RULE 4.—The *Preterit definite* denotes an action entirely past in a specified time, which is also entirely past : To authorize the use of this tense, there must be the interval of, at least, one day ; as, *Je le vis hier, la semaine dernière, le mois dernier, il y a six mois, il y a un an, &c.* I SAW him yesterday, last week, last month, six months ago, one year ago, &c.

The *Preterit definite* is chiefly used in the historic style, or when speaking of an action done but *once*, or *very seldom* ; but the time of that action must be *determined* or specified by an *adverb*, otherwise we may indifferently use the *preterit definite*, or the *preterit indefinite* ; Ex :

<i>Je fus bien malade il y a trois jours,</i>	I was very ill three days ago.
<i>La dernière fois que nous allâmes le voir, il nous reçut fort cavalièrement ;</i>	The last time we went to see him, he received us very haughtily.
<i>César vainquit Pompée, or a vaincu Pompée ;</i>	Cæsar conquered Pompey, or has conquered Pompey.

## PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

RULE 5.—The *Preterit indefinite* denotes that an action has taken place at a time which is not entirely elapsed, which time we commonly designate, though sometimes we do not ; but it should never be too far distant from the time when we are speaking ; Ex :

<i>J'ai vu Monsieur votre père et je lui ai parlé,</i>	I have seen your father and spoken to him.
<i>J'ai déjeuné chez lui ce matin,</i>	I breakfasted this morning at his house.
<i>Nous n'avons pas eu beaucoup de neige cet hiver,</i>	We have not had much snow this winter.

## PRETERIT ANTERIOR.

RULE 6.—The *Preterit anterior* denotes that a thing has been done before another, in a time which is entirely elapsed ; as, *Quand j'eus fini mon ouvrage, je m'en allai ;* when I had done my work, I went away.

This tense is hardly ever used, except after one of the following conjunctions : *aussitôt que, d'abord que, or dès que*, (as soon as) ; *lorsque or quand*, (when) ; *après que*, (after) ; Ex :

<i>Dès que j'eus entendu sa voix, je le reconnus ;</i>	As soon as I had heard his voice, I recollected him.
<i>Lorsque nous eûmes déjeuné, il me raconta son histoire ;</i>	When we had breakfasted, he related to me his history.

## FUTURE ABSOLUTE.

RULE 7.—The *Future absolute* denotes that an action will take place, or a thing will be done, at a time which is not yet come; as, *je le verrai ce soir*, I will see him this evening.

In this tense, the period of time may or may not be determined; thus: *j'irai à Paris*, I shall go to Paris; and *j'irai à Paris l'année prochaine*, I shall go to Paris next year; Ex:

<i>Si vous le battez, il s'en ira;</i>	If you beat him, he will go away.
<i>Nous tous croirons, quand nous l'aurons vu;</i>	We will believe you, when we (shall) have seen him, or it.
<i>Elle vous répondra la semaine prochaine;</i>	She will answer you next week.

## FUTURE ANTERIOR.

RULE 8.—The *compound of the Future* denotes that an action, which is not yet come, will be past, when another action shall take place, or even before it takes place; as, *Quand j'aurai fini d'écrire, j'étudierai ma leçon*; when I (shall) have done writing, I will study my lesson.

In this tense, the period of time is necessarily to be determined; thus: *j'aurai fini mon thème, quand vous reviendrez*; I will have finished my exercise, when you come back; Ex:

<i>Elle sera guérie quand elle verra le médecin;</i>	She will be cured when she sees the physician.
<i>Venez nous voir, quand vous aurez dîné, dit l'avare;</i>	Come and see us, when you (shall) have dined, says a miser.

## CONDITIONAL.

RULE 9.—The *present of the Conditional* denotes that an action would take place presently, or at a future period, if certain conditions were granted; as, *je lirais si j'avais des livres*, I would read if I had books.

This tense is also used to express a *wish* or *desire*; thus: *je désirerais*, or *je voudrais bien les revoir*, I wish I could, or I would like to see them again; Ex:

<i>Il serait heureux, s'il voulait l'être;</i>	He could be happy, if he wished to be so.
<i>Si vous aviez étudié votre leçon, lorsque je vous l'ai dit, vous la sauriez maintenant.</i>	Had you studied your lesson, when I told you, you would know it now.

## CONDITIONAL PAST.

RULE 10.—The *compound of the Conditional* denotes that an action would have already taken place, if certain conditions, necessary for its execution, had been fulfilled; as, *j'aurais lu si j'avais eu des livres*, I should have read, if I had had books.

This, and the above tense, are generally *followed* or *preceded*, in French, by the conjunction *si*, (if); Ex:

*Je serais allé hier à la comédie, si je me fusse bien porté ;* I should have gone to the play last night, if I had been well.  
*Il n'aurait pas mis au jour son ouvrage, s'il n'eût pas cru qu'il pût être utile ;* He would not have published his work, had he not thought that it would be useful.

## EXERCISE.

I am very glad to see you. What do they<sup>2</sup> play<sup>1</sup> to-night at  
*bien de Que \* -t-on (Ind. 1.) ce soir*  
 the theatre? What (was the matter) with you this morning?  
*— m. s. avoir, Ind. 3. \* matin, m. s.*  
 My heart was oppressed with grief: I (had just) received a  
*(serrer) de douleur venir, Ind. 3. de (Inf. 1.)*  
 most<sup>2</sup> distressing<sup>3</sup> (piece of news)<sup>1</sup>! She was already married  
*bien affligeant, f. s. nouvelle, f. s. marié, f. s.*  
 when I was invited to the wedding. We met him last<sup>2</sup> week<sup>1</sup>:  
*(Ind. 5.) m. s. noce, f. s. (Ind. 5.) semaine, f. s.*  
 He appeared quite astonished to see us again. We have spo-  
*(Ind. 5.) tout de revoir \* m. s.*  
 ken<sup>2</sup> a (long while)<sup>1</sup> of your adventure. She (has softened) her  
*\* fléchir, Ind. 2.*  
 father by her submission. Had<sup>2</sup> you<sup>3</sup> <sup>1</sup>not<sup>4</sup> quickly dined?  
*soumission, f. s. (Ind. 5.) promptement*  
 In the twinkling of an eye, they (had dispersed) the mob.  
*un clin \* (Ind. 6.) populace, f. s.*  
 I (will support) you with all my credit. (Shall I<sup>2</sup> receive<sup>1</sup>)  
*appuyer, Ind. 7. de — m. s. \* Ind. 7.*  
 visits (to-day)? He (will have been) too distrustful. (Will  
*viste, pl. \* Ind. 8.*  
 they<sup>2</sup> have<sup>1</sup> triumphed<sup>3</sup>) over their enemies? I (would rejoice)  
*Ind. 8. de ennemi, m. pl. se réjouir, Ind. 9.*  
 at his happiness. (Would they<sup>3</sup> <sup>1</sup>not<sup>4</sup> unravel<sup>2</sup>) the clue of  
*de m. s. \* démêler, Ind. 9. fil, m. s.*  
 that intrigue? I (should have liked) a country<sup>2</sup> life<sup>1</sup>.  
*— f. s. \* aimer, Ind. 10. la champêtre*

## OF GRAMMATICAL PROPOSITIONS.

A *proposition* is a short sentence expressing the sensation we experience, or the judgment we pronounce; as, *je souffre*, (I suffer); *il est heureux*, (he is happy).

A *complete sentence* may be compounded of one, two, or more propositions.

When two propositions are employed in the formation of a sentence, these propositions are most generally connected by what we call a *conjunction*; as, *on est toujours blâmable quand*

*on ne fait pas son devoir* ; We are always culpable, *when* we do not perform our duty.

Among the conjunctions employed to unite sentences together, some govern the verb that follows them in the *indicative mood*, and others in the *subjunctive* ; but the conjunction *que*, (that),\* which is one of those most commonly used, govern both the *indicative* and the *subjunctive*.

#### OF THE CONJUNCTION *Que*.\*

RULE 1.—When the conjunction *que*, (that), follows a verb expressing *affirmation*, or a kind of *certitude*, this conjunction requires the verb that follows it, in the *indicative mood*, instead of the *subjunctive* ; as, *je sais qu'il viendra*, I know (that) he will come ; and not, *je sais qu'il vienne* ; Ex :

*Je savais qu'il était sorti,*  
*Nous pensons qu'il n'a pas réussi,*  
*Il croit qu'elle vous dit la vérité.*

*I knew (that) he had gone out.*  
*We think (that) he has not succeeded.*  
*He believes (that) she tells you the truth.*

RULE 2.—When the conjunction *que* follows a verb accompanied by a *negation*, or one expressing *doubt*, *wish* or *uncertainty*, this conjunction requires the verb that follows it, in the *subjunctive mood*, instead of the *indicative* ; as, *je doute qu'il vienne*, I doubt whether he will come ; and not, *je doute qu'il viendra* ; Ex :

*Je crains qu'elle ne soit malade,*  
*Il souhaite qu'on nous l'accorde,*  
*Nous désirons qu'il le sache,*

*I fear (that) she may be sick.*  
*I wish (that) they may grant it to you.*  
*We wish him to know it.*

#### RULES FOR USING THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE, AND OF THEIR CORRESPONDENCE WITH THOSE OF THE INDICATIVE.

RULE 3.—When the verb which precedes the conjunction *que*, (that), is used in the *present* or *future* of the *indicative*, the verb that follows this conjunction must be put in the *présent* of the *subjunctive*, in order to express an action either *present* or *future* ; Ex :

*Je veux que vous dansiez,*  
*J'attendrai que le printemps revienne,*  
*J'aurai dépensé beaucoup d'argent pour*  
*qu'il n'apprenne rien,*

*I wish (that) you would dance.*  
*I will wait until spring returns.*  
*I will have spent a great deal of money*  
*without his having learned any thing.*

\* The conjunction *that*, is frequently omitted in English ; but *que*, which answers to it, is never omitted in French.

**RULE 4.**—When the verb which precedes the conjunction *que*, is used in the *imperfect*, *preterit definite*, *preterit indefinite*, *preterit anterior*, or *pluperfect* of the *indicative*, or one of the two *conditionals*, the verb that follows this conjunction must be put in the *imperfect* of the *subjunctive*, in order to express an action either *present* or *future*; **Ex :**

<i>Je voulais, je voulus, j'ai voulu, j'eus voulu, j'avais voulu, je voudrais, or j'aurais voulu que vous allassiez à la campagne.</i>	<i>I was willing, I have been willing, I had been willing, I should be willing, or I should have been willing that you should go to the country.</i>
--	--

**RULE 5.**—When the verb which precedes the conjunction *que*, is used in the *present*, *preterit indefinite*, or *future absolute* of the *indicative*, the verb that follows this conjunction must be put in the *preterit* of the *subjunctive*, in order to express an action either *past* or *accomplished*; **Ex :**

<i>Je doute qu'aucun géographe ait jamais bien connu l'île de l'Ascension,</i>	<i>I doubt whether any geographer has ever been well acquainted with (the position of) the Isle of Ascension.</i>
<i>Il a fallu que j'aie fait bien des démarches pour le sortir de ce mauvais pas,</i>	<i>I was obliged to take many steps, to extricate him from this difficulty.</i>
<i>Je ne prendrai aucun parti, que je n'aie auparavant consulté ma famille,</i>	<i>I will take no part, without having first consulted my family.</i>

**RULE 6.**—When the verb which precedes the conjunction *que*, is used in the *imperfect*, *preterit definite*, *preterit indefinite*, *preterit anterior*, or *pluperfect* of the *indicative*, or one of the two *conditionals*, the verb that follows this conjunction must be put in the *pluperfect* of the *subjunctive*, in order to express an action entirely *past* or *accomplished*; **Ex :**

<i>Je ne croyais pas, je ne crus pas, je n'ai pas cru, je n'eus pas cru, je n'avais pas cru, je ne croirais pas, or je n'aurais pas cru que vous eussiez terminé vos affaires si promptement.</i>	<i>I did not think, I had not thought, I would not think, or I would not have thought that you would have finished your business so soon.</i>
---	---

**RULE 7.**—The relative pronouns *qui*, *que*, *où*, *dont*, used after a *superlative*, an *indefinite pronoun*, or the adjectives *seul*, *unique*, *premier*, *dernier*, &c. and the adverb *peu*, (*little*, *few*), generally require the verb that follows them in the *subjunctive mood*; **Ex :**

<i>C'est l'homme le plus singulier que je connaisse,</i>	<i>He is the most singular man I know.</i>
<i>C'est le seul ami qui me soit resté fidèle,</i>	<i>He is the only friend that has remained faithful to me.</i>
<i>C'est le premier combat où il ait été blessé,</i>	<i>It is the first battle in which he was wounded.</i>
<i>Il est peu de plaisirs dont on soit bientôt fatigué,</i>	<i>There are few pleasures of which we are not soon tired.</i>

**REMARK.**—There are a few instances, in which, to express with the *subjunctive* an action either *past* or *accomplished*, in a time which is *past* also, it is necessary to double the auxiliary *avoir*, (to have); thus: *je ne croyais pas que vous eussiez eu dîné avant midi*, I did not expect (that) you could have done dinner before twelve o'clock.



## EXERCISE.

You will <sup>1</sup>never<sup>4</sup> persuade<sup>3</sup> him<sup>2</sup> (that) he was in the wrong.  
 (Ind. 7.) lui (avoir) \* \* tort.  
 It is not very certain (that) he (will go away). I know (that)  
 m. sûr (Subj. 1.) (savoir)  
 she is very obstinate. I wish (that) you may find  
 opiniâtre (souhaite) (pouvoir, Subj. 1.) (Inf. 1.)  
 them again. I (shall be) very glad when he knows that (I am  
 que (Subj. 1.)  
 not at all to be blamed for it). He is the<sup>2</sup> most<sup>3</sup> obliging<sup>4</sup>  
 il n'y a pas du tout de ma faute. Ce  
 man<sup>1</sup> (that) I ever<sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>met<sup>3</sup> with. It (would be) very desirable  
 jamais (Subj. 2.) \* m. fort à (Inf. 1.)  
 (that) you should not make (so much) noise. I do not  
 (Subj. 3.) tant de \*  
 believe (that) he (has had) (so much) success as he says.  
 (Ind. 1.) (Subj. 2.) autant de que le  
 (Nobody) shall <sup>1</sup>ever<sup>4</sup> persuade<sup>3</sup> me<sup>2</sup> (that) he (has learned)  
 On (Ind. 7.) (Subj. 2.) le  
 French in so short a time. I doubt whether your brother  
 en peu de que  
 (would have succeeded) without your assistance. I am per-  
 (Subj. 4.)  
 suaded (that) he could never (have extricated himself) with-  
 s'en tirer Subj. 4.  
 out you. He is the<sup>3</sup> most<sup>4</sup> modest<sup>5</sup> young<sup>1</sup> man<sup>2</sup> I ever  
 Ce le  
 knew. That letter is one of the last that great man  
 (connaître, Subj. 2.) lettre, f. s. f. pl. ce  
 wrote. To whomsoever you (address yourself), speak boldly.  
 (Subj. 2. f. pl.) (qui qu'on ce soit) S'adresser, Subj. 1.

## CONJUGATIONS.

The French language, as we have already said, has but *four* different conjugations, which are known by the termination of the infinitive. The *first* conjugation has the infinitive ending in *er*; as, *parler*, (to speak); the *second* in *ir*; as, *punir*, (to punish); the *third* in *oir*; as, *recevoir*, (to receive); and the *fourth* in *re*; as, *vendre*, (to sell). It has besides *two* auxiliary verbs, which are so called, because they serve to conjugate the other verbs in their compound tenses: These are *avoir*, (to have), and *être*, (to be).

## DIFFERENT WAYS OF CONJUGATING VERBS.

There are *four* different ways of conjugating a French verb; viz: *affirmatively*, *negatively*, *interrogatively*, and both *negatively and interrogatively*.



FIRST WAY: *Affirmatively.*

RULE 1.—A verb is said to be conjugated affirmatively, in French, when this verb is preceded by its nominative, and used without a negation; as, *j'ai*, (I have); *tu vois*, (thou see'st); *il parle*, (he speaks), or *Jean parle*, (John speaks); Ex:

*Guillaume sait sa leçon,*

*Mon père arrivera aujourd'hui,*

*La nuit elle lit des romans, et dort toute la matinée,*

*William knows his lesson.*

*My father will arrive to-day.*

*At night she reads novels, and sleeps the whole morning.*

SECOND WAY: *Negatively.*

RULE 2.—A verb is said to be conjugated negatively, in French, when this verb is connected with one of the following negations: *ne pas*, (not); *ne rien*, (nothing); *ne jamais*, (never); *ne personne*, (nobody), &c. See the adverbs of negation, page 44, of this Grammar.

When a verb is used with one of the foregoing negations, *ne* or *n'* is placed between the *verb* and the *nominative*, and *pas*, *rien*, *jamais*, *personne*, &c. after the *verb*, in simple tenses; or, between the *auxiliary* and the *past participle*, in compound tenses; thus: *je n'ai pas*, (I have not); *tu ne vois rien*, (thou see'st nothing); *je n'ai jamais aimé*, (I have never loved); *je n'ai entendu personne*, (I have heard nobody); Ex:

*Guillaume ne sait pas sa leçon,*

*Guillaume n' a pas su sa leçon,*

*Mon père n' arrivera pas aujourd'hui,*

*Mon père n' est pas arrivé aujourd'hui,*

*William does not know his lesson.*

*William has not known his lesson.*

*My father will not arrive to-day.*

*My father has not arrived to-day.*

REMARK.—*Ne personne*, makes an exception to the foregoing rule. When this negation is connected with a verb, in compound tenses, the word *personne* must be placed after the *past participle*; thus: *je n'ai pas vu*, *je n'ai rien vu*, *je n'ai jamais vu*, *je n'ai vu personne*; never say: *je n'ai personne vu*.

THIRD WAY: *Interrogatively.*

RULE 4.—A verb is said to be conjugated interrogatively, in French, when the nominative pronoun is placed *after the verb*, and joined to it by a *hyphen*; thus: *ai-je*, (have I); *vois-tu*, (see'st thou); *parle-t-il*, (does he speak), &c. In compound tenses, the nominative pronoun must be placed between the *auxiliary* and the *past participle*, and joined to the auxiliary by a *hyphen*; thus: *ai-je eu*, (have I had); *as-tu vu*, (hast thou seen); *a-t-il parlé*, (has he spoken); Ex:

*Avez-vous un livre à me prêter?*

*Que ferai-je aujourd'hui: lirai-je, écrirai-*

*je, ou irai-je me promener?*

*Votre frère viendra-t-il avec nous?*

*Ont-ils répondu à votre lettre?*

*Have you a book to lend me?*

*What shall I do to-day: shall I read,*

*shall I write, or shall I walk?*

*Will your brother come with us?*

*Have they answered your letter?*

REMARK 1.—When the first person singular of the present of the indicative has only one syllable, and is to be used interrogatively, the nominative pronoun, in French, must be placed before the verb, and preceded by the words *est-ce que*, (is it that); thus: *est-ce que je cours?* (do I run?) *est-ce que je dors?* (do I sleep?) &c. The only exceptions to this rule are the following: *ai-je*, (have I); *suis-je*, (am I); *dis-je*, (do I say); *dois-je*, (do I owe); *fais-je*, (do I do); *vais-je*, (do I go), and *vois-je*, (do I see).

REMARK 2.—In interrogative sentences, whether they be used with a negation, or not, when the verb which precedes the pronouns *il*, *elle* or *on*, ends with a vowel, to avoid a disagreeable sound, the letter *-t-* must be added, in French, between that verb and the pronoun; thus: *aime-t-il?* (does he love?) *parle-t-elle?* (does she speak?) *ne vous l'enterra-t-on pas?* (will they not send it to you?) &c.

Again, when a verb has for its nominative a *noun* instead of a *pronoun*, this noun, in French, is to be prefixed to the verb, and either of the personal pronouns *il*, *elle*, *ils*, or *elles*, must follow the verb, in *simple tenses*, or the auxiliary, in *compound tenses*; thus:  *votre sœur apprend-elle le Français?* (does your sister learn French?) *Vos amis ne vous abandonneront-ils pas?* (will not your friends forsake you?) &c. But, should an *interrogative pronoun*, or *adverb*, begin the sentence, the noun is to be placed after the verb, instead of the pronoun, which is then omitted; as, *que fait votre sœur?* (what is your sister doing now?) *à quoi s'occupe votre ami?* (what is your friend busy about?) *où demeure votre cousin?* (where does your cousin live?) &c. Though we might say with equal propriety: *votre sœur, que fait-elle maintenant?* *votre ami, à quoi s'occupe-t-il à la campagne?* *Mademoiselle votre cousine, où demeure-t-elle?*

#### FOURTH WAY: *Negatively and Interrogatively.*

RULE 4.—A verb is said to be conjugated negatively and interrogatively, in French, when the interrogation formed with the verb and its nominative, is placed between the two negations; thus: *n'ai-je pas*, (have I not); *ne vois-tu pas*, (see'st thou not); *ne parle-t-il pas*, (does he not speak); &c. In compound tenses, it is the interrogation formed with the auxiliary and the nominative pronoun, which is placed between the two negations, the past participle of the verb to be conjugated being always placed last; thus: *n'ai-je pas eu*, (have I not had); *n'as-tu pas vu*, (hast thou not seen); *n'a-t-il pas parlé*, (has he not spoken); Ex:

<i>Ne vois-tu pas qu'il te trompe?</i>	See'st thou not (that) he deceives thee?
<i>N'avez-vous jamais entendu parler de cela?</i>	Have you never heard of that?
<i>Ne lui ai-je pas déjà répété vingt fois la même chose?</i>	Have I not already repeated the same thing twenty times over to him?
<i>Ne donne-t-il rien aux pauvres?</i>	Does he give nothing to the poor?

#### OBSERVATIONS.

1. The signs *do* and *did*, generally prefixed to the English verbs, to denote affirmation, interrogation, negation, and even emphasis are never expressed in French; as, *I love*, or *do love*, (*j'aime*); *I did love*, (*j'aimais*); *did you love her?* (*Yes, I did*); (*l'aimiez-vous? Oui, je l'aimais.*) But *do* and *did*, followed by a *noun* or *pronoun*, are real verbs, and must be rendered, in French, by *faire*, (to do). as, *do me that favour*, (*faites-moi ce plaisir*); *he will do it*, (*il le fera*); *you did not do it*, (*vous ne le fîtes pas*).

2. The signs *will* and *would*, *shall* and *should*, *can* and *could*, *may* and *might*, are also to be omitted, in French, when these are mere expletives, used to fa-

cilitate the conjugation of the English verbs; as, *I will go with you*, (*j'irai avec vous*); *he shall not do it*, (*il ne le fera pas*); *we should, could, would, or might do it*, (*nous le ferions*.)

But the same words are sometimes expressed, in French, by the verbs *vouloir*, *devoir*, or *pouvoir*; thus:

3. When *will* and *would*, denote *willingness* or *unwillingness*, *disposition*, &c. they are rendered, in French, by the verb *vouloir*, (to be willing); as, *I will not have it*, (*je n'en veux pas*); *I would not have it*, (*je n'en voulais pas*).

4. When *should* denotes *duty* or *obligation*, it is rendered by *devoir*, (to owe); as, *he should obey his father*, (*il doit obéir à son père*).

5. When *can* and *could*, *may* and *might*, denote *power*, *possibility*, or *capability*, they are rendered, in French, by *pouvoir*, (to be able); as, *I could go there if I would*, (*je pourrais y aller si je le voulais*); *he may come in*, (*il peut entrer*); *we might deceive ourselves*, (*nous pourrions nous tromper*).

### EXERCISE.

I like diligent<sup>2</sup> scholars<sup>1</sup>. He has been away the<sup>2</sup> whole<sup>1</sup>  
 (aimer) — (d. art.) *écolier*, m. pl. absent  
 day long. She does not see that I (am jesting.) You  
*journée*, f. s. \* (voir) *plaisanter*, Ind. 1.  
 do not study enough. They only think of their own business.  
 \* (étudier) (s'occuper) propre f. pl.  
 (Let us never have) dangerous<sup>2</sup> connexions.<sup>1</sup> I have nothing to  
*Ne jamais avoir*, Imper. de *liaison*, f. pl. à  
 say. Thou hast no right to complain. Have you dined?  
 (ne pas) de te plaindre  
 No, not yet. Shall I<sup>3</sup> offer<sup>2</sup> you<sup>1</sup> an orange? Has the tailor  
*pas* \* (Ind. 7.) — f. s.  
 brought my coat? Has your cousin learned the Italian<sup>2</sup> lan-  
 (Inf. 5.) *habit*, m. s. (Inf. 5. m. s.) *Italien*, f. s. lan-  
 guage<sup>1</sup>? Have I not heard (somebody) knocking at the door?  
*gue*, f. s. (Inf. 5.) *quelqu'un* (Inf. 1.) *porte*, f. s.  
 Go and see who it is. Is this you, Mr. A.? How do you  
 (Imper.) \* (Inf. 1.) ce \*  
 do (to-day)? Can one believe such<sup>2</sup> an<sup>1</sup> absurdity?  
 (portez-vous) (Pouvoir) (ajouter foi) à *absurdité*, f. s.  
 Had<sup>4</sup> she<sup>5</sup> not<sup>6</sup> warned<sup>7</sup> you<sup>2</sup> (against it)<sup>3</sup>? Had you not  
 (Ind. 3.) (Inf. 5.) en  
 told me that your brother was married? Have they not  
 (Inf. 5.) que (Ind. 3.) \*  
 mistaken in giving<sup>2</sup> you<sup>1</sup> his direction? Had you not  
 (se tromper, Ind. 2.) (Inf. 3.) *adresse*, f. s. \*  
 perceived the trick (that) they (were willing) (to  
 (s'apercevoir, Ind. 4.) de tour, m. s. on *vouloir*, Ind. 3.  
 play)<sup>2</sup> upon you<sup>1</sup>?  
 \*

---

## LESSON XXXVII.

---

### SYNTAX OF THE PARTICIPLE.

---

The *participle* is a word which partakes of the nature of the *verb* and the *adjective*: It partakes of the nature of the verb, when it expresses an action performed by the nominative, or merely the state of the nominative; as, *un homme aimant Dieu*, (a man *loving* God); *mon frère a lu les livres que vous lui aviez prêtés*, (my brother has *read* the books which you had *lent* him). Here *aimant*, *lu* and *prêtés*, are three *participles*.

The participle partakes of the nature of the adjective, when it expresses only the quality of a person, or thing; as, *un homme obligeant*, (an *obliging* man); *un enfant gâté*, (a *spoiled* child). Here *obligeant* and *gâté*, are two *participial adjectives*.

Participles are of two kinds: *present* or *past*.

The *participle present*, (or *Gerund*), ends invariably in *ant*, and is always indeclinable; as, *parlant*, (speaking); *punissant*, (punishing); *recevant*, (receiving); *vendant*, (selling).

The *participle past*, on the contrary, has several terminations; as, *aimé*, (loved); *puni*, (punished); *vendu*, (sold); *craint*, (feared); *couvert*, (covered); *dissous*, (dissolved); *mort*, (dead); &c. This participle is generally declinable, that is to say, it sometimes agrees with its nominative, and sometimes not.

#### OBSERVATIONS.

1. Among the *gerunds* or *present participles*, many are often used as *adjectives*, and, as such, must agree with their substantives in gender and number; thus: *un garçon charmant*, (a charming boy); *une fille charmante*, (a charming girl); *des enfans charmans*, (charming children); *des femmes charmantes*, (charming women).

2. When the present participle, in English, is preceded by a preposition, it must be rendered, in French, by the *present of the infinitive* of the same verb, with a preposition as in English; Ex:

*Il n'y a point de plaisir à enseigner des écoliers capricieux et inattentifs, Napoléon avait le grand talent de connaître les hommes, et celui de les choisir.*

There is no pleasure in teaching capricious and inattentive scholars. Napoleon had the great talent of knowing men, and that of choosing them.

3. The *gerund* or *present participle*, in English, must be rendered by its equivalent in French, when there is no preposition either *expressed* or *understood*; as, *des agneaux paissant, bëlant et bondissant dans les prairies*, lambs *grazing, bleating and skipping* in the meadows, &c. But, when the preposition *en* precedes the gerund, in French, it must be rendered, in English, by the gerund preceded by the preposition *by, while* or *in*; Ex:

Formez votre esprit en lisant de bons livres,	Form your mind <i>by reading</i> good books.
Il mourut en marchant,	He died <i>walking</i> , in <i>walking</i> , or <i>while walking</i> .

## OF THE PAST PARTICIPLE.

The French have, properly speaking, but one *participle*, termed, as in English, *the participle past*; as to the *gerund*, which is *invariable* in its form, most of the French Grammarians, do not look upon it as a *participle*.

The *past participle* may agree with its *nominative*, with its *complement* or *regimen*, or remain *unalterable*; and to illustrate this great difficulty of the French language, we subjoin here the *four* following concise rules.

### *The Past Participle joined to a NOUN.*

RULE 1.—When the *past participle* follows a *noun* or *pronoun*, used in the *nominative case*, and is not attended by any of the auxiliary verbs, then it becomes an *adjective*, and must agree with its substantive in *gender* and *number*; Ex:

Voilà des enfans bien entêtés,	See there some very <i>obstinate</i> children.
Vos sœurs paraissent fort affligées,	Your sisters appear very much <i>afflicted</i> .
Ils demeurèrent interdits,	They remained <i>speechless</i> .
Toutes sortirent fort mal vêtues,	All went out very badly <i>clothed</i> .
Parlez-en à des hommes instruits,	Speak about it to <i>well informed</i> men.
Adressez-vous à des femmes instruites,	Apply to <i>well educated</i> women.

### *The Past Participle joined to AVOIR.*

RULE 2.—When the *past participle* follows the auxiliary *avoir*, (to have), this participle never agrees with its *nominative*; Ex:

Mon frère a écrit,	My brother has written.
Ma sœur a écrit,	My sister has written.
Mes frères ont écrit,	My brothers have written.
Mes sœurs ont écrit,	My sisters have written.

But the *past participle* used with a *direct complement*, or *regimen*, always agrees with its complement, when this *precedes* the participle, and remains *unalterable* if the complement be placed *after*; Ex:



*Mon frère a écrit une lettre,  
Ma sœur a écrit une lettre,  
Mes frères ont écrit une lettre,  
Mes sœurs ont écrit une lettre,  
La lettre que mon frère a écrite,*

*La lettre que ma sœur a écrite,  
La lettre que mes frères ont écrite,*

*La lettres que mes sœurs ont écrite,*

My brother has written a letter.  
My sister has written a letter.  
My brothers have written a letter.  
My sisters have written a letter.  
The letter which my brother has written.  
The letter which my sister has written.  
The letter which my brothers have written.  
The letter which my sisters have written.

When the *past participle* and the auxiliary *avoir* are used *impersonally*, this participle is always *indeclinable*; Ex :

*Les grandes pluies qu'il a fait ont causé beaucoup de maladies,* The heavy rain which has fallen has been the cause of many diseases.

Here, a *fait* and *ont causé* are two impersonal verbs, which have no *nominative*, and consequently no *direct regimen*; therefore they must be *invariable*.

Again, when an *infinitive* follows a *past participle*, conjugated with *avoir*, and preceded by its *direct complement*, if the *nominative* of the sentence can be placed *after* that participle, and the infinitive rendered by the *imperfect* of the indicative of the same verb, preceded by the relative pronoun *qui*, the participle must *agree* with its complement; but it remains *invariable*, when this last construction cannot take place; Ex :

*La dame que j'ai entendue chanter,* The lady whom I have heard sing.  
*La chanson que j'ai entendu chanter,* The song which I have heard (sung).

Here, although the two words *dame* and *chanson* belong to the same gender, the participle *entendu*, agreeably to the above rule, must be *declinable* in the first sentence, and *indeclinable* in the second; for, we may very well say: *j'ai entendu la dame* qui chantait; but it would be very improper to say, *j'ai entendu la chanson* qui chantait, because it is evident that a *song* cannot *sing*.

### *The Past Participle joined to ETRE.*

RULE 3.—When the *past participle* follows the auxiliary *être*, (to be), this participle always agrees in *gender* and *number* with its *nominative*; Ex :

*Mon frère est sorti,* My brother is gone out.  
*Ma sœur est sortie,* My sister is gone out.  
*Mes frères sont sortis,* My brothers are gone out.  
*Mes sœurs sont sorties,* My sisters are gone out.

When *été\**, joined to one of the tenses of *avoir*, is followed by another *participle*, the latter still agrees with its *nominative*; Ex :

\* The past participle of the verb *être*, (to be), and that of all the *neuter verbs* which take *avoir* in their compound tenses, are always *invariable* in their form; Ex: *Les enfans ont été malades*, the children have been sick; *mes sœurs ont fort bien dormi*, my sisters have slept very well.



Mon frère a été puni,  
Ma sœur a été punie,  
Mes frères ont été punis,  
Mes sœurs ont été punies,

My brother has been punished.  
My sister has been punished.  
My brothers have been punished.  
My sisters have been punished.

### The Past Participle of the REFLECTIVE VERBS.

**RULE 4.**—The *past participle* of the *reflective* or *reciprocal* verbs, follows the rule already given for the past participle conjugated with *avoir*; that is to say, it is *declinable* when preceded by its *direct regimen* or complement; **Ex :**

*La mort que Lucrèce s'est donnée,*      The death that Lucretia gave herself.  
*Les chimères que cette femme s'est mises*      The chimeras which that woman has  
*dans la tête,*      put into her head.

But this participle is *indeclinable*, when followed by its *direct complement*; **Ex :**

*Lucrèce s'est donné la mort,*      Lucretia killed herself.  
*Cette femme s'est mis des chimères dans*      That woman has put chimeras into her  
*la tête,*      head.

Here, the learner may easily perceive that *la mort* and *les chimères* are *direct regimens*, represented in the first two sentences by the relative pronoun *que*, (meaning *laquelle, lesquelles*), which precedes the participles *donnée* and *mises*; therefore, these participles must be *declinable*. But in the last two phrases, the same participles, being followed by their *direct complements* remain *indeclinable*.

### EXERCISE.

Time is a real blunderer, placing, re-placing, ordering, dis-  
*vrai brouillon mettre remettre ranger dé-*  
 ordering, impressing, erasing, approaching, removing, and  
*ranger imprimer effacer approcher éloigner*  
 making all things good and bad; and almost always (impossible  
*rendre f. pl. presque mécon-*  
 to be known again). That woman is of a good disposition,  
*naïssable caractère*  
 obliging (every one), whenever she (has it in her power). I  
*tout le monde quand le pouvoir, Ind. 1.*  
 like a woman (to be) obliging, engaging, prepossessing, and not  
*que soit obliger, f. s. engager, f. s. prévenir, f. s. point*  
 at all backbiting. He left the house without seeing his father,  
*du médire, f. s. (Ind. 5.)*  
 and even without speaking to his mother. He died while  
*même (Ind. 5.)*  
 (eating his breakfast). They have obtained peace by making  
*déjeuner de*  
 great sacrifices. Obstinate<sup>2</sup> people<sup>1</sup> are not always  
*— m. pl. entêté, (d. art.) personne, f. pl.*  
 sensible people. I have received the letter which you  
*sensé, (c. art.) personne. (recevoir) lettre, f. s. que*  
 have<sup>2</sup> written<sup>3</sup> (to me),<sup>1</sup> and I can assure you (that) I have<sup>2</sup>  
*écrit puis (Inf. 1.)*

read<sup>3</sup> it<sup>1</sup> over, and (over again), with much attention. The  
 rain which has fallen has<sup>2</sup> prevented<sup>3</sup> me<sup>1</sup> from (going out).  
*lu \* relu*  
*pluie, f. s. qu'il fait empêché*  
 The scholars whom I heard reciting. The lines which I  
*écouter, m. pl. (Ind. 2.) réciter. (vers, m. pl.)*  
 heard<sup>2</sup> him<sup>1</sup> recite. Virtuous<sup>2</sup> men<sup>1</sup> are esteemed even by the  
*lui réciter estimé même de*  
 wicked. We have been betrayed even<sup>3</sup> by<sup>1</sup> those<sup>2</sup> to whom  
*méchamment, m. pl. trahi ceux*  
 we had been recommended. The French (covered themselves)  
*recommandé m. pl. se couvrir, Ind. 2.*  
 with glory under Napoleon. The English (have acquired  
*de m. pl. s'acquérir,*  
 to themselves) the sovereignty of the seas.  
*Ind. 2. souveraineté, f. s. mcr, pl.*

## LESSON XXXVIII.

### SYNTAX OF THE ADVERB.

(Page 43, Lesson 17.)

**RULE 1.**—The *adverb*, in French, with very few exceptions, must be placed *after* the verb in *simple* tenses, and between the *auxiliary* and the *participle* in *compound* tenses; Ex :

<i>Je reviendrai bientôt,</i>	I will soon come back.
<i>Nous comprîmes aussitôt ce qu'il voulait dire,</i>	We immediately understood what he meant.
<i>Il n'aurait jamais vu cela auparavant,</i>	He had never seen that before.
<i>L'ous aviez toujours prédit ce qui lui arriverait,</i>	You had always prophesied what would happen to him.

**REMARK.**—From the above rule, are to be excepted the six following adverbs, which must always precede the verb to which they are joined; viz: *comment, combien, quand, où, d'où, par où*; Ex :

<i>Comment appelez-vous cela ?</i>	What do you call that ?
<i>Combien vous doit-il ?</i>	How much does he owe you ?
<i>Quand partirons-nous pour la campagne ?</i>	When shall we go to the country ?
<i>Nous partirons quand vous voudrez,</i>	We will set out whenever you choose.
<i>Où vont-ils ? D'où vient-elle ?</i>	Whither are they going ? Where does she come from ?
<i>Voilà par où je suis venu,</i>	This is the way I came.

**RULE 2.**—The *adverb*, in French, is generally *prefixed* to the *adjective* or *past participle*, which it modifies; Ex :

*Ce paysage est bien varié, fort étendu,  
et infiniment agréable de tout côté ;*

*That landscape is very diversified, very  
extensive, and infinitely agreeable on  
every side.*

REMARK.—In *compound* tenses, however, it is sometimes allowable to place the adverb either *before* or *after* the *participle* ; and there are circumstances, in which *taste* or *practice* alone can point out the proper use of the adverb of *manner*. But, we may place either *before* or *after* the verb, the adverbs of *order* or *rank*, and those which express a *determinate time* ; Ex :

*Sa mère l'a prodigieusement gâté, or  
l'a gâté prodigieusement,*

*His mother has prodigiously spoiled  
him.*

*On m'invita d'abord à dîner, or d'abord  
on m'invita à dîner,*

*I was immediately invited to dine.*

*Nous devons faire, premièrement, notre  
devoir ; secondement, chercher les  
plaisirs permis,*

*We ought, first, to do our duty ; se-  
condly, seek lawful pleasures.*

*Aujourd'hui il fait beau ; il pleuvra,  
peut-être, demain,*

*To-day it is fine weather ; it will rain,  
perhaps, to-morrow.*

RULE 3.—The adverbs of *quantity*, those of *comparison*, and the three adverbs of time, *souvent*, *toujours*, *jamais*, when-ever joined to another adverb, should always be placed first ; Ex :

*Il lui parla si poliment, qu'il s'en est  
tiré fort adroitement,*

*He spoke to him so politely, that he ex-  
tricated himself very dexterously.*

*On aime souvent chez les autres ce qu'on  
ne peut souffrir chez soi,*

*We often like abroad what we cannot  
bear at home.*

*L'écrevisse ne va jamais en avant, elle  
marche toujours en arrière, ou à re-  
culons,*

*The crawfish never moves forward, it  
always walks backward.*

REMARK.—*Souvent* may, however, be preceded by an adverb of *quantity* or *comparison* ; as, *si souvent*, *assez souvent*, *fort souvent*, *plus souvent*, *moins souvent*, *trop souvent*.

## OF THE NEGATION *Ne*.

RULE 4.—The negation *ne*, (not), is invariably *prefixed* to the verb to which it is joined, and is generally accompanied by the indefinite pronouns *nul*, *aucun*, *rien*, *personne* ; by the conjunction *que*, or one of the following adverbs, *pas*, *point*, *guère*, *jamais*, *plus*, *ni*, *nullement*, *nulle part* ; Ex :

*Je n'ai nul désir de voyager,*

*I have no desire to travel.*

*Il ne parle à personne,*

*He speaks to nobody.*

*On ne voit que lui,*

*We see nobody but him.*

*Elle ne vous entend pas,*

*She does not understand you.*

*Ne serez-vous jamais satisfait ?*

*Will you never be satisfied ?*

*Je n'aime ni l'hiver ni l'été,*

*I like neither summer nor winter.*

## EXCEPTIONS.

The following are the only exceptions to the foregoing rule, in which the negation *ne*, may be used without being joined to

*pas* or *point*, which, in French, are the only words denoting a complete negation :

EXCEPTION 1.—*Pas* and *point* may be omitted, when the negation *ne* is prefixed to the verbs *oser*, (to dare), *cesser*, (to cease); and *pouvoir*, (to be able); but this omission is only for the sake of elegance; Ex :

<i>Je n'ose lui parler, or je n'ose pas lui</i>	<i>I dare not speak to him, or to her.</i>
<i>parler,</i>	
<i>Il ne cesse de travailler,</i>	<i>He does not cease working.</i>
<i>Elle ne peut faire un pas sans tomber,</i>	<i>She cannot walk a step without falling.</i>

EXCEPTION 2.—When *ni* unites two negative sentences, *ne* must be repeated before both of the verbs, at the exclusion of *pas*; Ex :

<i>Il ne mange ni ne dort,</i>	<i>He neither eats nor sleeps.</i>
<i>Je ne l'aime ni ne l'estime,</i>	<i>I neither love nor esteem him.</i>

EXCEPTION 3.—When *qui*, *dont*, *que*, *à moins que* or *si*, serve to unite two negative sentences, *ne* only must be employed in the second; Ex :

<i>Je ne connais personne qui ne lui veuille</i>	<i>I know no one who does not wish him</i>
<i>du bien,</i>	<i>well.</i>
<i>Il n'y a rien dont il ne soit capable,</i>	<i>There is nothing of which he is not capable.</i>
<i>Elle ne sort jamais, que son frère ne</i>	<i>She never goes out, that her brother</i>
<i>l'accompagne,</i>	<i>does not accompany her.</i>
<i>Il n'ira pas chez vous, à moins que vous</i>	<i>He will not go to your house, unless</i>
<i>ne l'invitez,</i>	<i>you invite him.</i>
<i>Elles n'y consentiront jamais, si on ne</i>	<i>They will never consent, unless it is</i>
<i>les en prie,</i>	<i>earnestly asked of them.</i>

EXCEPTION 4.—*Pas* and *point* are also omitted after *que*, preceded by the adverbs of comparison *plus*, *moins*, *mieux*, &c. or after the verbs *douter*, (to doubt); *désespérer*, (to despair), used negatively; and the verbs *empêcher*, (to hinder); *prendre garde*, (to take care), used affirmatively, and followed by a verb in the infinitive mood; Ex :

<i>Elle parle le Français mieux qu'elle ne</i>	<i>She speaks French better than she</i>
<i>l'écrit,</i>	<i>writes it.</i>
<i>Je ne doute nullement qu'il ne réussisse,</i>	<i>I have no doubt that he will succeed.</i>
<i>Prenez bien garde qu'il ne vous trompe,</i>	<i>Take good care that he does not deceive you.</i>

EXCEPTION 5.—When the verbs *craindre*, (to fear); *avoir peur*, (to be afraid); both followed by *que*; and such expressions, as *de crainte que*, *de peur que*, &c. are attended by another verb in the subjunctive mood, *ne* only must be prefixed to this last verb, when we do not wish the thing to happen; Ex :

*Je crains qu'il n' arrive trop tard,*  
*J'ai peur qu'elle ne soit malade,*  
*De crainte qu'il ne s'enrhume,*  
*De peur qu'elle ne se fâche,*

*I fear he will arrive too late.*  
*I am afraid that she may be sick.*  
*For fear that she take cold.*  
*For fear that she may be angry.*

But *pas* must be added, when we are desirous that the thing should happen; Ex :

*Je crains qu'il ne réussisse pas,*  
*J'ai peur qu'elle ne s'y accoutume pas,*

*I fear that he may not succeed.*  
*I am afraid that she will not get used to it.*

*De crainte qu'il ne l'accepte pas,*  
*De peur qu'elle ne chante pas,*

*For fear that he may not accept it.*  
*For fear she does not sing.*

EXCEPTION 6.—When *savoir*, (to know,) denotes *incertitude*, or is used instead of *pouvoir*, (to be able), *ne* only must be employed; Ex :

*On l'a mis je ne sais où,*  
*Je ne saurais le retrouver,*

*They have put it I do not know where.*  
*I cannot find it again.*

But *pas* must be added, when *savoir* expresses a *certitude*, or is used for its *own meaning*; Ex :

*Elle ne sait pas sa leçon,*  
*Il ne savait pas cette nouvelle,*

*She does not know her lesson.*  
*He did not know that news.*

However, *pas* is to be omitted, if *savoir* be followed by the conjunction *si*; Ex :

*Je ne sais s'il fera beau demain,*

*I do not know whether it will be fine weather to-morrow.*

### EXERCISE.

The most<sup>2</sup> learned<sup>3</sup> men<sup>1</sup> are generally those who think  
*éclairé*  
 most modestly of themselves. Ladies formerly (used to wear)  
 (le plus) *eux-mêmes* porter, Ind. 3.  
 ruffs. I have already told you I would<sup>3</sup> <sup>1</sup>not<sup>4</sup> have it.<sup>2</sup>  
*manchon, m. pl.* (vouloir) \* *en*  
 He does not know how (to set about it). Peru is the country  
 \* *ne (savoir)* *s'y prendre.* *Pérou* *pays, m. s.*  
 whence gold<sup>2</sup> (is extracted).<sup>1</sup> The style of Fenelon is very  
*l'on tire* *m. s.*  
 rich, and very harmonious, but it is sometimes prolix. To-day  
*riche* *harmonieux* *m.* *prolix*  
 he has money; he will probably<sup>2</sup> have<sup>1</sup> none<sup>3</sup> to-morrow. He  
*argent* \* *(n'en aura) plus*  
 very<sup>2</sup> politely<sup>3</sup> (took<sup>1</sup> leave) of us, and retired. We seldom  
*fort* *prendre congé* *(se retirer)* *On*  
 repent of talking little, but very often of talking<sup>2</sup> (too much).<sup>1</sup>  
*(se repentir)* *(Inf. 1.)* *peu* *(Inf. 1.)* *trop*  
 Death almost<sup>2</sup> always<sup>3</sup> comes<sup>1</sup> (at an improper hour). Use  
*mort, f. s.* *(venir)* *mal* *à propos.* *(employer)*  
 none of these stratagems; they do not become you (at all).  
*aucun* *stratagèmes, m.* \* *ne (convenir)* *nullement*



I <sup>2</sup>cannot<sup>1</sup> think<sup>4</sup> (of it)<sup>3</sup> without shuddering. She neither studies  
 (puis ne) (Inf. 1.) y frémir ne (étudier)  
 nor (applies herself) to (any thing). I shall not (go out), un-  
 ni s'appliquer, Ind. 1. rien \* sortir  
 less you come (to carry) me. He writes better than he speaks.  
 (venir) prendre mieux  
 I (will hinder) him from deceiving<sup>2</sup> you.<sup>1</sup> I fear (that) my  
 empêcher (qu'il) \* (Ind. 1.)  
 friend will die. I (am afraid) my brother will <sup>1</sup>not<sup>3</sup>  
 ami, m. s. (Subj. 1.) craindre, Ind. 1. que  
 come.<sup>2</sup> \* He does not know what he (is about). She does not  
 (Subj. 1.) \* (savoir) (obj.) fait \*  
 know French.  
 (savoir) le Français.

## LESSON XXXIX.

### SYNTAX OF THE PREPOSITION.

(Page 46, Lesson 18.)

The *preposition*, as we have already observed, is an indeclinable part of speech, which serves to unite one word with another, and to determine the relation that exists between them; as, *un papillon sur une rose*, a butterfly upon a rose.

Here, the word *sur* is a preposition, because it precedes the word *rose*, which is called its *complement* or *regimen*.

Prepositions must always precede their complements.

**RULE 1.**—When a *preposition* has but *one* syllable, as *à*, *de*, *en*, *par*, &c. this preposition is to be repeated, in French, before every substantive, used as its *complement* or *regimen*, in the same sentence; **Ex**:

J'ai écrit à mon père, à ma mère, et à mes sœurs. I wrote to my father, mother and sisters.  
 Cette dame a de l'esprit, des graces, et de la beauté. That lady has wit, grace and beauty.

**RULE 2.**—When a *preposition* has *two* or *more* syllables, as *avant*, *après*, *devant*, *derrière*, &c. this preposition must be repeated, in French, before nouns which have meanings totally different; but very seldom, before those that are *synonymous* or *nearly synonymous*; **Ex**:

Il le fera malgré vous, et en dépit de tout le monde. He will do it in spite of you, and notwithstanding every body.



Vu les infirmités de leur père, et son grand âge, les médecins n'ont nul espoir de le sauver, Considering the infirmities of their father, and his great age, the physicians have no hope to save him.

**RULE 3.**—The following *prepositions*, with very few exceptions, require the article before the nouns which they govern; viz: *avant, après, chez, dans, devant, derrière, durant, envers, excepté, hors, hormis, nonobstant, parmi, pendant, pour, selon, suivant, touchant, vers*; **Ex** :

*La mort arrive dans le moment que nous y pensons le moins; et nous passons dans un instant, de ce monde-ci dans l'autre,*

Death arrives in the moment when we think the least of it; and we pass in an instant from this world to the other.

---

#### OBSERVATIONS ON THE USE OF SOME PREPOSITIONS.

---

##### EN, DANS, (in).

1. These two prepositions differ from each other in this respect, that *en* is generally used in an *indefinite* sense, and, therefore, hardly ever followed by the article; while *dans*, on the contrary, is always followed by the article, or by any other word which may *define* the noun; **Ex** :

*Il a mis sa fille en pension, or dans une pension,*

He has sent his daughter to a boarding school.

*Je l'ai laissé en ville, or dans la ville;*

I left him in the city.

##### SUR, SOUS, DANS, HORS.

2. These four prepositions, and the following compound ones *dessus, dessous, dedans, dehors*, are not to be used indiscriminately. The latter should always be preceded by another preposition, when employed by themselves, while this is not necessary with the former; **Ex** :

*Il était assis sur la table,*

He was seated upon the table.

*Il a sauté par dessus la table,*

He leaped over the table.

*On l'a trouvé sous les décombres,*

He was found under the rubbish.

*On l'a tiré de dessous les décombres,*

He was taken from under the rubbish.

But, when construed together, as *dessus et dessous, dedans et dehors*, &c. they may be used without the help of another preposition; **Ex** :

*J'ai cherché dessus et dessous la table,*

I have looked under and over the table.

*La peste était dedans et dehors la ville,*

The plague was within and without the city.

##### AVANT, DEVANT, (before).

3. The first of these prepositions denotes *time*, the second *place*; **Ex** :

*Il est arrivé avant midi,* He arrived *before* twelve o'clock.  
*Elles étaient assises devant la porte,* They were seated *before* the door.

#### AVANT, AUPARAVANT, (before).

4. Both of these prepositions denote *time*: with this difference, however, that *avant* is followed by a regimen, while *auparavant* cannot be followed by a regimen, and is generally placed at the end of a sentence; Ex:

*Je vous reverrai avant dimanche,* I shall see you again *before* Sunday.  
*Si vous partez, venez me voir auparavant,* If you set off, come and see me *first*.

#### AU TRAVERS, À TRAVERS, (through).

5. *Au travers* and *à travers* differ in this: the first is always followed by the preposition *de*, while the second is not; Ex:

*Je vous ai vu au travers de la vitre, or à* I have seen you *through* the glass window.  
*travers la vitre,*  
*Il a reçu un coup d'épée au travers du* He has received a thrust of a sword  
*corps, or à travers le corps,* *through* his body.

#### AUTOUR, À L'ENTOUR, (around).

6. *Autour* and *à l'entour* must not be confounded: *Autour* is a preposition, and *à l'entour* an adverb; Ex:

*Tous les grands étaient autour du trône,* All the grandees stood *around* the throne.  
*Le roi était sur son trône, et les grands* The king was upon the throne, and  
*étaient à l'entour,* the grandees stood *around*.

#### AUPRÈS, PRÈS, (near).

7. *Auprès* signifies *about*, (in the same abode); *près* expresses relation of greater proximity; Ex:

*Une jeune fille doit être près de sa mère,* A young girl ought to be *near* her mother; that is, *at her side*.  
*Une jeune femme doit être auprès de* A young woman ought to be *near* her  
*son époux,* husband; that is, *in the same abode*.

#### PRÈS DE, PRÊT À.

8. The preposition *près* should be carefully distinguished from the adjective *prêt*, m. *prête*, f. with which it is not unfrequently confounded. *Près de*, signifies *upon the point of*, or *near*; *prêt à*, signifies *ready to*; Ex:

*Il était près de tomber, and not prêt à* He was *on the point of* falling.  
*tomber,*  
*Mon ouvrage est près d'être fini,* My work is *nearly* finished.  
*Je suis prêt à faire ce que vous voudrez,* I am *ready to* do what you please.

#### EXERCISE.

When I was in the country, I devoted the morning  
 (Ind. 3.) à campagne, f. s. (consacrer, Ind. 3.) matinée

to study, I walked at noon, and at three or four o'clock  
*étude, f. s. (se promener, Ind. 3.) midi heure, pl.*  
 I went a hunting or fishing. In Asia, in Europe,  
*(Ind. 3.) à (d. art.) chasse, f. s. (c. art.) pêche, f. s. Asie, f. s. — f. s.*  
 in Africa, and even in America, we find the same men, the  
*Afrique, f. s. même Amérique, f. s. (trouver)*  
 same virtues, the same vices, and the same prejudices. He  
*vertu, f. pl. — m. pl. préjugé, m. pl. Celui*  
 who writes (according to) circumstances, both for and  
*(écrire) (d. art.) circonstance, f. pl. \**  
 against a party, is a very<sup>2</sup> contemptible<sup>3</sup> man.<sup>1</sup> The American  
*parti, m. s. méprisable Américain, f. s.*  
 laws condemn<sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>nobody,<sup>3</sup> without having<sup>2</sup> previously<sup>3</sup> heard  
*f. s. (Inf. 1.) préalablement (entendre,*  
 and examined him.<sup>1</sup> A polite<sup>2</sup> man<sup>1</sup> is patient, indulgent,  
*Inf. 5.) (Inf. 5.) (d. art.)*  
 generous, and without the intoxication of self-<sup>2</sup> love<sup>1</sup>; without  
*généreux, \* ivresse propre-*  
 ridiculous<sup>2</sup> flights<sup>1</sup> of vanity; without (ill-humour.)  
*ridicule écart, m. pl. vanité humeur.*

## LESSON XL.

### SYNTAX OF THE CONJUNCTION.

(Page 47, Lesson 19.)

The *conjunction*, as we have already observed, is an *indclinable* part of speech, which serves to unite words or sentences together; without, however, adding any thing to the *meaning*, *relation* or *circumstance*.

Among the conjunctions, some require the verb that follows them in the present of the *Infinitive*, some in the *Indicative* mood, and others in the *Subjunctive*.

**RULE 1.**—A *conjunction* immediately followed by the preposition *de*, and all *prepositions* becoming *conjunctions*, (by being prefixed to a verb), require the *infinitive* after them; Ex :

*Il faut se coucher pour dormir; et il faut dormir, afin de se reposer.* We should go to bed in order to sleep; and we must sleep, in order to rest ourselves.

**RULE 2.**—When a *conjunction* unites two sentences together, should the first sentence denote *affirmation*, in a *direct*, *positive*, and *independent* manner, the verb of the second sentence must

be put in the *indicative*, should this conjunction be one of the following; viz :

*Ainsi que*, as, as well as ;  
*Aussi que*, so, as ;  
*Aussi peu que*, as little as ;  
*Aussitôt que*, as soon as ;  
*Aussi bien que*, as well as ;  
*Autant que*, as much as ;  
*Après que*, when ;  
*Attendu que*, since, because ;  
*A ce que*, by, according as ;  
*A mesure que*, as fast, or as soon as ;  
*A cause que*, because ;  
*A condition que*, on condition that ;  
*A la charge que*, on condition that ;  
*Bien attendu que*, provided ;  
*C'est pour cela que*, it is for that ;

*Dès que*, as soon as ;  
*Depuis que*, since ;  
*De manière que*, so that ;  
*De sorte que*, so that, in so much ;  
*De façon que*, so that ;  
*Lorsque*, when ;  
*Parce que*, because ;  
*Pendant que*, while ;  
*Puis que*, since ;  
*Sitôt que*, as soon as ;  
*Tardis que*, while ;  
*Tant que*, as long as ;  
*Tellement que*, so that ;  
*Tellement que*, so very that ;  
*Vu que*, seeing that, considering.

### EXAMPLES.

*Tous en prendrez aussi peu qu'il vous plaira,* You will take as little as you please.  
*J'y consens, à condition qu'il viendra,* I agree to it, on condition that he will come.

**RULE 3.**—When a conjunction unites two sentences together, should the first sentence imply *command*, *desire*, *doubt* or *ignorance*, the verb of the second sentence must be put in the *subjunctive*, should this conjunction be one of the following; viz :

*À Dieu ne plaise*, God forbid that ;  
*Afin que*, that, to the end that ;  
*À moins que*, unless ;  
*Avant que*, before ;  
*Au cas que*, in case, if ;  
*En cas que*, in case, if ;  
*À la bonne heure*, I, &c. agree ;  
*Bien que*, though, although ;  
*Encore que*, though, although ;  
*Ce n'est pas que*, it is not that ;  
*De peur que*, for fear, lest ;  
*De crainte que*, for fear ;

*Loin que*, far from ;  
*Moyennant que*, provided that ;  
*Nun que*, not that ;  
*Non pas que*, not that ;  
*Plût à Dieu !* would to God !  
*Pour que*, for that, before ;  
*Pour peu que*, if ever so little ;  
*Pourvu que*, provided ;  
*Quoique*, though ;  
*Sans que*, without ;  
*Soit que*, whether ;  
*Supposé que*, supposing that.

### EXAMPLES.

*Il est entré avant que nous fussions levés,* He came in before we were up.  
*Dépêchez-vous de peur qu'il ne vienne,* Make haste for fear he should come.

### EXERCISE.

Many persons work only (in order to) acquire  
*Beaucoup de* (travailler) (c. art.)  
 consideration and wealth. One ought (to rest) after  
 ——— f. s. (c. art.) *richesse*, pl. (Ind. 1.) *se reposer*  
 having laboured. She loves reading (as much as) you love  
 (Inf. 1.) (travailler, Inf. 5.) lecture, f. s.  
 play. Must a man be insolent, because he is rich? I  
*jeu*, m. s. (Faut-il que) (Subj. 1.) ——— riche ?

let<sup>3</sup> this house (to you),<sup>1</sup> (on condition that) you (will keep  
 (louer) maison, f. s. l'en-  
 it in repair). As soon as peace is made, I (shall set off)  
 tretenir, Ind. 7. paix, f. s. (Ind. 7.) partir, Ind. 7.  
 for England. God forbid that I<sup>1</sup> (should wish for) it.<sup>2</sup> In  
 Angleterre, f. s. avoir envie, subj. 1. en  
 case he (should come), tell him I am (gone out). He is  
 venir, subj. 1. (Imper.) que Inf. 5. Il  
 an honest man, though he be poor. She made her will,  
 \* (subj. 1.) pauvre. (Ind. 2.) testament, m. s.  
 for fear she (should die). Make haste, for fear the hour  
 peur ne mourir, subj. 3. (se dépêcher) crainte heure, h. m.  
 (be past). Would to God that men understood their own  
 ne soit passé, f. s. (entendre, subj. 3. vrai  
 interest.  
 intérêt, m. pl.

---

END OF THE GRAMMAR.

# CONTENTS OF THE GRAMMAR.

---

## ETYMOLOGY.

	<i>Page.</i>
Lesson 1. French alphabet, accents, cedilla, apostrophe and diæresis,	7
2. Pronunciation: The simple sounds of the vowels, and the nasal sounds,	10
3. Fundamental rules for reading French with correctness,	12
4. The parts of speech; gender, number, case, and the simple articles,	15
5. Compound and partitive articles,	18
6. French substantives: How their plural is formed, &c.	20
7. French adjectives: How their feminine is formed, &c.	23
8. Formation of the plural of French adjectives,	27
9. Degrees of signification of French adjectives,	28
10. Numeral adjectives,	31
11. Personal pronouns,	33
12. Possessive pronouns,	36
13. Relative pronouns,	37
14. Interrogative pronouns,	39
15. Demonstrative pronouns,	40
16. Indefinite pronouns,	41
17. Adverbs,	43
18. Prepositions,	46
19. Conjunctions,	47
20. Interjections,	49

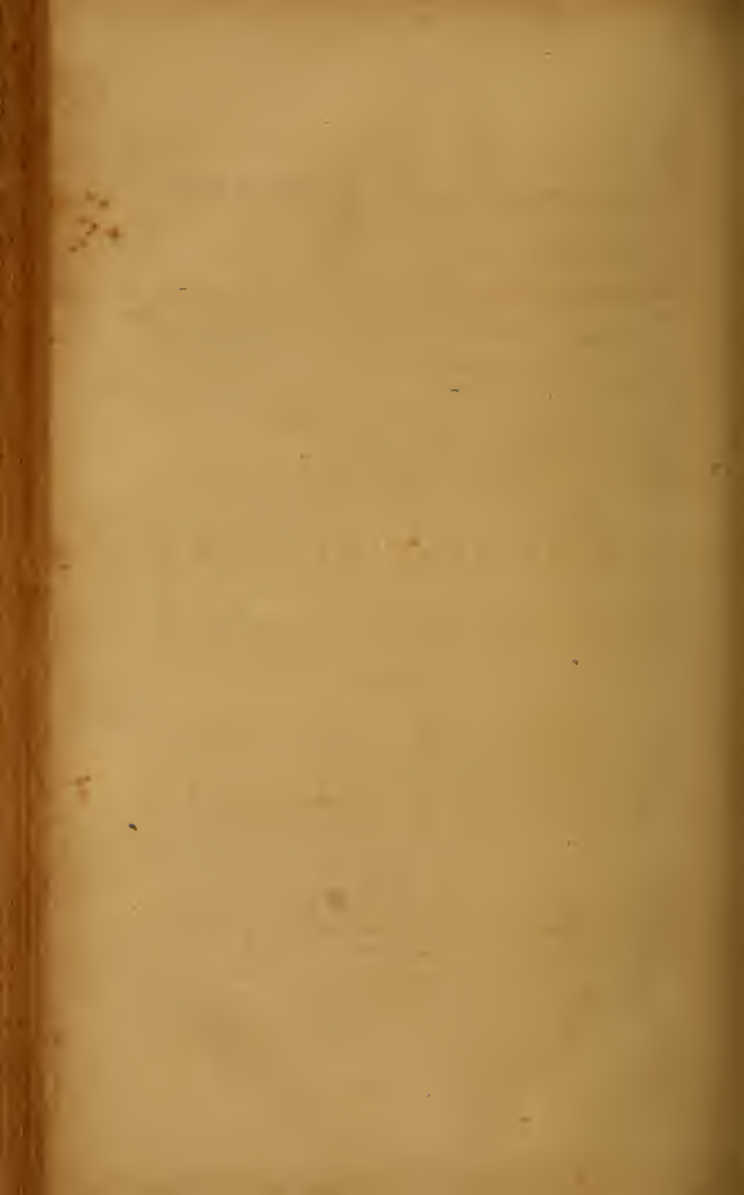
## SYNTAX.

Lesson 21. Syntax on the use of the definite article,	52
22. Syntax on the omission of the definite article,	55
23. Syntax on the use of the indefinite article,	57
24. Syntax on the use of the compound article,	60
25. Syntax on the use of the partitive article,	62
26. Syntax of the substantive,	65
27. Syntax of the adjective,	67
28. Syntax of the adjective, continued,	71
29. Syntax of the comparative and numeral adjectives,	73
30. Syntax of the personal pronouns,	78
31. Syntax of the possessive pronouns,	95
32. Syntax of the relative pronouns,	98
33. Syntax of the interrogative pronouns,	104
34. Syntax of the demonstrative pronouns,	107
35. Syntax of the indefinite pronouns,	112
36. Syntax of the verb,	118
37. Syntax of the participle,	134
38. Syntax of the adverb,	138
39. Syntax of the preposition,	142
40. Syntax of the conjunction,	145

---







---

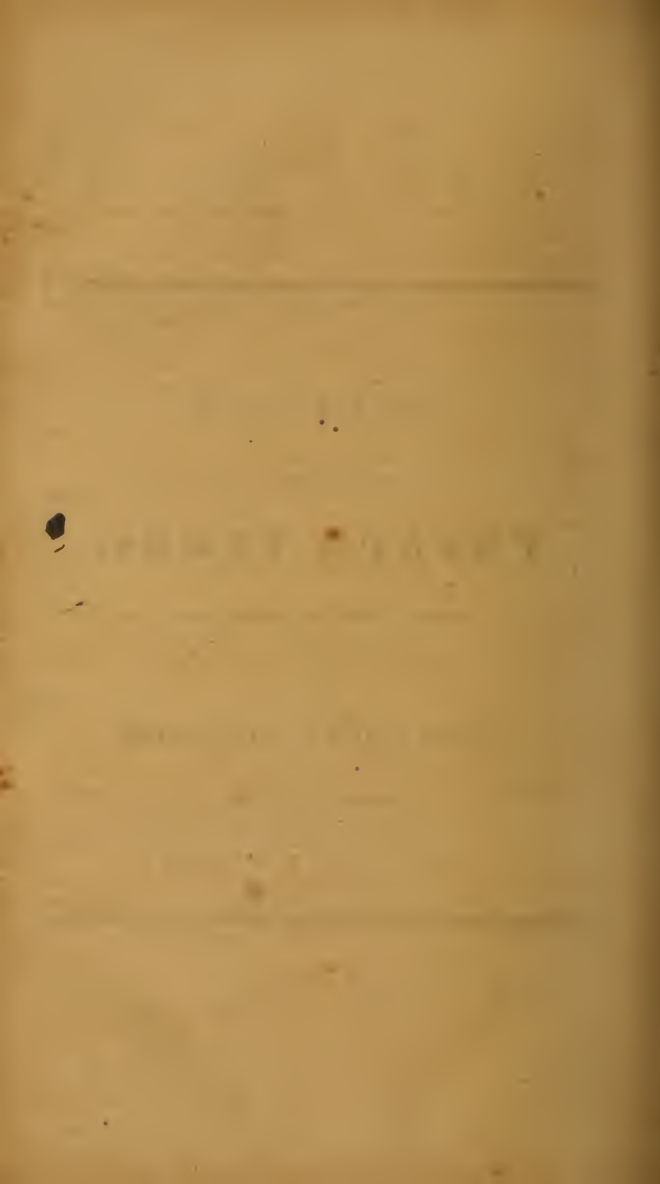
A  
COMPLETE TREATISE  
ON THE  
**FRENCH VERBS,**

REGULAR, IRREGULAR, DEFECTIVE, &c.

WITH  
**NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS,**

SELECTED FROM THE  
MOST APPROVED GRAMMARIANS.

---



## OF VERBS.

A verb is a word which generally expresses affirmation; it signifies that a person *is*, *acts*, or *suffers*; hence there are three different kinds of verbs: *active*, *passive* and *neuter*.

*A verb active*, is that which expresses an action whose object is acted upon by an agent; as, *Jean aime Marie*, John loves Mary: here *aimer*, (to love), is a verb active.

*A verb passive*, is that which expresses an action whose subject is acted upon by an agent; as, *Jean est aimé de* (or *par*) *Marie*, John is loved by Mary: *être aimé*, (to be loved), is a verb passive.

*A verb neuter*, is that which expresses neither action nor suffering, but simply *being*, or a mere state of being; as *Je meurs*, I am dying: *mourir*, (to die), is a verb neuter.

Verbs are also divided into *Auxiliary*, *Regular*, *Irregular*, *Pronominal* and *Defective*.

## OF CONJUGATIONS.

The conjugation of a verb is a regular arrangement of its *moods*, *tenses*, *persons* and *numbers*.

The French have only four conjugations, which are easily distinguished by the termination of the *Infinitive*.

The 1st ends in *er*, as *parler*, (to speak), *manger*, (to eat).

The 2d “ *ir*, as *punir*, (to punish), *bâtir*, (to build).

The 3d “ *oir*, as *recevoir*, (to receive), *devoir*, (to owe).

The 4th “ *re*, as *vendre*, (to sell), *répondre* (to answer).

## OF MOODS.

There are four moods in a verb, or four different manners of expressing affirmation, viz: *The Infinitive*, *The Indicative*, *The Imperative* and *The Subjunctive*.

## OF TENSES.

Tenses are those modifications of the verb, which distinguish time; such are, *The Present*, *The Past*, or *Preterit Definite*, and *The Future*.

Every French verb is divided into *twenty tenses*, which are again divided as follows: *five tenses* in the *Infinitive Mood*;

*ten* in the Indicative ; *one* in the Imperative, and *four* in the Subjunctive.

There are two kinds of tenses : *The Simple* and *The Compound*.

A simple tense is that which is formed from its infinitive, by changing the termination *er*, *ir*, *oir*, or *re*, into another termination ; as, *J'écris*, I write ; *J'écrivis*, I wrote ; *J'écrirai*, I will write : from *écrire*, to write.

A compound tense is that which is formed by adding the participle of the verb to one of the tenses of *avoir*, or *être* ; as, *J'ai lu*, I have read, from *lire*, to read ; *Je suis allé*, I went, from *aller*, to go.

### *Of Persons and Numbers.*

The person and number of a verb, are certain modifications, or changes in the termination, to make it agree with its nominative.

In each number, there are three persons ; and in each person, two numbers, thus :

#### *Singular.*

#### *Plural.*

- |                                      |                                     |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Je pense</i> , I think.        | 1. <i>Nous pensons</i> , We think.  |
| 2. <i>Tu penses</i> , Thou thinkest. | 2. <i>Vous pensez</i> , You think.  |
| 3. <i>Il pense</i> , He thinks.      | 3. <i>Ils pensent</i> , They think. |

### OF AUXILIARY VERBS.

The auxiliary verbs are *avoir*, to have, and *être*, to be. These are called auxiliaries, because they are used to conjugate the compound tenses of all the other verbs.

#### Conjugation of the auxiliary verb *Avoir*, to have.

##### INFINITIVE MOOD.

##### *Present Tense.*

*Avoir*, To have.

##### *Past, or Compound of the Present.*

*Avoir eu*, To have had.

##### *Gerund.*

*Ayant*, Having.



*Past, or Compound of the Gerund.**Ayant eu,*

Having had.

*Participle.**Eu, m. Eue, f.*

Had. } N. B. Participles, like adjectives,  
 } form their feminine by adding *e* mute,  
 } and their plural by adding *s*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present Tense.*

- |                                     |                                      |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>J'ai,</i>                     | I have.                              |
| 2. <i>Tu as,</i>                    | Thou hast.                           |
| 3. <i>Il a, m. elle a, f.</i>       | He has, <i>m.</i> she has, <i>f.</i> |
| 1. <i>Nous avons,</i>               | We have.                             |
| 2. <i>Vous avez,</i>                | Ye or you have.                      |
| 3. <i>Ils ont, m. elles ont, f.</i> | They have.                           |

*Preterit Indefinite, or Compound of the Present.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>J'ai eu,*</i>                       | I have had.                                  |
| 2. <i>Tu as eu,</i>                       | Thou hast had.                               |
| 3. <i>Il a eu, m. elle a eu, f.</i>       | He has had, <i>m.</i> she has had, <i>f.</i> |
| 1. <i>Nous avons eu,</i>                  | We have had.                                 |
| 2. <i>Vous avez eu,</i>                   | You have had.                                |
| 3. <i>Ils ont eu, m. elles ont eu, f.</i> | They have had.                               |

*Imperfect.*

- |                        |                           |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. <i>J'avais,</i>     | I had or did have.        |
| 2. <i>Tu avais,</i>    | Thou hadst or didst have. |
| 3. <i>Il avait,</i>    | He had or did have.       |
| 1. <i>Nous avions,</i> | We had or did have.       |
| 2. <i>Vous aviez,</i>  | You had or did have.      |
| 3. <i>Ils avaient,</i> | They had or did have.     |

*Pluperfect, or Compound of the Imperfect.*

- |                           |                 |
|---------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. <i>J'avais eu,</i>     | I had had.      |
| 2. <i>Tu avais eu,</i>    | Thou hadst had. |
| 3. <i>Il avait eu,</i>    | He had had.     |
| 1. <i>Nous avions eu,</i> | We had had.     |
| 2. <i>Vous aviez eu,</i>  | You had had.    |
| 3. <i>Ils avaient eu,</i> | They had had.   |

\* The verb *avoir* serves not only as an auxiliary to conjugate the compound tenses of the *active*, the *impersonal*, and almost all the *neuter* verbs, but also to conjugate its own compound tenses, and those of the verb *être*, to be; whilst the verb *être*, is merely used for the *passive*, the *pronominal*, and a few of the *neuter verbs*.

*Preterit Definite.*

1. <i>J'eus,</i>	I had.
2. <i>Tu eus,</i>	Thou hadst.
3. <i>Il eut,</i>	He had.
1. <i>Nous eûmes,</i>	We had.
2. <i>Vous eûtes,</i>	You had.
3. <i>Ils eurent,</i>	They had.

*Preterit Anterior, or Compound of the Preterit Definite.*

1. <i>J'eus eu,</i>	I had had.
2. <i>Tu eus eu,</i>	Thou hadst had.
3. <i>Il eut eu,</i>	He had had.
1. <i>Nous eûmes eu,</i>	We had had.
2. <i>Vous eûtes eu,</i>	You had had.
3. <i>Ils eurent eu,</i>	They had had.

*Future.*

1. <i>J'aurai,</i>	I shall have.
2. <i>Tu auras,</i>	Thou wilt have.
3. <i>Il aura,</i>	He will have.
1. <i>Nous aurons,</i>	We shall have.
2. <i>Vous aurez,</i>	You will have.
3. <i>Ils auront,</i>	They will have.

*Past, or Compound of the Future.*

1. <i>J'aurai eu,</i>	I shall have had.
2. <i>Tu auras eu,</i>	Thou wilt have had.
3. <i>Il aura eu,</i>	He will have had.
1. <i>Nous aurons eu,</i>	We shall have had.
2. <i>Vous aurez eu,</i>	You will have had.
3. <i>Ils auront eu,</i>	They will have had.

*Conditional.*

1. <i>J'aurais,</i>	I should have.
2. <i>Tu aurais,</i>	Thou wouldst have.
3. <i>Il aurait,</i>	He would have.
1. <i>Nous aurions,</i>	We should have.
2. <i>Vous auriez,</i>	You would have.
3. <i>Ils auraient,</i>	They would have.

*Past, or Compound of the Conditional.*

1. <i>J'aurais eu,</i>	I should have had.
2. <i>Tu aurais eu,</i>	Thou wouldst have had.
3. <i>Il aurait eu,</i>	He would have had.

- |                            |                      |
|----------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. <i>Nous aurions eu,</i> | We should have had.  |
| 2. <i>Vous auriez eu,</i>  | You would have had.  |
| 3. <i>Ils auraient eu,</i> | They would have had. |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

- |                         |                |
|-------------------------|----------------|
| 1. _____                | _____          |
| 2. <i>Aie,</i>          | Have thou.     |
| 3. <i>Qu'il ait,</i>    | Let him have.  |
| 1. <i>Ayons,</i>        | Let us have.   |
| 2. <i>Ayez,</i>         | Have ye.       |
| 3. <i>Qu'ils aient,</i> | Let them have. |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present Tense.*

- |                           |                       |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. <i>Que j'aie,</i>      | That I may have.      |
| 2. <i>Que tu aies,</i>    | That thou mayst have. |
| 3. <i>Qu'il ait,</i>      | That he may have.     |
| 1. <i>Que nous ayons,</i> | That we may have.     |
| 2. <i>Que vous ayez,</i>  | That you may have.    |
| 3. <i>Qu'ils aient,</i>   | That they may have.   |

*Preterit, or Compound of the Present.*

- |                              |                           |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. <i>Que j'aie eu,</i>      | That I may have had.      |
| 2. <i>Que tu aies eu,</i>    | That thou mayst have had. |
| 3. <i>Qu'il ait eu,</i>      | That he may have had.     |
| 1. <i>Que nous ayons eu,</i> | That we may have had.     |
| 2. <i>Que vous ayez eu,</i>  | That you may have had.    |
| 3. <i>Qu'ils aient eu,</i>   | That they may have had.   |

*Imperfect.*

- |                              |                         |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. <i>Que j'eusse,</i>       | That I might have.      |
| 2. <i>Que tu eusses,</i>     | That thou mightst have. |
| 3. <i>Qu'il eût,</i>         | That he might have.     |
| 1. <i>Que nous eussions,</i> | That we might have.     |
| 2. <i>Que vous eussiez,</i>  | That you might have.    |
| 3. <i>Qu'ils eussent,</i>    | That they might have.   |

*Pluperfect, or Compound of the Imperfect.*

- |                                 |                             |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. <i>Que j'eusse eu,</i>       | That I might have had.      |
| 2. <i>Que tu eusses eu,</i>     | That thou mightst have had. |
| 3. <i>Qu'il eût eu,</i>         | That he might have had.     |
| 1. <i>Que nous eussions eu,</i> | That we might have had.     |
| 2. <i>Que vous eussiez eu,</i>  | That you might have had.    |
| 3. <i>Qu'ils eussent eu,</i>    | That they might have had.   |

# Conjugation of the auxiliary verb *Être*, to be.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

### *Present Tense.*

*être*, to be.

### *Past, or Compound of the Present.*

*avoir été*, to have been.

### *Gerund.*

*étant*, being.

### *Past, or Compound of the Gerund.*

*ayant été*, having been.

### *Participle.*

*été*, m. and f. been.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

### *Present Tense.*

- |  |                      |
|--|----------------------|
| 1. <i>Je suis</i> ,                            | I am.                |
| 2. <i>Tu es</i> ,                              | Thou art.            |
| 3. <i>Il est</i> , m. <i>elle est</i> , f.     | He is, m. she is, f. |
| 1. <i>Nous sommes</i> ,                        | We are.              |
| 2. <i>Vous êtes</i> ,                          | Ye or you are.       |
| 3. <i>Ils sont</i> , m. <i>elles sont</i> , f. | They are.            |

### *Preterit Indefinite, or Compound of the Present.*

- |  |                 |
|--|-----------------|
| 1. <i>J'ai été</i> ,                                 | I have been.    |
| 2. <i>Tu as été</i> ,                                | Thou hast been. |
| 3. <i>Il a été</i> , m. <i>elle a été</i> , f.       | He has been.    |
| 1. <i>Nous avons été</i> ,                           | We have been.   |
| 2. <i>Vous avez été</i> ,                            | You have been.  |
| 3. <i>Ils ont été</i> , m. <i>elles ont été</i> , f. | They have been. |

### *Imperfect.*

- |                         |            |
|-------------------------|------------|
| 1. <i>J'étais</i> ,     | I was.     |
| 2. <i>Tu étais</i> ,    | Thou wast. |
| 3. <i>Il était</i> ,    | He was.    |
| 1. <i>Nous étions</i> , | We were.   |
| 2. <i>Vous étiez</i> ,  | You were.  |
| 3. <i>Ils étaient</i> , | They were. |

*Pluperfect, or Compound of the Imperfect.*

- |                            |                  |
|----------------------------|------------------|
| 1. <i>J'avais été,</i>     | I had been.      |
| 2. <i>Tu avais été,</i>    | Thou hadst been. |
| 3. <i>Il avait été,</i>    | He had been.     |
| 1. <i>Nous avions été,</i> | We had been.     |
| 2. <i>Vous aviez été,</i>  | You had been.    |
| 3. <i>Ils avaient été,</i> | They had been.   |

*Preterit Definite.*

- |                       |            |
|-----------------------|------------|
| 1. <i>Je fus,</i>     | I was.     |
| 2. <i>Tu fus,</i>     | Thou wast. |
| 3. <i>Il fut,</i>     | He was.    |
| 1. <i>Nous fûmes,</i> | We were.   |
| 2. <i>Vous fûtes,</i> | You were.  |
| 3. <i>Ils furent,</i> | They were. |

*Preterit Anterior, or Compound of the Preterit Definite.*

- |                           |                  |
|---------------------------|------------------|
| 1. <i>J'eus été,</i>      | I had been.      |
| 2. <i>Tu eus été,</i>     | Thou hadst been. |
| 3. <i>Il eut été,</i>     | He had been.     |
| 1. <i>Nous eûmes été,</i> | We had been.     |
| 2. <i>Vous eûtes été,</i> | You had been.    |
| 3. <i>Ils eurent été,</i> | They had been.   |

*Future.*

- |                        |               |
|------------------------|---------------|
| 1. <i>Je serai,</i>    | I shall be.   |
| 2. <i>Tu seras,</i>    | Thou wilt be. |
| 3. <i>Il sera,</i>     | He will be.   |
| 1. <i>Nous serons,</i> | We shall be.  |
| 2. <i>Vous serez,</i>  | You will be.  |
| 3. <i>Ils seront,</i>  | They will be. |

*Past, or Compound of the Future.*

- |                            |                      |
|----------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. <i>J'aurai été,</i>     | I shall have been.   |
| 2. <i>Tu auras été,</i>    | Thou wilt have been. |
| 3. <i>Il aura été,</i>     | He will have been.   |
| 1. <i>Nous aurons été,</i> | We shall have been.  |
| 2. <i>Vous aurez été,</i>  | You will have been.  |
| 3. <i>Ils auront été,</i>  | They will have been. |

*Conditional.*

- |                      |                  |
|----------------------|------------------|
| 1. <i>Je serais,</i> | I should be.     |
| 2. <i>Tu serais,</i> | Thou wouldst be. |
| 3. <i>Il serait,</i> | He would be.     |

- |                         |                |
|-------------------------|----------------|
| 1. <i>Nous serions,</i> | We should be.  |
| 2. <i>Vous seriez,</i>  | You would be.  |
| 3. <i>Ils seraient,</i> | They would be. |

*Past, or Compound of the Conditional.*

- |                             |                         |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. <i>J'aurais été,</i>     | I should have been.     |
| 2. <i>Tu aurais été,</i>    | Thou wouldst have been. |
| 3. <i>Il aurait été,</i>    | He would have been.     |
| 1. <i>Nous aurions été,</i> | We should have been.    |
| 2. <i>Vous auriez été,</i>  | You would have been.    |
| 3. <i>Ils auraient été,</i> | They would have been.   |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

- |                          |              |
|--------------------------|--------------|
| 1. _____                 | _____        |
| 2. <i>Sois,</i>          | Be thou.     |
| 3. <i>Qu'il soit,</i>    | Let him be.  |
| 1. <i>Soyons,</i>        | Let us be.   |
| 2. <i>Soyez,</i>         | Be ye.       |
| 3. <i>Qu'ils soient,</i> | Let them be. |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present Tense.*

- |                            |                     |
|----------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. <i>Que je sois,</i>     | That I may be.      |
| 2. <i>Que tu sois,</i>     | That thou mayst be. |
| 3. <i>Qu'il soit,</i>      | That he may be.     |
| 1. <i>Que nous soyons,</i> | That we may be.     |
| 2. <i>Que vous soyez,</i>  | That you may be.    |
| 3. <i>Qu'ils soient,</i>   | That they may be.   |

*Preterit, or Compound of the Present.*

- |                               |                            |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. <i>Que j'aie été,</i>      | That I may have been.      |
| 2. <i>Que tu aies été,</i>    | That thou mayst have been. |
| 3. <i>Qu'il ait été,</i>      | That he may have been.     |
| 1. <i>Que nous ayons été,</i> | That we may have been.     |
| 2. <i>Que vous ayez été,</i>  | That you may have been.    |
| 3. <i>Qu'ils aient été,</i>   | That they may have been.   |

*Imperfect.*

- |                          |                       |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. <i>Que je fusse,</i>  | That I might be.      |
| 2. <i>Que tu fusses,</i> | That thou mightst be. |
| 3. <i>Qu'il fût,</i>     | That he might be.     |



- |                              |                     |
|------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. <i>Que nous fussions,</i> | That we might be.   |
| 2. <i>Que vous fussiez,</i>  | That you might be.  |
| 3. <i>Qu'ils fussent,</i>    | That they might be. |

*Pluperfect, or Compound of the Imperfect.*

- |                                  |                              |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Que j'eusse été,</i>       | That I might have been.      |
| 2. <i>Que tu eusses été,</i>     | That thou mightst have been. |
| 3. <i>Qu'il eût été,</i>         | That he might have been.     |
| 1. <i>Que nous eussions été,</i> | That we might have been.     |
| 2. <i>Que vous eussiez été,</i>  | That you might have been.    |
| 3. <i>Qu'ils eussent été,</i>    | That they might have been.   |



A VERB CONJUGATED INTERROGATIVELY,  
EXEMPLIFIED IN *AVOIR*.

In order to conjugate a French verb *interrogatively*, we must, as in English, place the pronoun immediately after the verb, and join them by a hyphen. In compound tenses, the pronoun is always placed between the verb and the participle.

EXAMPLE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present,	<i>*Ai-je ? &amp;c.</i>	Have I ? &c.
Compound,	<i>Ai-je eu ? &amp;c.</i>	Have I had ? &c.
Imperfect,	<i>Avais-je ?</i>	Had I ?
Compound,	<i>Avais-je eu ?</i>	Had I had ?
Preterit,	<i>Eus-je ?</i>	Had I ?
Compound,	<i>Eus-je eu ?</i>	Had I had ?
Future,	<i>Aurai-je ?</i>	Shall I have ?
Compound,	<i>Aurai-je eu ?</i>	Shall I have had ?
Conditional,	<i>Aurais-je ?</i>	Should I have ?
Compound,	<i>Aurais-je eu ?</i>	Should I have had ?

\* When the first person singular of the present of the indicative ends in *e* mute, this letter is changed into acute *é*, in interrogative sentences; as, *aimé-je ?* do I love ? *donné-je ?* do I give ? *offré-je ?* do I offer ?

## A VERB CONJUGATED NEGATIVELY, EXEMPLIFIED IN *AVOIR*.

When a verb is used with one of the following negations: *ne pas* or *ne point*, not; *ne rien*, nothing; *ne personne*, nobody; *ne jamais*, never; *ne plus*, no more, or no longer; then *ne* or *n'* is placed before the verb, and *pas* or *point*, *rien*, *personne*, *jamais* or *plus* after it, or between the two verbs in compound tenses.

### EXAMPLE.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present,	{ <i>N'avoir pas</i> , or <i>ne pas avoir</i> ,	{ Not to have.
Compound,	{ <i>N'avoir pas eu</i> , or <i>ne pas avoir eu</i> ,	{ Not to have had.
Gerund,	<i>N'ayant pas</i> ,	Not having.
Compound,	<i>N'ayant pas eu</i> ,	Not having had.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present,	<i>Je n'ai pas</i> , &c.	I have not, &c.
Compound,	<i>Je n'ai pas eu</i> , &c.	I have not had, &c.
Imperfect,	<i>Je n'avais pas</i> ,	I had not.
Compound,	<i>Je n'avais pas eu</i> ,	I had not had.
Preterit,	<i>Je n'eus pas</i> ,	I had not.
Compound,	<i>Je n'eus pas eu</i> ,	I had not had.
Future,	<i>Je n'aurai pas</i> ,	I shall not have.
Compound,	<i>Je n'aurai pas eu</i> ,	I shall not have had.
Conditional,	<i>Je n'aurais pas</i> ,	I should not have.
Compound,	<i>Je n'aurais pas eu</i> ,	I should not have had.

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

—————	<i>N'aie pas</i> , &c.	Have thou not, &c.
-------	------------------------	--------------------

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present,	<i>Que je n'aie pas</i> , &c.	That I may not have, &c.
Compound,	<i>Que je n'aie pas eu</i> ,	That I may not have had.
Imperfect,	<i>Que je n'eusse pas</i> ,	That I might not have.
Compound,	<i>Que je n'eusse pas eu</i> ,	That I might not have had.

A VERB CONJUGATED INTERROGATIVELY AND NEGATIVELY,  
EXEMPLIFIED IN *AVOIR*.

In the simple tenses, *ne* or *n'* is placed before the verb, and *pas* or *point*, *rien*, &c. after it ; but in compound tenses, *pas* or *point*, *rien*, &c. are placed between the auxiliary and the participle.

EXAMPLE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present,	<i>N'ai-je pas ? &amp;c.</i>	Have I not ? &c.
Compound,	<i>N'ai-je pas eu ? &amp;c.</i>	Have I not had ? &c.
Imperfect,	<i>N'avais-je pas ?</i>	Had I not ?
Compound,	<i>N'avais-je pas eu ?</i>	Had I not had ?
Preterit,	<i>N'eus-je pas ?</i>	Had I not ?
Compound,	<i>N'eus-je pas eu ?</i>	Had I not had ?
Future,	<i>N'aurai-je pas ?</i>	Shall I not have ?
Compound,	<i>N'aurai-je pas eu ?</i>	Shall I not have had ?
Conditional,	<i>N'aurais-je pas ?</i>	Should I not have ?
Compound,	<i>N'aurais-je pas eu ?</i>	Should I not have had ?



The following are some idiomatical expressions, in which the French make use of *AVOIR*, *to have*, and the English *TO BE*, *être* ; the learner will commit them to memory, as they are frequently used in both languages, and are consequently very necessary.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Avoir faim,</i>	To be hungry.	<i>J'ai faim. &amp;c.</i>	I am hungry, &c.
<i>Avoir soif,</i>	To be thirsty.	<i>J'ai soif. &amp;c.</i>	I am thirsty, &c.
<i>Avoir chaud,</i>	To be warm, or hot.	<i>J'ai chaud,</i>	I am warm, or hot.
<i>Avoir froid,</i>	To be cold.	<i>J'ai froid,</i>	I am cold.
<i>Avoir honte,</i>	To be ashamed.	<i>J'ai honte,</i>	I am ashamed.
<i>Avoir peur,</i>	To be afraid.	<i>J'ai peur,</i>	I am afraid.
<i>Avoir raison,</i>	To be in the right.	<i>J'ai raison,</i>	I am in the right.
<i>Avoir tort.</i>	To be in the wrong.	<i>J'ai tort,</i>	I am in the wrong.
<i>Avoir besoin,</i>	To be in need.	<i>J'ai besoin,</i>	I am in need.
<i>Avoir la bonté,</i>	To be so good.	<i>J'ai la bonté,</i>	I am so good.
<i>Avoir obligation,</i>	To be obliged.	<i>J'ai obligation,</i>	I am obliged.
<i>Avoir de la prudence,</i>	To be prudent.	<i>J'ai de la prudence,</i>	I am prudent.
<i>Avoir de la reserve,</i>	To be reserved.	<i>J'ai de la reserve,</i>	I am reserved.
<i>Avoir de la reconnaissance,</i>	To be grateful.	<i>J'ai de la reconnaissance,</i>	I am grateful.

N. B. "*How old*," is expressed by "*quel âge*," as, *how old are you ? quel âge avez-vous ?*

## A TABLE OF TERMINATIONS,

*For all the French Verbs.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present, Gerund, Participle,	} either	{	<i>er, ir, oir, re.</i>
			<i>ant.</i>
			<i>é, i, u, is, it, ous, aint, ait, ert, ort.</i>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present.*

Singular.			Plural.		
1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
e	es	e	ons	ez	ent
ais	as	a			
cs	cs	c			
ds	ds	d			
s	s	t			
x	x	t			

Either

*Imperfect.*

ais	ais	ait	ions	iez	aient
-----	-----	-----	------	-----	-------

*Preterit.*

Either	ai	as	a	âmes	âtes	èrent
	is	is	it	îmes	îtes	irent
	ins	ins	int	înmes	întes	inrent
	us	us	ut	ûmes	ûtes	urent

*Future.*

rai	ras	ra	rons	rez	ront
-----	-----	----	------	-----	------

*Conditional.*

rais	rais	rait	rions	riez	raient
------	------	------	-------	------	--------

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Remark.	The 2d pers. sing. of the Impera. is like the 1st of the Indicative, omitting the personal pronoun. The 3d pers. sing. is like the 3d pers. pl. of the ind. dropping <i>nt</i> , and prefixing <i>que</i> , with the proper pronoun.			ons	ez	ent

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present.*

e	es	e	ions	iez	ent
---	----	---	------	-----	-----

*Imperfect.*

Either	asse	asses	ât	assions	assiez	assent
	isse	isses	ît	issions	issiez	issent
	insse	insses	înt	inssions	inssiez	inssent
	usse	usses	ût	ussions	ussiez	ussent

## OF REGULAR VERBS.

A regular verb is that which is conjugated, in all its tenses and persons, conformably to a general standard. Such are the four following, which the learner will adopt as models.

FIRST CONJUGATION IN *ER*.*Parler*, to speak.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present Tense.*

*Parler*, To speak.

*Compound of the Present.*

*Avoir parlé*, To have spoken.

*Gerund.*

*Parlant*, Speaking.

*Compound of the Gerund.*

*Ayant parlé*, Having spoken.

*Participle.*

*Parlé*, m. *parléé*, f. Spoken.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present.*

<i>Je parle</i> ,	I speak.
<i>Tu parles</i> ,	Thou speakest.
<i>Il parle</i> ,	He speaks.
<i>Nous parlons</i> ,	We speak.
<i>Vous parlez</i> ,	Ye or you speak.
<i>Ils parlent</i> ,	They speak.

*Compound.*

*J'ai parlé*, *tu as*, &c. I have spoken, thou hast, &c.

*Imperfect.*

<i>Je parlais</i> ,	I did speak.
<i>Tu parlais</i> ,	Thou didst speak.
<i>Il parlait</i> ,	He did speak.

<i>Nous parlions,</i>	We did speak.
<i>Vous parliez,</i>	You did speak.
<i>Ils parlaient,</i>	They did speak.

*Compound.*

*J'avais parlé, tu avais, &c.* I had spoken, thou hadst, &c.

*Preterit.*

<i>Je parlai,</i>	I spoke.
<i>Tu parlas,</i>	Thou spokest.
<i>Il parla,</i>	He spoke.
<i>Nous parlâmes,</i>	We spoke.
<i>Vous parlâtes,</i>	You spoke.
<i>Ils parlèrent,</i>	They spoke.

*Compound.*

*J'eus parlé, tu eus, &c.* I had spoken, thou hadst, &c.

*Future.*

<i>Je parlerai,</i>	I shall speak.
<i>Tu parleras,</i>	Thou wilt speak.
<i>Il parlera,</i>	He will speak.
<i>Nous parlerons,</i>	We shall speak.
<i>Vous parlerez,</i>	You will speak.
<i>Ils parleront,</i>	They will speak.

*Compound.*

*J'aurai parlé, tu auras, &c.* I shall have spoken, thou, &c.

*Conditional.*

<i>Je parlerais,</i>	I should speak.
<i>Tu parlerais,</i>	Thou wouldst speak.
<i>Il parlerait,</i>	He would speak.
<i>Nous parlerions,</i>	We should speak.
<i>Vous parleriez,</i>	You would speak.
<i>Ils parleraient,</i>	They would speak.

*Compound.*

*J'aurais parlé, tu aurais, &c.* I should have spoken, thou, &c.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Parle,</i>	Speak thou.
<i>Qu'il parle,</i>	Let him speak.



*Parlons,*  
*Parlez,*  
*Qu'ils parlent,*

Let us speak.  
 Speak ye.  
 Let them speak.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present.*

*Que je parle,*  
*Que tu parles,*  
*Qu'il parle,*  
*Que nous parlions,*  
*Que vous parliez,*  
*Qu'ils parlent,*

That I may speak.  
 That thou mayst speak.  
 That he may speak.  
 That we may speak.  
 That you may speak.  
 That they may speak.

*Compound.*

*Que j'aie parlé, que tu aies, &c.* That I may have spoken, &c.

*Imperfect.*

*Que je parlasse,*  
*Que tu parlasses,*  
*Qu'il parlât,*  
*Que nous parlussions,*  
*Que vous parlassiez,*  
*Qu'ils parlassent,*

That I might speak.  
 That thou mightst speak.  
 That he might speak.  
 That we might speak.  
 That you might speak.  
 That they might speak.

*Compound.*

*Que j'eusse parlé, que tu } That I might have spoken, &c.*  
*eusses, &c.*

SECOND CONJUGATION IN *IR*.*Punir, to punish.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present Tense.*

*Punir,*

To punish.

*Compound of the Present.*

*Avoir puni,*

To have punished.

*Gerund.*

*Punissant,* Punishing.

*Compound of the Gerund.*

*Ayant puni,* Having punished.

*Participle.*

*Puni, m. punie, f.* Punished.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present.*

<i>Je punis,</i>	I punish.
<i>Tu punis,</i>	Thou punishest.
<i>Il punit,</i>	He punishes.
<i>Nous punissons,</i>	We punish.
<i>Vous punissez,</i>	Ye or you punish.
<i>Ils punissent,</i>	They punish.

*Compound.*

*J'ai puni, tu as, &c.* I have punished, thou hast, &c.

*Imperfect.*

<i>Je punissais,</i>	I did punish.
<i>Tu punissais,</i>	Thou didst punish.
<i>Il punissait,</i>	He did punish.
<i>Nous punissions,</i>	We did punish.
<i>Vous punissiez,</i>	You did punish.
<i>Ils punissaient,</i>	They did punish.

*Compound.*

*J'avais puni, tu avais, &c.* I had punished, thou hadst, &c.

*Preterit.*

<i>Je punis,</i>	I punished.
<i>Tu punis,</i>	Thou punishedst.
<i>Il punit,</i>	He punished.
<i>Nous punîmes,</i>	We punished.
<i>Vous punîtes,</i>	You punished.
<i>Ils punirent,</i>	They punished.

*Compound.*

*J'eus puni, tu eus, &c.* I had punished, thou hadst, &c.

*Future.*

<i>Je punirai,</i>	I shall punish.
<i>Tu puniras,</i>	Thou wilt punish.
<i>Il punira,</i>	He will punish.
<i>Nous punirons,</i>	We shall punish.
<i>Vous punirez,</i>	You will punish.
<i>Ils puniront,</i>	They will punish.

*Compound.*

*J'aurai puni, tu auras, &c.* I shall have punished, thou, &c.

*Conditional.*

<i>Je punirais,</i>	I should punish.
<i>Tu punirais,</i>	Thou wouldst punish.
<i>Il punirait,</i>	He would punish.
<i>Nous punirions,</i>	We should punish.
<i>Vous puniriez,</i>	You would punish.
<i>Ils puniraient,</i>	They would punish.

*Compound.*

*J'aurais puni, tu aurais, &c.* I should have punished, thou &c.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Punis,</i>	Punish thou.
<i>Qu'il punisse,</i>	Let him punish.
<i>Punissons,</i>	Let us punish.
<i>Punissez,</i>	Punish ye.
<i>Qu'ils punissent,</i>	Let them punish.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present.*

<i>Que je punisse,</i>	That I may punish.
<i>Que tu punisses,</i>	That thou mayst punish.
<i>Qu'il punisse,</i>	That he may punish.
<i>Que nous punissions,</i>	That we may punish.
<i>Que vous punissiez,</i>	That you may punish.
<i>Qu'ils punissent,</i>	That they may punish.

*Compound.*

*Que j'aie puni, que tu aies, &c.* That I may have punished, &c.

*Imperfect.*

<i>Que je punisse,</i>	That I might punish.
<i>Que tu punisses,</i>	That thou mightst punish.
<i>Qu'il punît,</i>	That he might punish.
<i>Que nous punissions,</i>	That we might punish.
<i>Que vous punissiez,</i>	That you might punish.
<i>Qu'ils punissent,</i>	That they might punish.

*Compound.*

<i>Que j'eusse puni, que tu eusses, &amp;c.</i>	} That I might have punished, &c.
---	-----------------------------------

THIRD CONJUGATION IN *OIR*.*Recevoir*, to receive.

This conjugation contains only seven regular verbs, which are: *percevoir*,\* to collect or gather; *apercevoir*, to perceive; *concevoir*, to conceive; *décevoir*, to deceive; *devoir*, to owe; *redevoir*, to owe again; and *recevoir*, which is conjugated as follows:

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present Tense.*

<i>Recevoir,</i>	To receive.
------------------	-------------

*Compound of the Present.*

<i>Avoir reçu,</i>	To have received.
--------------------	-------------------

*Gerund.*

<i>Recevant,</i>	Receiving.
------------------	------------

*Compound of the Gerund.*

<i>Ayant reçu,</i>	Having received.
--------------------	------------------

*Participle.*

<i>Reçu, m. Reçue, f.</i>	Received.
---------------------------	-----------

\* *Percevoir* is a law term, which means, to collect or gather taxes, &c. This verb and all the others, except *devoir*, take a cedilla under the *ç* before *o* and *u*, in order to preserve the soft sound that this letter has in the Infinitive.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present.*

<i>Je reçois,</i>	I receive.
<i>Tu reçois,</i>	Thou receivest.
<i>Il reçoit,</i>	He receives.
<i>Nous recevons,</i>	We receive.
<i>Vous recevez,</i>	Ye or you receive.
<i>Ils reçoivent,</i>	They receive.

*Compound.*

<i>J'ai reçu, tu as, &amp;c.</i>	I have received, thou hast, &c.
----------------------------------	---------------------------------

*Imperfect.*

<i>Je recevais,</i>	I did receive.
<i>Tu recevais,</i>	Thou didst receive.
<i>Il recevait,</i>	He did receive.
<i>Nous recevions,</i>	We did receive.
<i>Vous receviez,</i>	You did receive.
<i>Ils recevaient,</i>	They did receive.

*Compound.*

<i>J'avais reçu, tu avais, &amp;c.</i>	I had received, thou hadst, &c.
--	---------------------------------

*Preterit.*

<i>Je reçus,</i>	I received.
<i>Tu reçus,</i>	Thou receivedst.
<i>Il reçut,</i>	He received.
<i>Nous reçûmes,</i>	We received.
<i>Vous reçûtes,</i>	You received.
<i>Ils reçurent,</i>	They received.

*Compound.*

<i>J'eus reçu, tu eus, &amp;c.</i>	I had received, thou hadst, &c.
------------------------------------	---------------------------------

*Future.*

<i>Je recevrai,</i>	I shall receive.
<i>Tu recevras,</i>	Thou wilt receive.
<i>Il recevra,</i>	He will receive.
<i>Nous recevrons,</i>	We shall receive.
<i>Vous recevrez,</i>	You will receive.
<i>Ils recevront,</i>	They will receive.

*Compound.*

*J'aurai reçu, tu auras, &c.* I shall have received, thou, &c.

*Conditional.*

<i>Je recevrais,</i>	I should receive.
<i>Tu recevrais,</i>	Thou wouldst receive.
<i>Il recevrait,</i>	He would receive.
<i>Nous recevriions,</i>	We should receive.
<i>Vous recevriez,</i>	You would receive.
<i>Ils recevraient,</i>	They would receive.

*Compound.*

*J'aurais reçu, tu arais, &c.* I should have received, &c.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Reçois,</i>	Receive thou.
<i>Qu'il reçoive,</i>	Let him receive.
<i>Recevons,</i>	Let us receive.
<i>Recevez,</i>	Receive ye.
<i>Qu'ils reçoivent,</i>	Let them receive.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present.*

<i>Que je reçoive,</i>	That I may receive.
<i>Que tu reçoives,</i>	That thou mayst receive.
<i>Qu'il reçoive,</i>	That he may receive.
<i>Que nous recevions,</i>	That we may receive.
<i>Que vous receviez,</i>	That you may receive.
<i>Qu'ils reçoivent,</i>	That they may receive.

*Compound.*

*Que j'aie reçu, que tu aies, &c.* That I may have received, &c.

*Imperfect.*

<i>Que je reçusse,</i>	That I might receive.
<i>Que tu reçusses,</i>	That thou mightst receive.
<i>Qu'il reçût,</i>	That he might receive.
<i>Que nous reçussions,</i>	That we might receive.
<i>Que vous reçussiez,</i>	That you might receive.
<i>Qu'ils reçussent,</i>	That they might receive.

*Compound.*

<i>Que j'eusse reçu, que tu eusses, &amp;c.</i>	} That I might have received, &c.
---	-----------------------------------



FOURTH CONJUGATION IN *RE*.*Vendre*, to sell.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present Tense.**Vendre*, To sell.*Compound.**Avoir vendu*, To have sold.*Gerund.**Vendant*, Selling.*Compound.**Ayant vendu*, Having sold.*Participle.**Vendu*, m. *vendue*, f. Sold.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present.*

<i>Je vends</i> ,	I sell.
<i>Tu vends</i> ,	Thou sellest.
<i>Il vend</i> ,	He sells.
<i>Nous vendons</i> ,	We sell.
<i>Vous vendez</i> ,	Ye or you sell.
<i>Ils vendent</i> ,	They sell.

*Compound.**J'ai vendu*, *tu as*, &c. I have sold, thou hast, &c.*Imperfect.*

<i>Je vendais</i> ,	I did sell.
<i>Tu vendais</i> ,	Thou didst sell.
<i>Il vendait</i> ,	He did sell.
<i>Nous vendions</i> ,	We did sell.
<i>Vous vendiez</i> ,	You did sell.
<i>Ils vendaient</i> ,	They did sell.

*Compound.**J'avais vendu*, *tu avais*, &c. I had sold, thou hadst, &c.

*Preterit.*

<i>Je vendis,</i>	I sold.
<i>Tu vendis,</i>	Thou soldest.
<i>Il vendit,</i>	He sold.
<i>Nous vendîmes,</i>	We sold.
<i>Vous vendîtes,</i>	You sold.
<i>Ils vendirent,</i>	They sold.

*Compound.*

<i>J'eus vendu, tu eus, &amp;c.</i>	I had sold, thou hadst, &c.
-------------------------------------	-----------------------------

*Future.*

<i>Je vendrai,</i>	I shall sell.
<i>Tu vendras,</i>	Thou wilt sell.
<i>Il vendra,</i>	He will sell.
<i>Nous vendrons,</i>	We shall sell.
<i>Vous vendrez,</i>	You will sell.
<i>Ils vendront,</i>	They will sell.

*Compound.*

<i>J'aurai vendu, tu auras, &amp;c.</i>	I shall have sold, thou &c.
---	-----------------------------

*Conditional.*

<i>Je vendrais,</i>	I should sell.
<i>Tu vendrais,</i>	Thou wouldst sell.
<i>Il vendrait,</i>	He would sell.
<i>Nous vendrions,</i>	We should sell.
<i>Vous vendriez,</i>	You would sell.
<i>Ils vendraient,</i>	They would sell.

*Compound.*

<i>J'aurais vendu, tu aurais &amp;c.</i>	I should have sold, thou &c.
--	------------------------------

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Vends,</i>	Sell thou.
<i>Qu'il vende,</i>	Let him sell.
<i>Vendons,</i>	Let us sell.
<i>Vendez,</i>	Sell ye.
<i>Qu'ils vendent,</i>	Let them sell.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present.*

<i>Que je vende,</i>	That I may sell.
<i>Que tu vendes,</i>	That thou mayst sell.
<i>Qu'il vende,</i>	That he may sell.
<i>Que nous vendions,</i>	That we may sell.
<i>Que vous vendiez,</i>	That you may sell.
<i>Qu'ils vendent,</i>	That they may sell.

*Compound.*

<i>Que j'aie vendu, que tu aies, &amp;c.</i>	} That I may have sold, &c.
--	-----------------------------

*Imperfect.*

<i>Que je vendisse,</i>	That I might sell.
<i>Que tu vendisses,</i>	That thou mightst sell.
<i>Qu'il vendît,</i>	That he might sell.
<i>Que nous vendissions,</i>	That we might sell.
<i>Que vous vendissiez,</i>	That you might sell.
<i>Qu'ils vendissent,</i>	That they might sell.

*Compound.*

<i>Que j'eusse vendu, que tu eusses, &amp;c.</i>	} That I might have sold, &c.
--	-------------------------------



## OBSERVATIONS

## UPON SOME OF THE REGULAR VERBS.

Verbs ending in *ger*, such as *manger, nager, juger*, &c. preserve the *e* before *a* and *o*; as, *mangeant, nageai, jugeons*.

Verbs ending in *cer*, such as *placer, forcer, effacer*, &c. take a *cedilla* under the *ç*, when followed by *a* or *o*; as, *plaçant, forçai, effaçons*.

In the following verbs, and their derivatives, the *t* and *l* are doubled, when those consonants are prefixed to a mute *e*; such are: *appeler, j'appelle; jeter, je jette*; and a few others.

*Envoyer*, to send, and *renvoyer*, to send back.

The Future and Conditional tenses of these two verbs, are *j'enverrai* and *j'enverrais, je renverrai* and *je renverrais*, instead of *j'envoierai, je renvoierai*, &c.

*Bénir*, to bless.

This verb has two participles: *bénit*, *ite*, and *béni*, *ie*; the first is applied to *things* only, and the second to *persons*: as, *pain bénit*, hallowed bread; *eau bénite*, holy water; *homme béni*, a blessed man; *femme bénie*, a blessed woman.

*Fleurir*, to blossom, to flourish.

When this verb signifies *to blossom*, it is regular, and conjugated like *punir*; but, should it mean *to flourish*, *to be in a prosperous state*, it is irregular, and makes in the gerund *florissant*, and in the imperf. of the ind. singular *florissait*, plural *florissaient*.

*Hair*, to hate.

The letters *ai* form, throughout the tenses, two syllables, except in the three persons singular of the present of the indicative, *je hais*, *tu hais*, *il hait*, and the second of the imperative *hais*, which are pronounced *je hay*, *tu hay*, &c.



## OF PASSIVE VERBS.

There is but one mode of conjugating passive verbs; it is by adding to the verb *être*, to be, through all its *moods*, *tenses*, *numbers* and *persons*, the participle of an active verb, observing to make it agree in gender and number with the nominative, thus: *Il est aimé*, m. s.; *elle est aimée*, f. s.; *ils sont aimés*, m. pl.; *elles sont aimées*, f. pl.

## CONJUGATION OF THE PASSIVE VERB,

*Etre aimé*, to be loved.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present,	<i>Etre aimé,</i>	To be loved.
Compound,	<i>Avoir été aimé,</i>	To have been loved
Gerund,	<i>Étant aimé,</i>	Being loved.
Compound,	<i>Avant été aimé,</i>	Having been loved
Participle,	<i>Été aimé,</i>	Been loved.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present,	<i>Je suis aimé, &amp;c.</i>	I am loved, &c.
Compound,	<i>J'ai été aimé, &amp;c.</i>	I have been loved, &c.
Imperfect,	<i>J'étais aimé,</i>	I was loved.
Compound,	<i>J'avais été aimé,</i>	I had been loved.
Preterit,	<i>Je fus aimé,</i>	I was loved.
Compound,	<i>J'eus été aimé,</i>	I had been loved.
Future,	<i>Je serai aimé,</i>	I shall be loved.
Compound,	<i>J'aurai été aimé,</i>	I shall have been loved.
Conditional,	<i>Je serais aimé,</i>	I should be loved.
Compound,	<i>J'aurais été aimé,</i>	I should have been loved.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Sois aimé,*

Be thou loved.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present,  
Compound,  
Imperfect,  
Compound,

*Que je sois aimé,*  
*Q. j'aie été aimé,*  
*Que je fusse aimé,*  
*Q. j'eusse été aimé,*

That I may be loved.  
That I may have been loved.  
That I might be loved.  
That I might have been loved.



## OF NEUTER VERBS.

The French language contains about six hundred neuter verbs, which are conjugated with the auxiliary *avoir* in their compound tenses. The following, which take *être*, are the only exceptions to that rule:

* <i>Aborder,</i>	To land.	* <i>Passer,</i>	To pass away.
<i>Arriver,</i>	To arrive.	* <i>Périr,</i>	To perish.
<i>Décéder,</i>	To die.	* <i>Redescendre,</i>	To go down again.
* <i>Demeurer,</i>	To stay.	* <i>Remonter,</i>	To go up again.
* <i>Descendre,</i>	To go down.	* <i>Rentrer,</i>	To come in again.
* <i>Echapper,</i>	To escape.	<i>Rester,</i>	To remain.
* <i>Entrer,</i>	To come in.	<i>Retomber,</i>	To fall again.
* <i>Expirer,</i>	To expire.	<i>Retourner,</i>	To return.
* <i>Monter,</i>	To go up.	<i>Tomber,</i>	To fall.

\* The verbs marked with an *asterisk* take both *avoir* and *être* in their compound tenses; but then the sense is entirely different.

REMARK. The learner will find among the irregular verbs, all the other *neuter verbs*, which take *être* in their compound tenses.



## OF PRONOMINAL VERBS.

A pronominal verb is that which takes *se*, one's self, before its infinitive, and in which each person is conjugated throughout the tenses, with a double personal pronoun; as, *se blesser*, to wound one's self; *se louer*, to praise one's self; *se repentir*, to repent.

Pronominal verbs are generally *reflected*, or *reciprocal*. They are most commonly reflected in the singular, because the action then returns upon the agent that produces it; but they are reciprocal in the plural only, on account of a reciprocity of action, which takes place between two or more subjects.

All the pronominal verbs, without exception, take the auxiliary *être*, to be, in their compound tenses, and, as in the passive verbs, the participle agrees in gender and number with its nominative: *Ex. il s'est blessé*, m. s. *elle s'est blessée*, f. s. *ils se sont blessés*, m. pl. *elles se sont blessées*, f. pl.

## CONJUGATION OF THE PRONOMINAL VERB,

*Se blesser*, to wound one's self.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

#### *Present.*

*Se blesser*, To wound one's self.

#### *Compound of the Present.*

*S'être blessé*, To have wounded one's self.

#### *Gerund.*

*Se blessant*, Wounding one's self.

#### *Compound of the Gerund.*

*S'étant blessé*, Having wounded one's self.

#### *Participle.*

*Blessé*, Wounded.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### *Present.*

<i>Je me blesse</i> ,	I wound myself.
<i>Tu te blesses</i> ,	Thou woundest thyself.
<i>Il se blesse</i> ,	He wounds himself.
<i>Nous nous blessons</i> ,	We wound ourselves.
<i>Vous vous blesses</i> ,	You wound yourselves.
<i>Ils se blessent</i> ,	They wound themselves.

#### *Compound.*

<i>Je me suis blessé</i> ,	I have wounded myself.
<i>Tu t'es blessé</i> ,	Thou hast wounded thyself.
<i>Il s'est blessé</i> ,	He has wounded himself.
<i>Nous nous sommes blessés</i> ,*	We have wounded ourselves.
<i>Vous vous êtes blessés</i> ,	You have wounded yourselves.
<i>Ils se sont blessés</i> ,	They have wounded themselves.

\* An *s* must be added to the participle, throughout the verb, in the three persons plural of the compound tenses.



*Imperfect.*

<i>Je me blessais,</i>	I did wound myself.
<i>Tu te blessais,</i>	Thou didst wound thyself.
<i>Il se blessait,</i>	He did wound himself.
<i>Nous nous blessions,</i>	We did wound ourselves.
<i>Vous vous blessiez,</i>	You did wound yourselves.
<i>Ils se blessaient,</i>	They did wound themselves.

*Compound.*

*Je m'étais blessé, tu t'étais &c.* I had wounded myself, &c.

*Preterit.*

<i>Je me blessai,</i>	I wounded myself.
<i>Tu te blessas,</i>	Thou woundest thyself.
<i>Il se blessa,</i>	He wounded himself.
<i>Nous nous blessâmes,</i>	We wounded ourselves.
<i>Vous vous blessâtes,</i>	You wounded yourselves.
<i>Ils se blessèrent,</i>	They wounded themselves.

*Compound.*

*Je me fus blessé, tu te fus, &c.* I had wounded myself, &c.

*Future.*

<i>Je me blesserai,</i>	I shall wound myself.
<i>Tu te blesseras,</i>	Thou wilt wound thyself.
<i>Il se blessera,</i>	He will wound himself.
<i>Nous nous blesserons,</i>	We shall wound ourselves.
<i>Vous vous blesseriez,</i>	You will wound yourselves.
<i>Ils se blesseront,</i>	They will wound themselves.

*Compound.*

<i>Je me serai blessé, tu te seras, &amp;c.</i>	I shall have wounded myself, &c.
---	-------------------------------------

*Conditional.*

<i>Je me blesserais,</i>	I should wound myself.
<i>Tu te blesserais,</i>	Thou wouldst wound thyself.
<i>Il se blesserait,</i>	He would wound himself.
<i>Nous nous blesserions,</i>	We should wound ourselves.
<i>Vous vous blesseriez,</i>	You would wound yourselves.
<i>Ils se blesseraient,</i>	They would wound themselves.

*Compound.*

<i>Je me serais blessé, tu te serais, &amp;c.</i>	I should have wounded myself, &c.
---	--------------------------------------

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Blesse-toi,  
Qu'il se blesse,  
Blessons-nous,  
Blessez-vous,  
Qu'ils se blessent,*

Wound thyself.  
Let him wound himself.  
Let us wound ourselves.  
Wound yourselves.  
Let them wound themselves.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present.*

*Que je me blesse,  
Que tu te blesses,  
Qu'il se blesse,  
Que nous nous blessions,  
Que vous vous blessiez,  
Qu'ils se blessent,*

That I may wound myself.  
That thou mayst wound thyself.  
That he may wound himself.  
That we may wound ourselves.  
That you may wound yourselves.  
That they may wound themselves.

*Compound.*

*Que je me sois blessé, q. tu  
te sois, &c.*

That I may have wounded myself, &c.

*Imperfect.*

*Que je me blessasse,  
Que tu te blessasses,  
Qu'il se blessât,  
Que nous nous blessassions,  
Que vous vous blessassiez,  
Qu'ils se blessassent,*

That I might wound myself.  
That thou mightst wound thyself.  
That he might wound himself.  
That we might wound ourselves.  
That you might wound yourselves.  
That they might wound themselves.

*Compound.*

*Que je me fusse blessé, q.  
tu te fusses, &c.*

That I might have wounded myself, &c.

# A LIST OF VERBS, WHICH ARE PRONOMINAL IN FRENCH ONLY.

<i>S'abonner,</i>	To compound.	<i>S'évertuer,</i>	To strive.
<i>S'abstenir,</i>	To abstain.	<i>Se fâcher,</i>	To get angry.
<i>S'accorder,</i>	To agree.	<i>Se fuire,</i>	To get used.
<i>*S'asseoir,</i>	To sit down.	<i>Se farder,</i>	To paint.
<i>S'attacher,</i>	To stick to.	<i>Se fier,</i>	To trust.
<i>Se baigner,</i>	To bathe.	<i>Se figurer,</i>	To fancy.
<i>Se baisser,</i>	To stoop.	<i>Se flétrir,</i>	To fade away.
<i>Se cantonner,</i>	To canton.	<i>Se fondre,</i>	To melt.
<i>Se coucher,</i>	To go to bed.	<i>Se formaliser,</i>	To find fault.
<i>Se débattre,</i>	To struggle.	<i>Se glisser,</i>	To creep in.
<i>Se déborder,</i>	To flow over.	<i>Se hâter,</i>	To make haste.
<i>Se dédire,</i>	To retract.	<i>S'imaginer,</i>	To fancy.
<i>Se défier,</i>	To distrust.	<i>S'ingérer,</i>	To intermeddle.
<i>Se dépêcher,</i>	To make haste.	<i>S'insinuer,</i>	To steal in.
<i>Se démettre,</i>	To resign.	<i>Se lever,</i>	To rise.
<i>Se désister,</i>	To give over.	<i>Se liquéfier,</i>	To liquefy.
<i>S'élançer,</i>	To leap upon.	<i>Se marier,</i>	To get married.
<i>S'emparer,</i>	To seize upon.	<i>Se méfier,</i>	To distrust.
<i>S'emporter,</i>	To get in a passion.	<i>Se méprendre,</i>	To mistake.
<i>S'empreser,</i>	To be eager.	<i>Se moquer,</i>	To laugh at.
<i>*S'en aller,</i>	To go away.	<i>Se mutiner,</i>	To mutiny.
<i>S'endormir,</i>	To fall asleep.	<i>Se piquer,</i>	To pretend to.
<i>S'enfuir,</i>	To run away.	<i>Se plaindre,</i>	To complain.
<i>S'enhardir,</i>	To grow bold.	<i>Se promener,</i>	To walk.
<i>S'enraciner,</i>	To take root.	<i>Se rappeler,</i>	To recollect.
<i>S'enrhumer,</i>	To catch cold.	<i>Se réjouir,</i>	To rejoice.
<i>S'enrichir,</i>	To grow rich.	<i>Se repentir,</i>	To repent.
<i>S'entretenir,</i>	To discourse with.	<i>Se reposer,</i>	To rest.
<i>S'envoler,</i>	To fly away.	<i>Se ressouvenir,</i>	To recollect.
<i>S'épanouir,</i>	To blow, to bloom.	<i>Se révolter,</i>	To rebel.
<i>S'esquiver,</i>	To steal away.	<i>Se saisir,</i>	To seize upon.
<i>S'étonner,</i>	To wonder.	<i>Se soumettre,</i>	To submit.
<i>S'évanouir,</i>	To faint away.	<i>Se souvenir,</i>	To remember.
<i>S'évaporer,</i>	To evaporate.	<i>Se vanter,</i>	To boast.

\* The pronominal verbs *s'asseoir*, to sit down, and *s'en aller*, to go away, are the only two of this kind that may prove difficult to beginners: the learner should therefore write them once or twice, and submit them to the correction of his teacher.

## OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

Irregular verbs are those which deviate from the general rules of conjugation, given from page 17 to page 27. The French language contains *fifty different irregular verbs*,\* which serve as so many models for the conjugation of all the others, viz:

### FIRST CONJUGATION.

Infinitive.  
Gerund.  
Participle.

To go.  
Going.  
Gone.

This verb, and its derivative *s'en aller*, to go away, are irregular in all the persons, or tenses distinguished by *Italics*, and take the auxiliary *être*, to be, to form their compound tenses.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

1.

2.

3.

1.

2.

3.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present*, je *vais*,  
*Imperfect*, j'*allais*,  
*Preterit*, j'*allai*,  
*Future*, j'*irai*,  
*Conditional*, j'*irais*,

tu *vas*,  
tu *allais*,  
tu *allas*,  
tu *iras*,  
tu *irais*,

il *va*,  
il *allait*,  
il *alla*,  
il *ira*,  
il *irait*,  
nous *allons*,  
nous *allions*,  
nous *allâmes*,  
nous *irons*,  
nous *irions*,

ils *vont*.  
ils *allaient*.  
ils *allèrent*.  
ils *iront*.  
ils *iraient*.

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*va*, †

qu'il *aille*;

qu'ils *ailent*.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present*, que j'*aille*,  
*Imperfect*, que j'*allass*,

q tu *ailles*,  
q tu *allasses*,  
q tu *ailles*,  
q tu *allasses*,  
q tu *ailles*,  
q tu *allasses*,

q v. *alliez*,  
q v. *allassiez*,  
q v. *alliez*,  
q v. *allassiez*,

qu'ils *ailent*.  
qu'ils *allassent*.

\* Without including the auxiliaries *avoir* and *être*, which are also irregular.

† The equivalent of each person in English, having been already placed throughout the preceding conjugations, we thought it would be sufficient to give, in the irregular verbs, the meaning of the *Infinitive*. *Gerund* and *Participle* only.

‡ *Va* takes an *s* when followed by *y*, or by *en*: as, *vas-y*, go thither; *vas en savoir des nouvelles*, go to hear some tidings of it: however, it takes no *s* when the *y* is followed by a verb; as, *va y donner ordre*, go and order that affair.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

Infinitive.	Acquérir,	To acquire.
Gerund.	<i>Acquérant,</i>	Acquiring.
Participle.	<i>Acquis, ise,</i>	Acquired.

This verb, as well as *conquérir*, to conquer, *requérir*, to require, and *s'enquérir*, to inquire, is irregular in all the persons or tenses marked with *Italics*;\* each takes *avoir* in its compound tenses, except *s'enquérir*, which is a pronominal verb, and, as such, takes the auxiliary *être*.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
	INDICATIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present,</i>	j'acquiers,	tu acquiers,	il acquiert,	nous acquérons,	vous acquérez,	ils acquièrent.
<i>Imperfect,</i>	j'acquérais,	tu acquérais,	il acquérait,	nous acquérions,	vous acquériez,	ils acquéraient.
<i>Preterit,</i>	j'acquis,	tu acquis,	il acquit,	nous acquîmes,	vous acquîtes,	ils acquirent.
<i>Future,</i>	j'acquerrai,	tu acquerras,	il acquerra;	nous acquerrons,	vous acquerez,	ils acquerront.
<i>Conditional,</i>	j'acquerrais,	tu acquerrais,	il acquerrait;	nous acquerrions,	vous acqueriez,	ils acquerraient.
	IMPERATIVE MOOD.					
	—	acquiers,	qu'il acquière;	acquérons,	acquérez,	qu'ils acquièrent.
	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present,</i>	que j'acquière,	q. tu acquières,	qu'il acquière;	q. n. acquérions,	q. v. acquériez,	qu'ils acquièrent.
<i>Imperfect,</i>	que j'acquisse,	q. tu acquisses,	qu'il acquît;	q. n. acquissions,	q. v. acquissiez,	qu'ils acquissent.

\* The learner will recollect, without any farther repetition being necessary, that the *Italic* characters show the irregularity, not only in the two preceding, but also in all the following verbs.

Infinitive.	Assaillir,	To assault.
Gerund.	<i>Assaillant,</i>	Assaulting.
Participle.	Assailli, ie,	Assaulted.

This verb, as well as *tressaillir*,\* to start, takes *avoir* in its compound tenses.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
1	2	3	1	2	3
INDICATIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present,</i>	j'assaille,	tu assailles,	nous assaillons,	vous assailliez,	ils assaillent.
<i>Imperfect,</i>	j'assaillais,	tu assaillais,	nous assaillions,	vous assailliez,	ils assaillaient.
<i>Preterit,</i>	j'assaillis,	tu assaillis,	nous assaillîmes,	vous assaillîtes,	ils assaillirent.
<i>Future,</i>	j'assaillirai,	tu assailliras,	nous assaillirons,	vous assaillirez,	ils assailliront.
<i>Conditional,</i>	j'assaillirais,	tu assaillirais,	nous assaillirions,	vous assailliriez,	ils assailliraient.
IMPERATIVE MOOD.					
—	assaille,	qu'il assaille;	assaillons,	assailliez,	qu'ils assaillent.
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present,</i>	que j'assaille,	q. tu assailles,	qu'il assaille;	q. v. assailliez,	qu'ils assaillent.
<i>Imperfect,</i>	que j'assaillisse,	q. tu assaillisses,	qu'il assaillit;	q. v. assaillissiez,	qu'ils assaillissent.

\* *Tressaillir* has no Imperative



Infinitive.      Bouillir,      To boil.  
 Gerund.        *Bouillant*,      Boiling.  
 Participle.    Bouilli, ie,      Boiled.

This verb, and its derivative *rebouillir*, to boil away, take *avoir* in their compound tenses.

				Singular.			Plural.		
				1	2	3	1	2	3
INDICATIVE MOOD.									
<i>Present</i> ,	je <i>bous</i> ,	tu <i>bous</i> ,					nous <i>bouillons</i> ,	vous <i>bouillez</i> ,	ils <i>bouillent</i> .
<i>Imperfect</i> ,	je <i>bouillais</i> ,	tu <i>bouillais</i> ,					nous <i>bouillions</i> ,	vous <i>bouilliez</i> ,	ils <i>bouillaient</i> .
<i>Preterit</i> ,	je bouillis,	tu bouillis,					nous bouillîmes,	vous bouillîtes,	ils bouillirent.
<i>Future</i> ,	je bouillirai,	tu bouilliras,					nous bouillirons,	vous bouillirez,	ils bouilliront.
<i>Conditional</i> ,	je bouillirais,	tu bouillirais,					nous bouillirions,	vous bouilliriez,	ils bouilliraient.
IMPERATIVE MOOD.									
		<i>bous</i> ,					<i>bouillons</i> ,	<i>bouillez</i> ,	qu'ils <i>bouillent</i> .
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.									
<i>Present</i> ,	que je <i>bouille</i> ,	q. tu bouilles,					q. n. <i>bouillions</i> ,	q. v. <i>bouilliez</i> ,	qu'ils <i>bouillent</i> .
<i>Imperfect</i> ,	que je bouillisse,	q. tu bouillisses,					q. n. bouillissiez,	q. v. bouillissiez,	qu'ils bouillissent.

N. B. *Bouillir* and *rebouillir* are very seldom used without being joined to the verb *faire*, in order to render them active; but *faire bouillir* and *faire rebouillir* are used in all their persons and tenses.

Infinitive.      Courir,      To run.  
Gerund.          Courant,      Running.  
Participle.      Couru, ue,      Run.

This verb, and its derivatives *accourir*, *concourir*, *discourir*, &c. take *avoir* in their compound tenses.

Singular.			Plural.		
1	2	3	1	2	3
INDICATIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present</i> , <i>Imperfect</i> , <i>Preterit</i> , <i>Future</i> , <i>Conditional</i> , je <i>cours</i> , je <i>courais</i> , je <i>courus</i> , je <i>courrai</i> , je <i>courrais</i> ,	tu <i>cours</i> , tu <i>courais</i> , tu <i>courus</i> , tu <i>courras</i> , tu <i>courrais</i> ,	il <i>court</i> , il <i>courait</i> , il <i>courut</i> , il <i>courra</i> , il <i>courrait</i> ,	nous <i>courons</i> , nous <i>courions</i> , nous <i>courûmes</i> , nous <i>courrons</i> , nous <i>courrions</i> ,	vous <i>courez</i> , vous <i>couriez</i> , vous <i>courûtes</i> , vous <i>courez</i> , vous <i>courriez</i> ,	ils <i>courent</i> . ils <i>couraient</i> . ils <i>coururent</i> . ils <i>courront</i> . ils <i>courraient</i> .

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

qu'il *coure*;      *courons*,      *courez*,      qu'ils *courent*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present*,      que je *coure*,      q. tu *coures*,      qu'il *coure*;      q. n. *courions*,      q. v. *couriez*,      qu'ils *courent*.  
*Imperfect*,      que je *courusse*,      q. tu *courusses*,      qu'il *courût*; q. n. *courussions*,      q. v. *courussiez*,      qu'ils *courussent*.

Infinitive.	Cueillir,	To gather.
Gerund.	<i>Cueillant,</i>	Gathering.
Participle.	Cueilli, ie,	Gathered.

This verb, and all those conjugated like it, take *avoir* to form their compound tenses.

		<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
		1	2	3	1	2	3
INDICATIVE MOOD.							
<i>Present,</i>	je cueille,	tu cueilles,	il cueille;	nous cueillons,	vous cueillez,	ils cueillent,	
<i>Imperfect,</i>	je cueillais,	tu cueillais,	il cueillait;	nous cueillions,	vous cueilliez,	ils cueillaient.	
<i>Preterit,</i>	je cueillis,	tu cueillis,	il cueillit;	nous cueillîmes,	vous cueillîtes,	ils cueillirent,	
<i>Future,</i>	je cueillerai,	tu cueilleras,	il cueillera;	nous cueillerons,	vous cueillerez,	ils cueilleront.	88
<i>Conditional,</i>	je cueillerais,	tu cueillerais,	il cueillerait;	nous cueillerions,	vous cueilleriez,	ils cueilleraient.	
IMPERATIVE MOOD.							
—	cueille,	qu'il cueille;	cueillons,	cueillez,	qu'ils cueillent.		
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.							
<i>Present,</i>	que je cueille,	q. tu cueilles,	qu'il cueille;	q. n. cueillions,	q. v. cueilliez,	qu'ils cueillent.	
<i>Imperfect,</i>	que je cueillisse,	q. tu cueillisses,	qu'il cueillît;	q. n. cueillissions,	q. v. cueillissiez,	qu'ils cueillissent.	

Infinitive. Dormir, To sleep.  
 Gerund. *Dormant*, Sleeping.  
 Participle. Dormi, ie, Slept.

This verb takes *avoir*, in its compound tenses; but of these verbs, *mentir*, *partir*, *sortir*, *sentir*, *servir*, and their derivatives, which are conjugated like it—some take *avoir*, and others *être*, in their compound tenses.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
	INDICATIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present</i> ,	je dors,	tu dors,	il dort;	nous dormons,	vous dormez,	ils dorment.
<i>Imperfect</i> ,	je dormais,	tu dormais,	il dormait;	nous dormions,	vous dormiez,	ils dormaient.
<i>Preterit</i> ,	je dormis,	tu dormis,	il dormit;	nous dormîmes,	vous dormîtes,	ils dormirent.
<i>Future</i> ,	je dormirai,	tu dormirais,	il dormira;	nous dormirons,	vous dormirez,	ils dormiront.
<i>Conditional</i> ,	je dormirais,	tu dormirais,	il dormirait;	nous dormirions,	vous dormiriez,	ils dormiraient.
	IMPERATIVE MOOD.					
	—	dors,	qu'il dorme;	dormons,	dormez,	qu'ils dorment.
	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.					

*Present*, que je dorme, q. tu dormes, q. il dorme; q. n. dormions, q. v. dormiez, qu'ils dorment.  
*Imperfect*, que je dormisse, q. tu dormisses, q. il dormît; q. n. dormissions, q. v. dormissiez, qu'ils dormissent.

Infinitive. To flee, or shun.  
 Gerund. Fleeing.  
 Participle. Fled.

This verb takes *avoir* in its compound tenses, but its derivative *s'enfuir*, to run away, takes *être*.

Singular.			Plural.		
1	2	3	1	2	3
INDICATIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present</i> , je suis,	tu suis,	il suit;	nous <i>fuyons</i> ,	vous <i>fuyez</i> ,	ils <i>fuient</i> .*
<i>Imperfect</i> , je <i>fuyais</i> ,	tu <i>fuyais</i> ,	il <i>fuyait</i> ;	nous <i>fuyions</i> ,	vous <i>fuyiez</i> ,	ils <i>fuyaient</i> .
∞ <i>Preterit</i> , je suis,†	tu suis,	il suit;	nous fuîmes,	vous fuîtes,	ils fuirent.
<i>Future</i> , je fuirai,	tu fuiras,	il fuira;	nous fuirons,	vous fuirez,	ils fuiront.
<i>Conditional</i> , je fuirais,	tu fuirais,	il fuirait;	nous fuirions,	vous fuiriez,	ils fuiraient.
IMPERATIVE MOOD.					
—			fuyez,	qu'ils <i>fuient</i> .	
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present</i> , que je <i>sois</i> ,	q. tu <i>soies</i> ,	qu'il <i>soit</i> ;	q. n. <i>fuyions</i> ,	q. v. <i>fuyiez</i> ,	qu'ils <i>fuient</i> .
<i>Imperfect</i> , que je <i>soisse</i> ,†	q. tu <i>soisses</i> ,	qu'il <i>soût</i> ;	q. n. <i>fuissions</i> ,	q. v. <i>fuissiez</i> ,	qu'ils <i>fuissent</i> .

\* In the conjugation of verbs, *y* before *e* mute, is now most generally changed into *i*; as in *il envoie*, he sends; *il paie*, he pays; *il paiera*, he will pay, &c. instead of the ancient *envoïe*, *paye*, and *payera*.

† It is more elegant to say *je pris la fuite*, *tu pris la fuite*, &c. and, in the Imperfect subjunctive, *que je prisse la fuite*, *que tu prisses la fuite*, &c.

Infinitive.  
Gerund.  
Participle.

Mourir,  
*Mourant*,  
*Mort, te*,  
To die.  
Dying.  
Died, or dead.

This verb, in French, takes *être*, *to be*, in its compound tenses; but never *avoir*, *to have*, as in English, when the participle *died*, instead of *dead*, is used.

				Plural.		
				1	2	3
				INDICATIVE MOOD.		
<i>Present</i> , <i>Imperfect</i> , <i>Preterit</i> , <i>Future</i> , <i>Conditional</i> ,	1	2	3	1	2	3
	je meurs,	tu meurs,	il meurt;	nous mourons,	vous mourez,	ils meurent.
	je mourais,	tu mourais,	il mourait;	nous mourions,	vous mouriez,	ils mouraient.
	je mourus,	tu mourus,	il mourut;	nous mourûmes,	vous mourûtes,	ils moururent.
	je mourrai,	tu mourras,	il mourra;	nous mourrons,	vous mourrez,	ils mourront.
	je mourrais,	tu mourrais,	il mourrait;	nous mourrions,	vous mourriez,	ils mourraient.
				IMPERATIVE MOOD.		
				qu'il meure;	mourez,	qu'ils meurent.
				SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.		
				qu'il meure;	q. n. mourions,	qu'ils meurent.
				que je meure,	q. tu meures,	qu'ils mourussent.
				que je mourusse,	q. tu mourusses,	qu'ils mourussent.

*Present*,  
*Imperfect*,  
que je meure, q. tu meures,  
que je mourusse, q. tu mourusses,



To offer.  
Offering.  
Offered.

Offer,  
*Offerant,*  
*Offerant, te,*

Infinitive.  
Gerund.  
Participle.

This verb, as well as *souffrir, ouvrir*, and its derivative *couvrir*, takes *avoir* in its compound tenses.

*Plural.*

*Singular.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
	INDICATIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present,</i>	j' <i>offre,</i>	tu <i>offres,</i>	il <i>offre;</i>	nous <i>offrons,</i>	vous <i>offrez,</i>	ils <i>offrent.</i>
<i>Imperfect,</i>	j' <i>offrais,</i>	tu <i>offrais,</i>	il <i>offrait;</i>	nous <i>offrions,</i>	vous <i>offriez,</i>	ils <i>offraient.</i>
<i>Preterit,</i>	j' <i>offris,</i>	tu <i>offris,</i>	il <i>offrit;</i>	nous <i>offrîmes,</i>	vous <i>offrîtes,</i>	ils <i>offrirent.</i>
<i>Future,</i>	j' <i>offrirai,</i>	tu <i>offriras,</i>	il <i>offrira;</i>	nous <i>offrirons,</i>	vous <i>offrirez,</i>	ils <i>offriront.</i>
<i>Conditional,</i>	j' <i>offrirais,</i>	tu <i>offrirais,</i>	il <i>offrirait;</i>	nous <i>offririons,</i>	vous <i>offririez,</i>	ils <i>offriraient.</i>
	IMPERATIVE MOOD.					
		<i>offre,</i>	qu'il <i>offre;</i>	<i>offrons,</i>	<i>offrez,</i>	qu'ils <i>offrent.</i>
	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present,</i>	que j' <i>offre,</i>	q. tu <i>offres,</i>	qu'il <i>offre;</i>	q. n. <i>offrions,</i>	q. v. <i>offriez,</i>	qu'ils <i>offrent.</i>
<i>Imperfect,</i>	que j' <i>offrisse,</i>	q. tu <i>offrisses,</i>	qu'il <i>offrît;</i>	q. n. <i>offrissions,</i>	q. v. <i>offrissiez,</i>	qu'ils <i>offrissent.</i>

Infinitive.	Tenir,	To hold.
Gerund.	<i>Tenant,</i>	Holding.
Participle.	<i>Tenu, ue,</i>	Held.

This verb takes *avoir* in its compound tenses; but most of those belonging to the same conjugation take *être*: such are, *venir*, and its derivatives *devenir, convenir, &c.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
	INDICATIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present,</i>	je <i>tiens,</i>	tu <i>tiens,</i>	il <i>tient;</i>	nous <i>tenons,</i>	vous <i>tenez,</i>	ils <i>tiennent.</i>
<i>Imperfect,</i>	je <i>tenais,</i>	tu <i>tenais,</i>	il <i>tenait;</i>	nous <i>tenions,</i>	vous <i>teniez,</i>	ils <i>tenaient.</i>
<i>Preterit,</i>	je <i>tins,</i>	tu <i>tins,</i>	il <i>tin!</i>	nous <i>tinmes,</i>	vous <i>tûtes,</i>	ils <i>tinrent.</i>
<i>Future,</i>	je <i>tiendrai,</i>	tu <i>tiendras,</i>	il <i>tiendra;</i>	nous <i>tiendrons,</i>	vous <i>tiendrez,</i>	ils <i>tiendront.</i>
<i>Conditional,</i>	je <i>tiendrais,</i>	tu <i>tiendrais,</i>	il <i>tiendrait;</i>	nous <i>tiendrions,</i>	vous <i>tiendriez,</i>	ils <i>tiendraient.</i>
	IMPERATIVE MOOD.					
	—	<i>tiens,</i>	qu'il <i>tienne;</i>	<i>tenons,</i>	<i>tenez,</i>	qu'ils <i>tiennent.</i>
	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present,</i>	que je <i>tienne,</i>	q. tu <i>tiennes,</i>	qu'il <i>tienne;</i>	q. n. <i>tenions,</i>	q. v. <i>teniez,</i>	qu'ils <i>tiennent.</i>
<i>Imperfect,</i>	que je <i>tinsse,</i>	q. tu <i>tinsses,</i>	qu'il <i>tînt;</i>	q. n. <i>tinssions,</i>	q. v. <i>tinssiez,</i>	qu'ils <i>tinssent.</i>

Infinitive. To clothe.  
Gerund. Clothing.  
Participle. Clothed.

This verb takes *avoir* in its compound tenses, as well as *dévéttir* and *revéttir*; but some of its compounds take *être*.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
	INDICATIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present,</i>	je <i>vêts,</i>	tu <i>vêts,</i>	il <i>vêt;</i>	nous <i>vêtons,</i>	vous <i>vêtez,</i>	ils <i>vètent.</i>
<i>Imperfect,</i>	je <i>vétais,</i>	tu <i>vétais,</i>	il <i>vêtait;</i>	nous <i>vétions,</i>	vous <i>vétiez,</i>	ils <i>vétaient.</i>
<i>Preterit,</i>	je <i>vêtis,</i>	tu <i>vêtis,</i>	il <i>vêtit;</i>	nous <i>vêtîmes,</i>	vous <i>vêtîtes,</i>	ils <i>vêtirent.</i>
<i>Future,</i>	je <i>vêtirai,</i>	tu <i>vêtiras,</i>	il <i>vêtira;</i>	nous <i>vêtirons,</i>	vous <i>vêtirez,</i>	ils <i>vêtiront.</i>
<i>Conditional,</i>	je <i>vêtirais,</i>	tu <i>vêtirais,</i>	il <i>vêtirait;</i>	nous <i>vêtirions,</i>	vous <i>vêtiriez,</i>	ils <i>vêtiraient.</i>
	IMPERATIVE MOOD.					
	—	<i>vêts,</i>	qu'il <i>vête;</i>	<i>vêtons,</i>	<i>vêtez,</i>	qu'ils <i>vètent.</i>
	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present,</i>	que je <i>vête,</i>	q. tu <i>vêtes,</i>	qu'il <i>vête;</i>	q. n. <i>vétions,</i>	q. v. <i>vétiez,</i>	qu'ils <i>vètent.</i>
<i>Imperfect,</i>	que je <i>vêtisse,</i>	q. tu <i>vêtisses,</i>	qu'il <i>vêtît;</i>	q. n. <i>vêtissions,</i>	q. v. <i>vêtissiez,</i>	qu'ils <i>vêtissent.</i>

REMARK. The three persons singular of the present of the indicative, and the imperative, are very seldom used.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

Infinitive.	Asseoir,	To set.
Gerund.	<i>Asseyant,</i>	Setting.
Participle.	<i>Assis, ise,</i>	Set.

This verb, which is seldom used, takes *avoir* in its compound tenses: *S'asseoir, rasseoir*, and *se rasseoir*, are conjugated like it.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
<i>Present,</i>	<i>j'assieds,</i>	tu <i>assieds,</i>	INDICATIVE MOOD.	nous <i>asseyons,</i>	vous <i>asseyez,</i>	ils <i>asseyent.</i>
<i>Imperfect,</i>	<i>j'asseyais,</i>	tu <i>asseyais,</i>		nous <i>asseyions,</i>	vous <i>asseyiez,</i>	ils <i>asseyaient.</i>
<i>Preterit,</i>	<i>j'assis,</i>	tu <i>assis,</i>		nous <i>assîmes,</i>	vous <i>assîtes,</i>	ils <i>assirent.</i>
<i>Future,</i>	<i>j'assièrai,*</i>	tu <i>assièras,</i>		nous <i>assièrons,</i>	vous <i>assièrez,</i>	ils <i>assièront.</i>
<i>Conditional,</i>	<i>j'assièrais,</i>	tu <i>assièrais,</i>		nous <i>assièrions,</i>	vous <i>assièriez,</i>	ils <i>assièraient.</i>
—	—	<i>assieds,</i>	IMPERATIVE MOOD.			
			qu'il <i>asseye;</i>	<i>asseyons,</i>	<i>asseyez,</i>	qu'ils <i>asseyent.</i>
			SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.			
<i>Present,</i>	que <i>j'asseye,</i>	q. tu <i>asseyes,</i>	qu'il <i>asseye;</i>	q. n. <i>asseyions,</i>	q. v. <i>asseyiez,</i>	qu'ils <i>asseyent.</i>
<i>Imperfect,</i>	que <i>j'assisse,</i>	q. tu <i>assisses,</i>	qu'il <i>assît;</i>	q. n. <i>assissions,</i>	q. v. <i>assissiez,</i>	qu'ils <i>assissent.</i>

\* Or, *j'asseyerai, tu asseyeras, &c.* in this tense, and *j'asseyerais, tu asseyerais, &c.* in the conditional.

Infinitive.	Déchoir,	To decay.
Gerund.	<u>Déchu, ue,</u>	
Participle.	Déchu, ue,	Decayed.

This verb has no derivatives, and its compound tenses are formed with the auxiliary *être*, to be.

Singular.			Plural.		
1	2	3	1	2	3
INDICATIVE MOOD.					
Present,	je <i>déchois</i> ,	tu <i>déchois</i> ,	nous <i>déchoyons</i> ,	vous <i>déchoyez</i> ,	ils <i>déchoient</i> .
Imperfect,	je <i>déchoyais</i> ,*	tu <i>déchoyais</i> ,	nous <i>déchoyions</i> ,	vous <i>déchoyiez</i> ,	ils <i>déchoyaient</i> .
Preterit,	je <i>déchus</i> ,	tu <i>déchus</i> ,	nous <i>déchûmes</i> ,	vous <i>déchûtes</i> ,	ils <i>déchurent</i> .
Future,	je <i>décherrai</i> ,	tu <i>décherras</i> ,	nous <i>décherrons</i> ,	vous <i>décherez</i> ,	ils <i>décherront</i> .
Conditional,	je <i>décherrais</i> ,	tu <i>décherrais</i> ,	nous <i>décherrions</i> ,	vous <i>décheriez</i> ,	ils <i>décherraient</i> .
IMPERATIVE MOOD.					
-----	<i>déchois</i> ,*	<i>déchoie</i> ;	<i>déchoyons</i> ,	<i>déchoyez</i> ,	qu'ils <i>déchoient</i> .
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.					
Present,	que je <i>déchoie</i> ,	q. tu <i>déchoies</i> ,	q. n. <i>déchoyions</i> ,	q. v. <i>déchoyiez</i> ,	qu'ils <i>déchoient</i> .
Imperfect,	que je <i>déchusse</i> ,	q. tu <i>déchusses</i> ,	q. n. <i>déchussions</i> ,	q. v. <i>déchussiez</i> ,	qu'ils <i>déchussent</i> .

\* The *Imperfect Indicative* and the *Imperative* are considered by some Grammarians as obsolete.

Infinitive.      Mouvoir,      To move.  
Gerund.        Movant,      Moving.  
Participle.    Mû, *ûe*,    Moved.

This verb and its derivatives (*mouvoir* and *promouvoir*, take *avoir* to form their compound tenses.

*Singular.*

1	2	3	1	2	3
---	---	---	---	---	---

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present,</i>	je <i>meus</i> ,	tu <i>meus</i> ,	il <i>meut</i> ;	nous mouvons,	vous mouvez,	ils <i>meuvent</i> .
<i>Imperfect,</i>	je mouvais,	tu mouvais,	il mouvait;	nous mouvions,	vous moviez,	ils mouvaient.
<i>Preterit,</i>	je <i>mus</i> ,	tu <i>mus</i> ,	il <i>mut</i> ;	nous <i>mûmes</i> ,	vous <i>mûtes</i> ,	ils <i>murent</i> .
<i>Future,</i>	je mouvrai,	tu mouvras,	il mouvra;	nous mouvrons,	vous mouvrez,	ils mouvront.
<i>Conditional,</i>	je mouvrais,	tu mouvrais,	il mouvrait;	nous mouvriions,	vous mouvriez,	ils mouvraient.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

—	<i>meus</i> ,	qu'il <i>meuve</i> ;	mouvons,	<i>mouvez</i> ,	qu'ils <i>meuvent</i> .
---	---------------	----------------------	----------	-----------------	-------------------------

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Present,</i>	que je <i>meuve</i> ,	q. tu <i>meuves</i> ,	qu'il <i>meuve</i> ;	q. n. mouvions,	q. v. moviez,	qu'ils <i>meuvent</i> .
<i>Imperfect,</i>	que je <i>musse</i> ,	q. tu <i>musse</i> ,	qu'il <i>mut</i> ;	q. n. <i>muissions</i> ,	q. v. <i>muissiez</i> ,	qu'ils <i>muissent</i> .



Infinitive.      Pouvoir,      To be able.  
Gerund.        Pouvant,    Being able.  
Participle.    Pu,         Been able.

This verb has no derivatives, and takes *avoir* in its compound tenses.

				Plural.		
Singular.						
				1	2	3
				INDICATIVE MOOD.		
Present,	je <i>peux</i> ,* or <i>puis</i> ,	tu <i>peux</i> ,	il <i>peut</i> ;	nous pouvons,	vous pouvez,	ils <i>peuvent</i> .
Imperfect,	je pouvais,	tu pouvais,	il pouvait;	nous pouvions,	vous pouviez,	ils pouvaient.
Preterit,	je <i>pus</i> ,	tu <i>pus</i> ,	il <i>put</i> ;	nous <i>pûmes</i> ,	vous <i>pûtes</i> ,	ils <i>purent</i> .
Future,	je <i>pourrai</i> ,	tu <i>pourras</i> ,	il <i>pourra</i> ;	nous <i>pourrons</i> ,	vous <i>pourrez</i> ,	ils <i>pourront</i> .
Conditional,	je <i>pourrais</i> ,	tu <i>pourrais</i> ,	il <i>pourrait</i> ;	nous <i>pourrions</i> ,	vous <i>pourriez</i> ,	ils <i>pourraient</i> .
				IMPERATIVE MOOD.		
				SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.		
Present,	que je <i>puisse</i> ,	q. tu <i>puisses</i> ,	q. il <i>puisse</i> ;	q. n. <i>puissions</i> ,	q. v. <i>puissiez</i> ,	q. ils <i>puissent</i> .
Imperfect,	que je <i>pusse</i> ,	q. tu <i>pusse</i> ,	q. il <i>pût</i> ;	q. n. <i>puissions</i> ,	q. v. <i>puissiez</i> ,	q. ils <i>puissent</i> .

\* Both of these two first persons are frequently used; but *puis-je*? must be preferred to *peux-je*? in interrogations.

Infinitive.  
Gerund.  
Participle.

Pourvoir,  
*Pourvoyant*,  
*Pourvu*, *ue*,  
To provide.  
Providing.  
Provided.

This verb takes *avoir* in its compound tenses; it is a derivative of *voir*, to see.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

1

2

3

1

2

3

INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present*, je *pourvois*, tu *pourvois*, il *pourvoit*; nous *pourvoyons*, vous *pourvoyez*, ils *pourvoient*.  
*Imperfect*, je *pourvoyais*, tu *pourvoyais*, il *pourvoyait*; nous *pourvoyions*, vous *pourvoyiez*, ils *pourvoyaient*.  
*Preterit*, je *pourvus*, tu *pourvus*, il *pourvut*; nous *pourvûmes*, vous *pourvûtes*, ils *pourvurent*.  
*Future*, je *pourvoirai*, tu *pourvoiras*, il *pourvoira*; nous *pourvoirons*, vous *pourvoirez*, ils *pourvoiront*.  
*Conditional*, je *pourvoirais*, tu *pourvoirais*, il *pourvoirait*; nous *pourvoirions*, vous *pourvoiriez*, ils *pourvoiraient*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

— *pourvois*, qu'il *pourvoie*; *pourvois*, *pourvoyez*, qu'ils *pourvoient*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present*, que je *pourvoie*, q. tu *pourvoies*, qu'il *pourvoie*; q. n. *pourvoyions*, q. v. *pourvoyiez*, qu'ils *pourvoient*.  
*Imperfect*, que je *pourvusse*, q. tu *pourvusses*, qu'il *pourvût*; q. n. *pourvussions*, q. v. *pourvussiez*, qu'ils *pourvussent*.

Infinitive.      Prévaloir,      To prevail.  
 Gerund.        Prévalant,    Prevailing.  
 Participle.    *Prévalu, ue,*    Prevailed.

This verb is a compound of *valoir*, to be worth; its compound tenses are formed with the auxiliary *avoir*, to have.

Singular.			Plural.		
1	2	3	1	2	3
INDICATIVE MOOD.					
je <i>prévaux</i> ,	tu <i>prévaux</i> ,	il <i>prévaut</i> ;	nous <i>prévalons</i> ,	vous <i>prévalez</i> ,	ils <i>prévalent</i> .
je <i>prévalais</i> ,	tu <i>prévalais</i> ,	il <i>prévalait</i> ;	nous <i>prévalions</i> ,	vous <i>prévaliez</i> ,	ils <i>prévalaient</i> .
je <i>prévalus</i> ,	tu <i>prévalus</i> ,	il <i>prévalut</i> ;	nous <i>prévalâmes</i> ,	vous <i>prévalâtes</i> ,	ils <i>prévalurent</i> .
je <i>prévaudrai</i> ,	tu <i>prévaudras</i> ,	il <i>prévaudra</i> ;	nous <i>prévaudrons</i> ,	vous <i>prévaudrez</i> ,	ils <i>prévaudront</i> .
je <i>prévaudrais</i> ,	tu <i>prévaudrais</i> ,	il <i>prévaudirait</i> ;	nous <i>prévaudirions</i> ,	vous <i>prévaudriez</i> ,	ils <i>prévaudraient</i> .
IMPERATIVE MOOD.					
			qu'il <i>prévale</i> ;	prévalons,	qu'ils <i>prévalent</i> .
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.					
que je <i>prévale</i> ,	q. tu <i>prévales</i> ,	qu'il <i>prévale</i> ;	q. n. <i>prévalions</i> ,	q. v. <i>prévalez</i> ,	qu'ils <i>prévalent</i> .
que je <i>prévalusse</i> ,	q. tu <i>prévalusses</i> ,	qu'il <i>prévâlût</i> ;	q. n. <i>prévalussions</i> ,	q. v. <i>prévalussiez</i> ,	qu'ils <i>prévalussent</i> .

Infinitive.      Prévoir,  
Gerund.        *Prévoyant*,  
Participle.    *Prévu, ue*,  
                    To foresee.  
                    Foreseeing.  
                    Foreseen.

This verb is a derivative of *voir*, to see, and takes *avoir* in its compound tenses.

		Singular.			Plural.		
		1	2	3	1	2	3
Present, Imperfect, Preterit, Future, Conditional,	je prévois,	tu prévois,	INDICATIVE MOOD.			nous prévoyons,	vous prévoyez, ils prévoient.
	je prévoyais,	tu prévoyais,	il prévoit;	il prévoyait;	nous prévoyions,	vous prévoyiez, ils prévoyaient.	
	je prévis,	tu prévis,	il prévut;	il prévoyait;	nous prévûmes,	vous prévûtes, ils prévûrent.	
	je prévoirai,	tu prévoiras,	il prévoira;	il prévoirait;	nous prévoirons,	vous prévoiriez, ils prévoiraient.	
	je prévoirais,	tu prévoirais,	il prévoirait;	il prévoirait;	nous prévoirions,	vous prévoiriez, ils prévoiraient.	
		—		IMPERATIVE MOOD.	prévoyons, qu'ils prévoient.		
				qu'il prévienne;			
Present, Imperfect,	que je prévienne,	q. tu prévoies,	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.			q. n. prévoyions,	q. v. prévoyiez, qu'ils prévoient.
	que je prévisse,	q. tu prévoisses,	qu'il prévienne;	qu'il prévienne;	q. n. préviussions,	q. v. préviussiez, qu'ils préviussent.	

Infinitive.	Savoir,	To know, (a thing.)
Gerund.	<i>Sachant,</i>	Knowing.
Participle.	<i>Su, ue,</i>	Known.

This verb has no derivatives, and takes the auxiliary *avoir* in its compound tenses.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
	INDICATIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present,</i>	je sais,	tu sais,	il sait;	nous savons,	vous savez,	ils savent.
<i>Imperfect,</i>	je savais,	tu savais,	il savait;	nous savions,	vous saviez,	ils savaient.
<i>Preterit,</i>	je sus,	tu sus,	il sut;	nous sûmes,	vous sâtes,	ils surent.
<i>Future,</i>	je saurai,	tu sauras,	il saura;	nous saurons,	vous saurez,	ils sauront.
<i>Conditional,</i>	je saurais,	tu saurais,	il saurait;	nous saurions,	vous sauriez,	ils sauraient.
	IMPERATIVE MOOD.					
	—	sache,	qu'il sache;	sachons,	sachez,	qu'ils sachent.
	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present,</i>	que je sache,	q. tu saches,	qu'il sache;	q. n. sachions,	q. v. sachiez,	qu'ils sachent.
<i>Imperfect,</i>	que je susse,	q. tu susses,	qu'il sût;	q. n. sussions,	q. v. sussiez,	qu'ils sussent.

Infinitive.	Surseoir,*	To supersede.
Gerund.	<i>Sursoyant,</i>	Superseding.
Participle.	<i>Sursis, ise,</i>	Superseded.

This verb is a derivative of the defective verb *seoir*, to fit well, to become; it takes *avoir* in its compound tenses.

				Singular.			Plural.		
	1	2	3	INDICATIVE MOOD.			1	2	3
<i>Present,</i>	je <i>sursois,</i>	tu <i>sursois,</i>	il <i>sursoit;</i>	nous <i>sursoyons,</i>	vous <i>sursoyez,</i>	ils <i>sursoient.</i>			
<i>Imperfect,</i>	je <i>sursoyais,</i>	tu <i>sursoyais,</i>	il <i>sursoyait;</i>	nous <i>sursoyions,</i>	vous <i>sursoyiez,</i>	ils <i>sursoyaient.</i>			
<i>Preterit,</i>	je <i>sursis,</i>	tu <i>sursis,</i>	il <i>sursit;</i>	nous <i>sursîmes,</i>	vous <i>sursîtes,</i>	ils <i>sursirent.</i>			
<i>Future,</i>	je <i>surseoirai,</i>	tu <i>surseoiras,</i>	il <i>surseoira;</i>	nous <i>surseoirons,</i>	vous <i>surseoirez,</i>	ils <i>surseoiront.</i>			
<i>Conditional,</i>	je <i>surseoiraïs,</i>	tu <i>surseoiraïs,</i>	il <i>surseoierait;</i>	nous <i>surseoierions,</i>	vous <i>surseoieriez,</i>	ils <i>surseoieraient.</i>			
				IMPERATIVE MOOD.					
	—	<i>sursois,</i>	qu'il <i>sursoie;</i>	<i>sursoyons,</i>	<i>sursoyez,</i>	qu'ils <i>sursoient.</i>			
				SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present,</i>	que je <i>sursoie,</i>	q. tu <i>sursoies,</i>	qu'il <i>sursoie;</i>	q. n. <i>sursoyions,</i>	q. v. <i>sursoyiez,</i>	qu'ils <i>sursoient.</i>			
<i>Imperfect,</i>	que je <i>sursisse,</i>	q. tu <i>sursisses,</i>	qu'il <i>sursît;</i>	q. n. <i>sursissions,</i>	q. v. <i>sursissiez,</i>	qu'ils <i>sursissent.</i>			

\* *Surseoir* is only used in legal language, and means *to stop*, or *to put off* the judgment of a cause.



Infinitive. Valoir, To be worth.  
 Gerund. Valant, Being worth.  
 Participle. Valu, Been worth.

This verb, and its derivatives, take *avoir* to form their compound tenses.

Singular.			Plural.		
1	2	3	1	2	3
INDICATIVE MOOD.					
Present, <i>je vauz,</i>	tu <i>vauz,</i>	il <i>vaut;</i>	nous valons,	vous valez,	ils <i>valent.</i>
Imperfect, <i>je valais,</i>	tu valais,	il valait;	nous valions,	vous valiez,	ils valaient.
Preterit, <i>je valus,</i>	tu <i>valus,</i>	il <i>valut;</i>	nous <i>valûmes,</i>	vous <i>valûtes,</i>	ils <i>valurent.</i>
Future, <i>je vaudrai,</i>	tu <i>vaudras,</i>	il <i>vaudra;</i>	nous <i>vaudrons,</i>	vous <i>vaudrez,</i>	ils <i>vaudront.</i>
Conditional, <i>je vaudrais,</i>	tu <i>vaudrais,</i>	il <i>vaudrait;</i>	nous <i>vaudrions,</i>	vous <i>vaudriez,</i>	ils <i>vaudraient.</i>
IMPERATIVE MOOD.					
—	<i>vauz,</i>	qu'il <i>vaille;</i>	valons,	valez,	qu'ils <i>vailent.</i>
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.					
Present, <i>que je vaille,</i>	q. tu <i>vailles,</i>	qu'il <i>vaille;</i>	q. n. valions,	q. v. valiez,	qu'ils <i>vailant.</i>
Imperfect, <i>que je valusse,</i>	q. tu <i>valusses,</i>	qu'il <i>valût;</i>	q. n. <i>valussions,</i>	q. v. <i>valussiez,</i>	qu'ils <i>valussent.</i>

Infinitive. Voir,  
Gerund. Voyant,  
Participle. l'û, ue,

To sec.  
Seeing.  
Seen.

This verb, and its derivatives, take the auxiliary *avoir* in their compound tenses.

Singular.			Plural.			
1	2	3	1	2	3	
INDICATIVE MOOD.						
<i>Present,</i> <i>Imperfect,</i> <i>Preterit,</i> <i>Future,</i> <i>Conditional,</i>	je vois, je voyais, je vis, je verrai, je verrais,	tu vois, tu voyais, tu vis, tu verras, tu verrais,	il voit; il voyait; il vit; il verra; il verrait;	nous voyons, nous voyions, nous vîmes, nous verrons, nous verrions,	vous voyez, vous voyiez, vous vîtes, vous verrez, vous verriez,	ils voient. ils voyaient. ils virent. ils verront. ils verraient.
IMPERATIVE MOOD.						
vois,			voyez, qu'ils voient.			
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.						
<i>Present,</i> <i>Imperfect,</i>	que je voie, que je visse,	q. tu voies, q. tu visses,	qu'il voie; qu'il vît;	q. n. voyions, q. n. vissions,	q. v. voyiez, q. v. vissiez,	qu'ils voient. qu'ils vissent.

Infinitive.	Vouloir,	To be willing.
Gerund.	Voulant,	Being willing.
Participle.	<i>Voulu, ue,</i>	Been willing.

This verb has no derivatives, and takes *avoir* in its compound tenses.

Singular.			Plural.		
1	2	3	1	2	3
INDICATIVE MOOD.					
Present, <i>Imperfect,</i> <i>or</i> Preterit, Future, Conditional,	je <i>veux</i> , je voulais, je <i>voulus</i> , je <i>voudrai</i> , je <i>voudrais</i> ,	il <i>veut</i> ; il voulait; il <i>voult</i> ; il <i>voudra</i> ; il <i>voudrait</i> ;	nous voulons, nous voulions, nous <i>voulâmes</i> , nous <i>voudrions</i> , nous <i>voudrions</i> ,	vous voulez, vous vouliez, vous <i>voulâtes</i> , vous <i>voudriez</i> , vous <i>voudriez</i> ,	ils <i>veulent</i> . ils voulaient. ils <i>voulurent</i> . ils <i>voudront</i> . ils <i>voudraient</i> .
IMPERATIVE MOOD.*					

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present, <i>Imperfect</i> ,	que je <i>veuille</i> , q. tu <i>veuilles</i> , q. je <i>voulesse</i> , q. tu <i>voulasses</i> ,	qu'il <i>veuille</i> ; q. n. <i>voulions</i> , qu'il <i>voulût</i> ; q. n. <i>voulessions</i> ,	q. v. <i>vouliez</i> , q. v. <i>voulessiez</i> ,	qu'ils <i>veussent</i> . qu'ils <i>voulassent</i> .
--------------------------------	---	--	---	--

\* *Veuille* and *veussiez* are the only persons of the Imperative now used, in the sense of "be so good as," &c. Ex: *veuillez m'apporter ce livre-là?* be so good as to bring me that book?

# FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Infinitive.	Absoudre,	To absolve.
Gerund.	<i>Absolvant,</i>	Absolving.
Participle.	<i>Absous, oute,</i>	Absolved.

This verb is a compound of the obsolete *soudre*, to solve; it takes *avoir* in its compound tenses: *Dissoudre*, to dissolve, and *résoudre*,\* to resolve, are conjugated like it.

Singular.			Plural.		
1	2	3	1	2	3
INDICATIVE MOOD.					
Present,	j'absous,	tu absous,	nous absolvons,	vous absolvez,	ils absolvent.
Imperfect,	j'absolvais,	tu absolvais,	nous absolvions,	vous absolviez,	ils absolveraient.
Preterit,	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
Future,	j'absoudrai,	tu absoudras,	nous absoudrons,	vous absoudrez,	ils absoudront.
Conditional,	j'absoudrais,	tu absoudrais,	nous absoudrions,	vous absoudriez,	ils absoudraient.
IMPERATIVE MOOD.					
_____	absous,	qu'il absolve;	absolvons,	absolvez,	qu'ils absolvent.
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.					
Present,	que j'absolve,	q. tu absolves,	q. n. absolvions,	q. v. absolviez,	qu'ils absolvent.
Imperfect,	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

\* *Résoudre*, now used instead of *soudre*, has two participles, *résolu*, when it means *determined*, and *résous*, when it means *resolved into*; in this last sense it has no feminine: Its preterit is *je résolus, tu résolus*, &c. and its imperfect subj. *que je résolusse*, &c.

To beat.  
Beating.  
Beaten.

Battre,  
Battant,  
Battu, ue,

Infinitive.  
Gerund.  
Participle.

This verb and its derivatives, take *avoir* in their compound tenses, except *se débattre*, to struggle, which takes *être*.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
	INDICATIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present,</i>	je <i>bats</i> ,	tu <i>bats</i> ,	il <i>bat</i> ;	nous battons,	vous battez,	ils battent.
<i>Imperfect,</i>	je battais,	tu battais,	il battait;	nous battions,	vous battiez,	ils battaient.
<i>Preterit,</i>	je battis,	tu battis,	il battit;	nous battîmes,	vous battîtes,	ils battirent.
<i>Future,</i>	je battrai,	tu battras,	il battrait;	nous battrons,	vous battriez,	ils battront.
<i>Conditional,</i>	je battrais,	tu battrais,	il battrait;	nous battrions,	vous battriez,	ils battraient.
	IMPERATIVE MOOD.					
	—	<i>bats</i> ,	qu'il batte;	battons,	battez,	qu'ils battent.
	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present,</i>	que je batte,	q. tu battes,	qu'il batte;	q. n. battions,	q. v. battiez,	qu'ils battent.
<i>Imperfect,</i>	que je battisse,	q. tu battisses,	qu'il battût;	q. n. battissions,	q. v. battissiez,	qu'ils battissent.

Infinitive.      Boire,  
Gerund.        *Buvant*,  
Participle.    *Bu, ue*,  
To drink.  
Drinking.  
Drunk.

This verb takes *avoir* to form its compound tenses, and has no derivatives.

		<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
		1	2	3	1	2	3
		INDICATIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present,</i> <i>Imperfect,</i> <i>Preterit,</i> <i>Future,</i> <i>Conditional,</i>	je bois,	tu bois,	il <i>boit</i> ;	nous <i>buvons</i> ,	vous <i>buvez</i> ,	ils <i>boivent</i> .	
	je <i>buvais</i> ,	tu <i>buvais</i> ,	il <i>buvait</i> ;	nous <i>buvions</i> ,	vous <i>buviez</i> ,	ils <i>buvaient</i> .	
	je <i>bus</i> ,	tu <i>bus</i> ,	il <i>but</i> ;	nous <i>bûmes</i> ,	vous <i>bûtes</i> ,	ils <i>burent</i> .	
	je boirai,	tu boiras,	il boira;	nous boirons,	vous boirez,	ils boiront.	
	je boirais,	tu boirais,	il boirait;	nous boirions,	vous boiriez,	ils boiraient.	
		IMPERATIVE MOOD.					
		—	bois,	qu'il <i>boive</i> ;	<i>buvez</i> ,	qu'ils <i>boivent</i> .	
		SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present,</i> <i>Imperfect,</i>	que je <i>boive</i> ,	q. tu <i>boives</i> ,	qu'il <i>boive</i> ;	q. n. <i>buvions</i> ,	q. v. <i>buviez</i> ,	qu'ils <i>boivent</i> .	
	que je <i>busse</i> ,	q. tu <i>busses</i> ,	qu'il <i>bût</i> ;	q. n. <i>bussions</i> ,	q. v. <i>bussiez</i> ,	qu'ils <i>bussent</i> .	



Infinitive.	Conclude.
Gerund.	Concluding.
Participle.	Concluded.

This verb takes *avoir* to form its compound tenses, as well as *exclure*, to exclude; but the participle of the latter is either *exclu*, *ue*, or *exclus*, *use*.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
	INDICATIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present</i> ,	je conclus,	tu conclus,	il conclut;	nous concluons,	vous concluez,	ils concluent.
<i>Imperfect</i> ,	je concluais,	tu concluais,	il concluait;	nous concluions,	vous conclûiez,	ils concluaient.
<i>Preterit</i> ,	je conclus,	tu conclus,	il conclut;	nous conclûmes,	vous conclûtes,	ils conclurent.
<i>Future</i> ,	je conclurai,	tu concluras,	il conclura;	nous conclurons,	vous conclurez,	ils concluront.
<i>Conditional</i> ,	je conclurais,	tu conclurais,	il conclurait;	nous conclurons,	vous concluriez,	ils concluraient.
	IMPERATIVE MOOD.					
	—	conclus,	qu'il conclue;	concluons,	concluez,	qu'ils concluent.
	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present</i> ,	que je conclue,	q. tu conclus,	qu'il conclue;	q. n. concluions,	q. v. conclûiez,	qu'ils concluent.
<i>Imperfect</i> ,	que je conclusse,	q. tu conclusses,	qu'il conclût;	q. n. conclusions,	q. v. conclussiez,	qu'ils conclussent.

Infinitive.  
Gerund.  
Participle.

Conduire,  
*Conduisant*,  
*Conduit, te*,

To conduct.  
Conducting.  
Conducted.

This verb, and all those conjugated like it, take *avoir* in their compound tenses.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

1

2

3

1

2

3

INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present*, je conduis,  
*Imperfect*, je conduisais,  
*Preterit*, je conduisis,  
*Future*, je conduirai,  
*Conditional*, je conduirais,

tu conduis  
tu conduisais,  
tu conduisis,  
tu conduiras,  
tu conduirais,

il conduit;  
il conduisait;  
il conduisit;  
il conduira;  
il conduirait;

nous conduisons,  
vous conduisez,  
nous conduisions,  
vous conduisiez,  
nous conduîmes,  
vous conduîtes,  
nous conduirons,  
vous conduirez,  
nous conduirions,  
vous conduiriez,

ils conduisent.  
ils conduisaient.  
ils conduisirent.  
ils conduiront.  
ils conduiraient.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

conduis,

qu'il conduise;

conduisons,

conduisez, qu'ils conduisent.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present*, que je conduise,  
*Imperfect*, que je conduisise,

q. tu conduises,  
q. tu conduisses,

q. n. conduisions,  
q. v. conduisiez,  
q. n. conduissions,  
q. v. conduissiez,

qu'ils conduisent.  
qu'ils conduissent.

REMARK. Among the verbs conjugated like *conduire*, there are : *cuire*, to bake, and *recuire*, to bake again, which are very seldom used without being joined to the verb *faire* ; as, *je fais cuire*, *tu fais cuire*, &c. There are also *luire*, to shine, *retuire*, to glitter, and *nuire*, to hurt, which drop the *t* in their participle, thus : *luir*, *retuir*, *nuir*.

Infinitive.	Confire,	To pickle, or preserve.
Gerund.	<i>Confisant,</i>	Pickling.
Participle.	<i>Confit, te,</i>	Pickled.

This, and the verb *suffire*, \* to suffice, take *avoir* in their compound tenses: They have no derivatives.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>				
1	2	3	1	2	3	
INDICATIVE MOOD.						
<i>Present,</i>	je confis,	tu confis,	il <i>confit</i> ;	nous <i>confisons</i> ,	vous <i>confisez</i> ,	ils <i>confisent</i> .
<i>Imperfect,</i>	je <i>confisais</i> ,	tu <i>confisais</i> ,	il <i>confisait</i> ;	nous <i>confisions</i> ,	vous <i>confisiez</i> ,	ils <i>confisaient</i> .
<i>Preterit,</i>	je <i>confis</i> ,	tu <i>confis</i> ,	il <i>confit</i> ;	nous <i>confîmes</i> ,	vous <i>confîtes</i> ,	ils <i>confirent</i> .
<i>Future,</i>	je confirai,	tu confiras,	il confira;	nous confirons,	vous confrez,	ils confiront.
<i>Conditional,</i>	je confirais,	tu confirais,	il confirait;	nous confirions,	vous confriez,	ils confiraient.
IMPERATIVE MOOD.						
—	confis,	qu'il <i>confise</i> ;	<i>confisons</i> ,	<i>confisez</i> ,	qu'ils <i>confisent</i> .	
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.						
<i>Present,</i>	que je <i>confise</i> ,	q. tu <i>confises</i> ,	qu'il <i>confise</i> ;	q. n. <i>confissions</i> ,	q. v. <i>confissiez</i> ,	qu'ils <i>confissent</i> .
<i>Imperfect,</i>	que je <i>confisse</i> ,	q. tu <i>confisses</i> ,	qu'il <i>confît</i> ;	q. n. <i>confissions</i> ,	q. v. <i>confissiez</i> ,	qu'ils <i>confissent</i> .

\* *Suffire* makes in its participle *suffi*; the rest is conjugated like *confire*.

Infinitive.  
Gerund.  
Participle.

Connaître,  
*Connaissant*,  
*Connu, ue*,

To know, (a person.)  
Knowing.  
Known.

This verb and its derivatives *méconnaître*, and *reconnaître*, as well as *paraître*,\* and their derivatives, take *avoir* in their compound tenses; but *se repaître*, to feed one's self, takes *être*.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

1

2

3

1

2

3

INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present*, je *connais*, tu *connais*, il *connait*; nous *connaissons*, vous *connaissez*, ils *connaissent*.  
*Imperfect*, je *connaissais*, tu *connaissais*, il *connaissait*; nous *connaissions*, vous *connaissiez*, ils *connaissaient*.  
*Preterit*, je *connus*, tu *connus*, il *connut*; nous *connûmes*, vous *connûtes*, ils *connurent*.  
*Future*, je *connaîtrai*, tu *connaîtras*, il *connaîtra*; nous *connaîtrons*, vous *connaîtrez*, ils *connaîtront*.  
*Conditional*, je *connaîtrais*, tu *connaîtrais*, il *connaîtrait*; nous *connaîtrions*, vous *connaîtriez*, ils *connaîtraient*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

— *connais*, qu'il *connaisse*; *connaissons*, *connaissez*, qu'ils *connaissent*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present*, que je *connaisse*, q. tu *connaises*, qu'il *connaisse*; q. n. *connaissons*, q. v. *connaissez*, qu'ils *connaissent*.  
*Imperfect*, que je *connusse*, q. tu *connusses*, qu'il *connût*; q. n. *connussions*, q. v. *connussiez*, qu'ils *connussent*.

\* *Paraître*, to graze, has neither preterit nor imperfect subjunctive.

Infinitive. Coudre, To sew.  
 Gerund. *Cousant*, Sewing.  
 Participle. *Cousu, ue*, Sewed.

This verb, and its derivatives *recoudre* and *découdre*, take *avoir* to form their compound tenses.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
	INDICATIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present</i> ,	je couds,	tu couds,	il coud;	nous cousons,	vous cousez,	ils cousent.
<i>Imperfect</i> ,	je <i>cousais</i> ,	tu <i>cousais</i> ,	il <i>cousait</i> ;	nous <i>cussions</i> ,	vous <i>cousiez</i> ,	ils <i>cousaient</i> .
<i>Preterit</i> ,	je <i>cousis</i> ,	tu <i>cousis</i> ,	il <i>cousit</i> ;	nous <i>cousîmes</i> ,	vous <i>cousîtes</i> ,	ils <i>cousirent</i> .
<i>Future</i> ,	je coudrai,	tu coudras,	il coudra;	nous coudrons,	vous coudrez,	ils coudront.
<i>Conditional</i> ,	je coudrais,	tu coudrais,	il coudrait;	nous coudrions,	vous coudriez,	ils coudraient.
	IMPERATIVE MOOD.					
	—	couds,	qu'il couse;	cousons,	cousez,	qu'ils cousent.
	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present</i> ,	que je couse,	q. tu couses,	qu'il couse;	q. n. cussions,	q. v. cousiez,	qu'ils cousent.
<i>Imperfect</i> ,	que je <i>cousisse</i> ,	q. tu <i>cousisses</i> ,	qu'il <i>cousît</i> ;	q. n. <i>cousissions</i> ,	q. v. <i>cousissiez</i> ,	qu'ils <i>cousissent</i> .

Infinitive.  
Gerund.  
Participle.

Craindre,  
*Craignant,*  
*Craint, ainte,*

To fear.  
Fearing.  
Feared.

This verb, and all those conjugated like it, take *avoir* in their compound tenses, except *se plaindre*, to complain, which takes *être*.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
	INDICATIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present,</i>	je <i>crains,</i>	tu <i>crains,</i>	il <i>crain</i> t;	nous <i>crain</i> sons,	vous <i>crain</i> gez,	ils <i>crain</i> gent.
<i>Imperfect,</i>	je <i>crain</i> gnais,	tu <i>crain</i> gnais,	il <i>crain</i> gnait;	nous <i>crain</i> gnions,	vous <i>crain</i> gniez,	ils <i>crain</i> gnaient.
<i>Preterit,</i>	je <i>crain</i> gnis,	tu <i>crain</i> gnis,	il <i>crain</i> gnit;	nous <i>crain</i> gnîmes,	vous <i>crain</i> gnîtes,	ils <i>crain</i> gnirent.
<i>Future,</i>	je craindrai,	tu craindras,	il craindra;	nous craindrons,	vous craindrez,	ils craindront.
<i>Conditional,</i>	je craindrais,	tu craindrais,	il craindrait;	nous craindrions,	vous craindriez,	ils craindraient.
IMPERATIVE MOOD.						
	—	<i>crains,</i>	qu'il <i>crain</i> ge;	<i>crain</i> sons,	<i>crain</i> gez,	qu'ils <i>crain</i> gent.
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.						
<i>Present,</i>	que je <i>crain</i> gne,	q. tu <i>crain</i> ges,	qu'il <i>crain</i> ge;	q. n. <i>crain</i> gnions,	q. v. <i>crain</i> gniez,	qu'ils <i>crain</i> gent.
<i>Imperfect,</i>	que je <i>crain</i> gnisse,	q. tu <i>crain</i> gnisses,	qu'il <i>crain</i> gnît;	q. n. <i>crain</i> gnissions,	q. v. <i>crain</i> gnissiez,	qu'ils <i>crain</i> gnissent.



Infinitive. Croire,  
Gerund. *Croyant*,  
Participle. *Cru, ue*,  
To believe.  
Believing.  
Believed.

This verb has no derivatives, and takes *avoir* in its compound tenses.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
1	2	3	1	2	3
INDICATIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present</i> , je crois,	tu crois,	il <i>croit</i> ;	nous <i>croyons</i> ,	vous <i>croyez</i> ,	ils croient.
<i>Imperfect</i> , je <i>croyais</i> ,	tu <i>croyais</i> ,	il <i>croyait</i> ;	nous <i>croyions</i> ,	vous <i>croyiez</i> ,	ils <i>croyaient</i> .
<i>Preterit</i> , je <i>crus</i> ,	tu <i>crus</i> ,	il <i>crut</i> ;	nous <i>crûmes</i> ,	vous <i>crûtes</i> ,	ils <i>crurent</i> .
<i>Future</i> , je croirai,	tu croiras,	il croira;	nous croirons,	vous croirez,	ils croiront.
<i>Conditional</i> , je croirais,	tu croirais,	il croirait;	nous croirions,	vous croiriez,	ils croiraient.
IMPERATIVE MOOD.					
—	crois,	qu'il croie;	<i>croyons</i> ,	<i>croyez</i> ,	qu'ils croient.
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present</i> , que je croie,	q. tu croies,	qu'il croie;	q. n. <i>croyions</i> ,	q. v. <i>croyiez</i> ,	qu'ils croient.
<i>Imperfect</i> , que je <i>crusse</i> ,	q. tu <i>crusses</i> ,	qu'il <i>crût</i> ;	q. n. <i>crussions</i> ,	q. v. <i>crussiez</i> ,	qu'ils <i>crussent</i> .

Infinitive.      Croître,  
Gerund.        *Croissant*,  
Participle.    *Crû, âe*,  
To grow.  
Growing.  
Grown.

This verb, and its derivatives *accroître*, *décroître* and *recroître*, take *avoir* in their compound tenses.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
1	2	3	1	2	3
INDICATIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present</i> , <i>Imperfect</i> , <i>Preterit</i> , <i>Future</i> , <i>Conditional</i> , je <i>crois</i> , je <i>croissais</i> , je <i>crus</i> , je croîtrai, je croîtrais,	tu <i>crois</i> , tu <i>croissais</i> , tu <i>crus</i> , tu croîtras, tu croîtrais,	il croît; il <i>croissait</i> ; il <i>crût</i> ; il croîtra, il croîtrait;	nous <i>croissons</i> , nous <i>croissions</i> , nous <i>crîmes</i> , nous croîtrons, nous croîtrions,	vous <i>croissez</i> , vous <i>croissiez</i> , vous <i>crûtes</i> , vous croîtrez, vous croîtriez,	ils <i>croissent</i> . ils <i>croissaient</i> . ils <i>crurent</i> . ils croîtront. ils croîtraient.
_____			IMPERATIVE MOOD.		
			qu'il <i>croisse</i> ;	<i>croissez</i> ,	qu'ils <i>croissent</i> .
			SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.		
<i>Present</i> , <i>Imperfect</i> , que je <i>croisse</i> , que je <i>crusse</i> ,	q. tu <i>croisses</i> , q. tu <i>crusses</i> ,	qu'il <i>croisse</i> ; qu'il <i>crût</i> ;	q. n. <i>croissions</i> , q. n. <i>crussions</i> ,	q. v. <i>croissiez</i> , q. v. <i>crussiez</i> ,	qu'ils <i>croissent</i> . qu'ils <i>crussent</i> .

Infinitive.	Dire,	To say, or tell.
Gerund.	<i>Disant,</i>	Saying.
Participle.	<i>Dit, ite,</i>	Said.

This verb and its derivatives, take *avoir* in their compound tenses, except *se dédire*, to retract, which takes *être*.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
	INDICATIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present,</i>	je dis,	tu dis,	il dit;	nous disons,	vous dites,	ils disent.
<i>Imperfect,</i>	je disais,	tu disais,	il disait;	nous disions,	vous disiez,	ils disaient.
<i>Preterit,</i>	je dis,	tu dis,	il dit;	nous dîmes,	vous dîtes,	ils dirent.
<i>Future,</i>	je dirai,	tu diras,	il dira;	nous dirons,	vous direz,	ils diront.
<i>Conditional,</i>	je dirais,	tu dirais,	il dirait;	nous dirions,	vous diriez,	ils diraient.
	IMPERATIVE MOOD.					
	—	dis,	qu'il dise;	disons,	dites,	qu'ils disent.
	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present,</i>	que je dise,	q. tu dises,	qu'il dise;	q. n. disions,	q. v. disiez,	qu'ils disent.
<i>Imperfect,</i>	que je disse,	q. tu dissés,	qu'il dît;	q. n. dissions,	q. v. dissiez,	qu'ils dissent.

N. B. *Dire* and *redire*, are the only verbs of this branch that make *dites* and *redites*, in the second persons plural of the present indicative and imperative; all the others end in *isez*, and make: *contredisez*, *dédisez*, *interdisez*, *médisez*, and *prédisiez*.

Infinitive.      Ecrire,      To write.  
Gerund.          *Ecrivant,*      Writing.  
Participle.      *Ecrit, ite,*      Written.

This verb, and all those conjugated like it, take *avoir* in their compound tenses.

<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>		
1	2	3		1	2	3
				INDICATIVE MOOD.		
<i>Present,</i>	j'écris,	tu écris,	il écrit;	nous écrivons,	vous écrivez,	ils écrivent.
<i>Imperfect,</i>	j'écrivais,	tu écrivais,	il écrivait;	nous écrivions,	vous écriviez,	ils écrivaient.
<i>Preterit,</i>	j'écrivis,	tu écrivis,	il écrivit;	nous écrivîmes,	vous écrivîtes,	ils écrivirent.
<i>Future,</i>	j'écrirai,	tu écriras,	il écrira;	nous écrirons,	vous écrirez,	ils écriront.
<i>Conditional,</i>	j'écrirais,	tu écrirais,	il écrirait;	nous écririons,	vous écrieriez,	ils écriraient.
				IMPERATIVE MOOD.		
	—	écris,	qu'il écrive;	écrivons,	écrivez,	qu'ils écrivent.
				SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.		
<i>Present,</i>	que j'écrive,	q. tu écrives,	qu'il écrive;	q. n. écrivions,	q. v. écriviez,	qu'ils écrivent.
<i>Imperfect,</i>	que j'écrivisse,	q. tu écrivisses,	qu'il écrivît;	q. n. écrivissions,	q. v. écrivissiez,	qu'ils écrivissent.

Infinitive.	Faire,	To make, to do.
Gerund.	<i>Faisant,*</i>	Making.
Participle.	<i>Fait, te,</i>	Made.

This verb and its derivatives, take *avoir* in their compound tenses, except *se défaire*, to get rid of, which takes *être*.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
	INDICATIVE MOOD.					
Present,	je fais,	tu fais,	il fait;	nous faisons,*	vous faites,	ils font.
Imperfect,	je faisais,*	tu faisais,*	il faisait,*	nous faisions,*	vous faisiez,*	ils faisaient.*
Preterit,	je fis,	tu fis,	il fit;	nous fîmes,	vous fîtes,	ils firent.
Future,	je ferai,	tu feras,	il fera;	nous ferons,	vous ferez,	ils feront.
Conditional,	je ferais,	tu ferais,	il ferait;	nous ferions,	vous feriez,	ils feraient.
	IMPERATIVE MOOD.					
	—	fais,	qu'il fasse;	faisons,*	faites,	qu'ils fassent.
	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.					
Present,	que je fasse,	q. tu fasses,	qu'il fasse;	q. n. fassions,	q. v. fassiez,	qu'ils fassent.
Imperfect,	que je fisse,	q. tu fisses,	qu'il fût;	q. n. fissions,	q. v. fissiez,	qu'ils fissent.

N. B. In all the persons distinguished by an asterisk, (\*) *ai* is silent, and pronounced *e*; some elegant writers, among others Voltaire, use *fésant*, *je fésais*, *nous fésions*, &c.

Infinitive.      Lire,  
Gerund.        *Lisant*,  
Participle.    *Lu, ue*,

To read.  
Reading.  
Read.

This verb, and its derivatives *relire* and *élire*, take *avoir* in their compound tenses.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
	INDICATIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present</i> ,	je lis,	tu lis,	il <i>lit</i> ;	nous <i>lisons</i> ,	vous <i>lisez</i> ,	ils <i>lisent</i> .
<i>Imperfect</i> ,	je <i>lisais</i> ,	tu <i>lisais</i> ,	il <i>lisait</i> ;	nous <i>lisions</i> ,	vous <i>lisiez</i> ,	ils <i>lisaient</i> .
<i>Preterit</i> ,	je <i>lus</i> ,	tu <i>lus</i> ,	il <i>lut</i> ;	nous <i>lîmes</i> ,	vous <i>lîtes</i> ,	ils <i>lurent</i> .
<i>Future</i> ,	je lirai,	tu lirais,	il lira;	nous lirons,	vous lirez,	ils liront.
<i>Conditional</i> ,	je lirais,	tu lirais,	il lirait;	nous lirions,	vous liriez,	ils liraient.
	IMPERATIVE MOOD.					
	—	lis,	qu'il <i>lise</i> ;	<i>lisons</i> ,	<i>lisez</i> ,	qu'ils <i>lisent</i> .
	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present</i> ,	que je <i>lise</i> ,	q. tu <i>lises</i> ,	qu'il <i>lise</i> ;	q. n. <i>lisions</i> ,	q. v. <i>lisiez</i> ,	qu'ils <i>lisent</i> .
<i>Imperfect</i> ,	que je <i>lusse</i> ,	q. tu <i>lusses</i> ,	qu'il <i>lût</i> ;	q. n. <i>lussions</i> ,	q. v. <i>lussiez</i> ,	qu'ils <i>lussent</i> .



Infinitive.      Maudire,      To curse.  
Gerund.        *Maudissant,*      Cursing.  
Participle.    *Maudit, ite,*      Cursed.

This verb has no derivatives, and takes *avoir* to form its compound tenses.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
1	2	3	1	2	3
INDICATIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present,</i> <i>Imperfect,</i> <i>10 Preterit,</i> <i>Future,</i> <i>Conditional,</i>	je maudis, tu maudis, il <i>maudit</i> ; je <i>maudissais</i> , tu <i>maudissais</i> , il <i>maudissait</i> ; je <i>maudis</i> , tu <i>maudis</i> , il <i>maudit</i> ; je <i>maudirai</i> , tu <i>maudirai</i> , il <i>maudira</i> ; je <i>maudirais</i> , tu <i>maudirais</i> , il <i>maudirait</i> ;	je maudis, tu maudis, il <i>maudit</i> ; je <i>maudissais</i> , tu <i>maudissais</i> , il <i>maudissait</i> ; je <i>maudis</i> , tu <i>maudis</i> , il <i>maudit</i> ; je <i>maudirai</i> , tu <i>maudirai</i> , il <i>maudira</i> ; je <i>maudirais</i> , tu <i>maudirais</i> , il <i>maudirait</i> ;	nous <i>maudissons</i> , vous <i>maudissez</i> , ils <i>maudissent</i> . nous <i>maudissions</i> , vous <i>maudissiez</i> , ils <i>maudissaient</i> . nous <i>maudîmes</i> , vous <i>maudîtes</i> , ils <i>maudirent</i> . nous <i>maudirons</i> , vous <i>maudirez</i> , ils <i>maudiront</i> . nous <i>maudirions</i> , vous <i>maudiriez</i> , ils <i>maudiraient</i> .		
IMPERATIVE MOOD.					
que je <i>maudisse</i> , q. tu <i>maudisses</i> , q. il <i>maudisse</i> ;			maudissez, qu'ils <i>maudissent</i> .		
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.					
que je <i>maudisse</i> , q. tu <i>maudisses</i> , q. il <i>maudisse</i> ;			maudissiez, qu'ils <i>maudissiez</i> .		
<i>Present,</i> <i>Imperfect,</i>					

Infinitive.  
Gerund.  
Participle.

Mettre,  
Mettant,  
*Mis, ise,*

To put.  
Putting.  
Put.

This verb and its derivatives, take *avoir* in their compound tenses, except *se démettre* and *se remettre*, which take *être*.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
	INDICATIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present,</i>	je <i>met</i> s,	tu <i>met</i> s,	il <i>met</i> ;	nous mettons,	vous mettez,	ils mettent.
<i>Imperfect,</i>	je mettais,	tu mettais,	il mettait;	nous mettions,	vous mettiez,	ils mettaient.
<i>Preterit,</i>	je <i>mis</i> ,	tu <i>mis</i> ,	il <i>mit</i> ;	nous <i>mîmes</i> ,	vous <i>mîtes</i> ,	ils <i>mirent</i> .
<i>Future,</i>	je mettrai,	tu mettras,	il mettra;	nous mettrons,	vous mettrez,	ils mettront.
<i>Conditional,</i>	je mettrais,	tu mettrais,	il mettrait;	nous mettrions,	vous mettriez,	ils mettraient.
	IMPERATIVE MOOD.					
	—	<i>met</i> s,	qu'il mette;	mettons,	mettez,	qu'ils mettent.
	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present,</i>	que je mette,	q. tu mettes,	qu'il mette;	q. n. mettions,	q. v. mettiez,	qu'ils mettent.
<i>Imperfect,</i>	que je <i>mis</i> se,	q. tu <i>miss</i> es,	qu'il <i>mît</i> ;	q. n. <i>missions</i> ,	q. v. <i>missiez</i> ,	qu'ils <i>missent</i> .

Infinitive.      Moudre,      To grind, (corn, &c.)  
 Gerund.        *Moulant,*      Grinding.  
 Participle.    *Moulu, ue,*      Ground.

This verb, and its derivatives *remoudre*, *émoudre*, and *réoudre*, take *avoir* in their compound tenses.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

1

2

3

1

2

3

INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present,*      je mouds,  
*Imperfect,*    je *moulais*,  
*Preterit,*      je *moulus*,  
*Future,*        je moudrai,  
*Conditional,* je moudrais,

tu mouds,  
 tu *moulais*,  
 tu *moulus*,  
 tu moudras,  
 tu moudrais,

il moud;  
 il *moulait*;  
 il *moulut*;  
 il moudra;  
 il moudrait;

nous *moulons*,  
 nous *moulions*,  
 nous *moulûmes*,  
 nous moudrons,  
 nous moudrions,

vous *moulez*,      ils *moulent*.  
 vous *mouliez*,    ils *moulaient*.  
 vous *moulûtes*,    ils *moulurent*.  
 vous moudrez,    ils moudront.  
 vous moudriez,    ils moudraient.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

mouds,

qu'il *moule*;

*moulez*,      qu'ils *moulent*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present,*  
*Imperfect,*

que je *moule*,      q. tu *moules*,  
 que je *moulusse*, q. tu *moulusses*,

qu'il *moule*;  
 qu'il *moulût*;

q. v. *mouliez*,      qu'ils *moulent*.  
 q. n. *moulussions*, q. v. *moulussiez*, qu'ils *moulussent*

Infinitive.      Naître,  
Gerund.        *Naissant*,  
Participle.    *Né, ée,*  
To be born.  
Being born.  
Been born.

This verb takes *être*, to be, in its compound tenses: Its derivative is *renâître*, which is defective.

<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>		
1	2	3	1	2	3	
			INDICATIVE MOOD.			
<i>Present</i> , <i>Imperfect</i> , <i>Preterit</i> , <i>Future</i> , <i>Conditional</i> , je <i>nais</i> , je <i>naissais</i> , je <i>naquis</i> , je <i>naîtraî</i> , je <i>naîtrais</i> ;	tu <i>nais</i> , tu <i>naissais</i> , tu <i>naquis</i> , tu <i>naîtras</i> , tu <i>naîtrais</i> ,	il <i>nait</i> ; il <i>naissait</i> ; il <i>naquit</i> ; il <i>naîtra</i> ; il <i>naîtrait</i> ;	nous <i>naïssons</i> , nous <i>naïssions</i> , nous <i>naquîmes</i> , nous <i>naîtrons</i> , nous <i>naîtrions</i> ,	vous <i>naïssiez</i> , vous <i>naïssiez</i> , vous <i>naquâtes</i> , vous <i>naîtrez</i> , vous <i>naîtrez</i> ,	ils <i>naissent</i> . ils <i>naïssaient</i> . ils <i>naquirent</i> . ils <i>naîtront</i> . ils <i>naîtraient</i> .	
			IMPERATIVE MOOD.			
			qu'il <i>naïsse</i> ;	<i>naïssons</i> ,	<i>naïssiez</i> ,	qu'ils <i>naïssent</i> .
			SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.			
<i>Present</i> , <i>Imperfect</i> , que je <i>naïsse</i> , que je <i>naquisse</i> ,	q. tu <i>naïsses</i> , q. tu <i>naquisses</i> ,	qu'il <i>naïsse</i> ; qu'il <i>naquît</i> ;	q. n. <i>naïssions</i> , q. n. <i>naquissions</i> ,	q. v. <i>naïssiez</i> , q. v. <i>naquissiez</i> ,	qu'ils <i>naïssent</i> . qu'ils <i>naquissent</i> .	

Infinitive. To please.  
Gerund. Pleasing.  
Participle. Pleased.  
Plaire, *Plaisant*,  
*Plu*, —,

This verb, and its derivatives *complaire* and *déplaire*, as well as *taire*, to conceal, take *avoir* in their compound tenses; but all the others take *être*.

Singular.			Plural.		
1	2	3	1	2	3
INDICATIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present</i> , <i>Imperfect</i> , <i>Preterit</i> , <i>Future</i> , <i>Conditional</i> ,	je plais, je <i>plaisais</i> , je <i>plus</i> , je plairai, je plairais,	il <i>plait</i> ; il <i>plaisait</i> ; il <i>plut</i> ; il plaira; il plairait;	nous <i>plaisons</i> , nous <i>plaisions</i> , nous <i>plâmes</i> , nous plairons, nous plairions,	vous <i>plaisez</i> , vous <i>plaisiez</i> , vous <i>plûtes</i> , vous plairez, vous plairiez,	ils <i>plaisent</i> . ils <i>plaisaient</i> . ils <i>plurent</i> . ils plairont. ils plairaient.
IMPERATIVE MOOD.					
—	plais,	qu'il <i>plaise</i> ;	<i>plaisons</i> ,	<i>plaisez</i> ,	qu'ils <i>plaisent</i> .
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present</i> , <i>Imperfect</i> ,	que je <i>plaise</i> , que je <i>plusse</i> ,	qu'il <i>plaise</i> ; qu'il <i>plût</i> ;	q. n. <i>plaisons</i> , q. n. <i>plussions</i> ,	q. v. <i>plaisiez</i> , q. v. <i>plussiez</i> ,	qu'ils <i>plaisent</i> . qu'ils <i>plussent</i> .

Infinitive  
Gerund.  
Participle.

Prendre,  
*Prenant*,  
*Pris, isc*,

To take.  
Taking.  
Taken.

'This verb and its derivatives, take *avoir* in their compound tenses, except *se méprendre*, to mistake, which takes *être*.

Singular.			Plural.		
1	2	3	1	2	3
INDICATIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present</i> , je prends,	tu prends,	il prend;	nous prenons,	vous prenez,	ils prennent.
<i>Imperfect</i> , je prenais,	tu prenais,	il prenait;	nous prenions,	vous preniez,	ils prenaient.
<i>Preterit</i> , je pris,	tu pris,	il prit;	nous prîmes,	vous prîtes,	ils prîrent.
<i>Future</i> , je prendrai,	tu prendras,	il prendra;	nous prendrons,	vous prendrez,	ils prendront.
<i>Conditional</i> , je prendrais,	tu prendrais,	il prendrait;	nous prendrions,	vous prendriez,	ils prendraient.
IMPERATIVE MOOD.					
—			prenons,	prenez,	qu'ils prennent.
			qu'il prenne;		
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present</i> , que je prenne,	q. tu prennes,	qu'il prenne;	q. n. prenions,	q. v. preniez,	qu'ils prennent.
<i>Imperfect</i> , que je prisse,	q. tu prisses,	qu'il prît;	q. n. prissions,	q. v. prissiez,	qu'ils prissent.



Infinitive. To laugh.  
Gerund. Laughing.  
Participle. Laughed.  
*Rire, Riant, Ri, —,*

This verb, and its derivative *sourire*, to smile, take *avoir* in their compound tenses.

*Singular.*

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
	INDICATIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present,</i>	je ris,	tu ris,	il <i>rit</i> ;	nous rions,	vous riez,	ils rient.
<i>Imperfect,</i>	je riaais,	tu riaais,	il riaait;	nous riaions,	vous riaiez,	ils riaient.
<i>Preterit,</i>	je ris,	tu ris,	il <i>rit</i> ;	nous rîmes,	vous rîtes,	ils <i>rirent</i> .
<i>Future,</i>	je rirai,	tu riras,	il rira;	nous rirons,	vous rirez,	ils riront.
<i>Conditional,</i>	je rirais,	tu rirais,	il rirait;	nous ririons,	vous ririez,	ils riraient.
	IMPERATIVE MOOD.					
	—	ris,	qu'il rie;	rions,	riez,	qu'ils rient.
	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present,</i>	que je rie,	q. tu ries,	qu'il rie;	q. n. rions,	q. v. riez,	qu'ils rient.
<i>Imperfect,</i>	que je risse,	q. tu risses,	qu'il rît;	q. n. rissions,	q. v. rissiez,	qu'ils rissent.

Infinitive. To follow.  
Gerund. Following.  
Participle. Followed.  
*Suivi, ie,*

This verb, and its derivative *poursuivre*, to pursue, take *avoir* in their compound tenses.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
1	2	3	1	2	3
			INDICATIVE MOOD.		
<i>Present,</i> <i>Imperfect,</i> <i>Preterit,</i> <i>Future,</i> <i>Conditional,</i>	je <i>suis</i> , je <i>suivais</i> , je <i>suivis</i> , je <i>suivrai</i> , je <i>suivrais</i> ,	il <i>suit</i> ; il <i>suivait</i> ; il <i>suivit</i> ; il <i>suivra</i> ; il <i>suivrait</i> ;	nous <i>suivons</i> , nous <i>suivions</i> , nous <i>suivîmes</i> , nous <i>suivrons</i> , nous <i>suivrions</i> ,	vous <i>suivez</i> , vous <i>suiviez</i> , vous <i>suivîtes</i> , vous <i>suivrez</i> , vous <i>suivriez</i> ,	ils <i>suivent</i> . ils <i>suivaient</i> . ils <i>suivirent</i> . ils <i>suivront</i> . ils <i>suivraient</i> .
			IMPERATIVE MOOD.		
			qu'il <i>suive</i> ;	suivons,	suivez,
			SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.		
<i>Present,</i> <i>Imperfect,</i>	que je <i>suive</i> , que je <i>suivisse</i> ,	q. tu <i>suives</i> , q. tu <i>suivisses</i> ,	q. n. <i>suivions</i> , q. n. <i>suivissions</i> ,	q. v. <i>suiviez</i> , q. v. <i>suivissiez</i> ,	qu'ils <i>suivent</i> . qu'ils <i>suivissent</i> .

Infinitive.	Traire,*	To milk.
Gerund.	<i>Trayant,</i>	Milking.
Participle.	<i>Trait, te,</i>	Milked.

This verb and its derivatives, take *avoir* to form their compound tenses.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
1	2	3	1	2	3
INDICATIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present,</i> <i>Imperfect,</i> <i>Preterit,</i> <i>Future,</i> <i>Conditional,</i>	je trais, je <i>trayais</i> , _____ je trairai, je <i>trairais</i> , _____	il <i>trait</i> ; il <i>trayait</i> ; _____ il <i>traira</i> ; il <i>trairait</i> ; _____	nous <i>trayons</i> , nous <i>trayions</i> , _____ nous <i>trairons</i> , nous <i>trairions</i> , _____	vous <i>trayez</i> , vous <i>trayiez</i> , _____ vous <i>trairez</i> , vous <i>trairiez</i> , _____	ils <i>traient</i> . ils <i>trayaient</i> . _____ ils <i>trairont</i> . ils <i>trairaient</i> . _____
IMPERATIVE MOOD.					
_____	trais,	qu'il <i>traie</i> ;	<i>trayons</i> ,	<i>trayez</i> ,	qu'ils <i>traient</i> .
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present,</i> <i>Imperfect,</i>	que je <i>traie</i> , _____	qu'il <i>traie</i> ; _____	q. n. <i>trayions</i> ,	q. v. <i>trayiez</i> ,	qu'ils <i>traient</i> . _____

\* *Traire*, and all the compounds of this verb, such as *distraindre*, *extraire*, *soustraire*, &c. have neither *preterit* nor *imperfect subjunctive* and they are chiefly used in the compound tenses.

Infinitive.	Vaincre,	To vanquish, or conquer.
Gerund.	<i>Vainquant,</i>	Vanquishing.
Participle.	Vaincu, ue,	Vanquished.

This verb, and its derivative *convaincre*, to convince, take *avoir* in their compound tenses.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
1	2	3	1	2	3
INDICATIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present,</i>	je vaines,	il vaine;	nous vainquons,	vous vainquez,	ils vainquent.
<i>Imperfect,</i>	je <i>vainquais,</i>	il <i>vainquait;</i>	nous vainquions,	vous vainquiez,	ils vainquaient.
<i>Preterit,</i>	je vainquis,	il vainquit;	nous vainquîmes,	vous vainquîtes,	ils vainquirent.
<i>Future,</i>	je vaincrai,	il vaincra;	nous vaincrons,	vous vaincrez,	ils vaincront.
<i>Conditional,</i>	je vaincrais,	il vaincrait;	nous vaincrons,	vous vaincriez,	ils vaincraient.
IMPERATIVE MOOD.					
—	vaines,	qu'il <i>vainque;</i>	vainquons,	vainquez,	qu'ils vainquent.
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.					
<i>Present,</i>	que je <i>vainque,</i>	qu'il <i>vainque,</i>	q. n. vainquions,	q. v. vainquiez,	qu'ils vainquent.
<i>Imperfect,</i>	que je <i>vainquisse,</i>	qu'il <i>vainquît;</i>	q. n. vainquissions,	q. v. vainquissiez,	qu'ils vainquissent.

Infinitive.  
Gerund.  
Participle.

Vivre,  
Vivant,  
*Vécu, ue,*

To live.  
Living.  
Lived.

This verb, and its derivatives *revivre* and *survivre*, take *avoir* in their compound tenses.

Singular.				Plural.		
1	2	3		1	2	3
				INDICATIVE MOOD.		
<i>Present,</i> <i>Imperfect,</i> <i>Preterit,</i> <i>Future,</i> <i>Conditional,</i>	je <i>vis,</i> je vivais, je <i>vécus,</i> je vivrai, je vivrais,	tu <i>vis,</i> tu vivais, tu <i>vécus,</i> tu vivras, tu vivrais,	il <i>vit,</i> il vivait; il <i>vécut,</i> il vivra; il vivrait;	nous vivons, nous vivions, nous <i>vécûmes,</i> nous vivrons, nous vivrions,	vous vivez, vous viviez, vous <i>vécûtes,</i> vous vivrez, vous vivriez,	ils vivent. ils vivaient. ils <i>vécurent.</i> ils vivront. ils vivraient.
				IMPERATIVE MOOD.		
				qu'il vive;	vivons, vivez,	qu'ils vivent.
				SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.		
<i>Present,</i> <i>Imperfect,</i>	que je vive, que je <i>vécusse,</i>	q. tu vives, q. tu <i>vécusses,</i>	qu'il vive; qu'il <i>vécût;</i>	q. n. vivions, q. n. <i>vécussions,</i>	q. v. viviez, q. v. <i>vécussiez,</i>	qu'ils vivent. qu'ils <i>vécussent.</i>

## A NEW ARRANGEMENT

*Of all the irregular verbs in the French language, with references to the example after which they are to be conjugated.*

### FIRST CONJUGATION.

* <i>S'en aller,</i>	To go away,	} Conjugated like } <i>aller</i> , to go.— <i>p.</i> 34.
----------------------	-------------	---

### SECOND CONJUGATION.

<i>Conquérir,</i>	To conquer,	} Like <i>acquérir</i> , to } acquire.— <i>p.</i> 35.
<i>Requérir,</i>	To require,	
* <i>S'enquérir,</i>	To inquire,	} Like <i>assaillir</i> , to } assault.— <i>p.</i> 36.
<i>Tressaillir,</i>	To start,	
<i>Rebouillir,</i>	To boil again,	} Like <i>bouillir</i> , to } boil.— <i>p.</i> 37.
* <i>Accourir,</i>	To run to,	} Like <i>courir</i> , to } run.— <i>p.</i> 38.
<i>Concourir,</i>	To concur,	
<i>Discourir,</i>	To discourse,	
<i>Encourir,</i>	To incur,	
<i>Parcourir,</i>	To run over,	
<i>Recourir,</i>	To have recourse,	
<i>Secourir,</i>	To assist,	} Like <i>cueillir</i> , to ga- } ther.— <i>p.</i> 39.
<i>Accueillir,</i>	To welcome,	
<i>Recueillir,</i>	To collect,	
<i>Endormir,</i>	To make sleep,	} Like <i>dormir</i> , to } sleep.— <i>p.</i> 40.
* <i>S'endormir,</i>	To fall asleep,	
* <i>Se rendormir,</i>	To fall asleep again,	
<i>Mentir,</i>	To lie,	
<i>Démentir,</i>	To give the lie,	
* <i>Se démentir,</i>	To belie,	
* <i>Partir,</i>	To set out,	
* <i>Repartir,</i>	To set out again,	
<i>Répartir,</i>	To distribute,	}
<i>Départir,</i>	To impart,	
* <i>Se départir,</i>	To recede,	}

REMARK. All the verbs marked with an *asterisk*, (\*) take the auxiliary *être*, instead of *avoir*, in their compound tenses.



* <i>Sortir</i> ,	To go out,	} Conjugated like <i>dormir</i> , to sleep. p. 40.
* <i>Ressortir</i> ,	To go out again,	
<i>Sentir</i> ,	To feel, or smell,	
<i>Consentir</i> ,	To consent,	
<i>Pressentir</i> ,	To foresee,	
<i>Ressentir</i> ,	To resent,	} Like <i>fuir</i> , to flee. p. 41.
* <i>Se repentir</i> ,	To repent,	
<i>Servir</i> ,	To serve,	
* <i>Se servir</i> ,	To make use,	
<i>Desservir</i> ,	To do an ill office,	
* <i>S'enfuir</i> ,	To run away,	} Like <i>offrir</i> , to offer. p. 43.
<i>Couvrir</i> ,	To cover,	
<i>Découvrir</i> ,	To uncover,	
<i>Recouvrir</i> ,	To cover again,	
<i>Ouvrir</i> ,	To open,	
<i>Souffrir</i> ,	To suffer,	} Like <i>tenir</i> , to hold.—p. 44.
* <i>S'abstenir</i> ,	To abstain,	
<i>Appartenir</i> ,	To belong,	
<i>Contenir</i> ,	To contain,	
<i>Détenir</i> ,	To detain,	
<i>Entretenir</i> ,	To entertain,	} Like <i>vêtir</i> , to clothe.—p. 45.]
* <i>S'entretenir</i> ,	To converse,	
<i>Maintenir</i> ,	To maintain,	
<i>Obtenir</i> ,	To obtain,	
<i>Retenir</i> ,	To retain,	
<i>Soutenir</i> ,	To sustain,	}
* <i>Venir</i> ,	To come,	
* <i>Devenir</i> ,	To become,	
* <i>Convenir</i> ,	To agree,	
* <i>Contrevenir</i> ,	To contravene,	
* <i>Disconvenir</i> ,	To disagree,	}
* <i>Intervenir</i> ,	To intervene,	
* <i>Parvenir</i> ,	To attain,	
<i>Prévenir</i> ,	To anticipate,	
* <i>Provenir</i> ,	To proceed,	
* <i>Revenir</i> ,	To come back,	}
* <i>Redevenir</i> ,	To become again,	
* <i>Se souvenir</i> ,	To remember,	
* <i>Se ressouvenir</i> ,	To recollect,	
<i>Subvenir</i> ,	To assist,	
* <i>Survenir</i> ,	To happen,	}
<i>Dévêtir</i> ,	To undress,	
* <i>Se dévêtir</i> ,	To divest one's self,	

<i>Revêtir,</i>	To invest,	} Conjugated like <i>vêtir</i> , to clothe.
* <i>Se Revêtir,</i>	To put on,	
* <i>Se vêtir,</i>	To dress one's self.	

p. 45.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

* <i>S'asseoir,</i>	To sit down,	} Like <i>asseoir</i> , to set.
<i>Rasseoir,</i>	To settle, or fix,	
* <i>Se rasseoir,</i>	To sit down again,	} p. 46.
<i>Emouvoir,</i>	To affect,	
<i>Promouvoir,</i>	To promote,	} Like <i>mouvoir</i> , to move.—p. 48.
<i>Revaloir,</i>	To return like for like,	
<i>Equivaloir,</i>	To be equivalent,	} Like <i>valoir</i> , to be worth.—p. 55.
<i>Revoir,</i>	To see again,	
<i>Entrevoir,</i>	To have a glimpse of,	} Like <i>voir</i> , to see.

p. 56.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

<i>Dissoudre,</i>	To dissolve,	} Like <i>absoudre</i> , to absolve.—p. 58.
<i>Résoudre,</i>	To resolve,	
<i>Abattre,</i>	To pull down,	}
<i>Débattre,</i>	To debate,	
* <i>Se débattre,</i>	To struggle,	} Like <i>battre</i> , to beat.
<i>Combattre,</i>	To fight,	
<i>Rabattre,</i>	To abate, or humble,	} p. 59.
<i>Rebattre,</i>	To beat again,	
<i>Exclure,</i>	To exclude,	} Like <i>conclure</i> , to conclude.—p. 61.
<i>Déduire,</i>	To deduct,	
<i>Enduire,</i>	} To plaster, (with mortar.)	} Like <i>conduire</i> , to conduct.—p. 62.
<i>Induire,</i>		
<i>Introduire,</i>	To introduce,	
<i>Produire,</i>	To produce,	
<i>Réduire,</i>	To reduce,	
<i>Reconduire,</i>	To reconduct,	
<i>Séduire,</i>	To seduce,	
<i>Traduire,</i>	To translate,	
<i>Construire,</i>	To construct,	
<i>Détruire,</i>	To destroy,	
<i>Instruire,</i>	To instruct,	
<i>Cuire,</i>	To bake, to cook,	
<i>Recuire,</i>	To bake again,	
<i>Nuire,</i>	To hurt,	
<i>Luire,</i>	To shine,	
<i>Reluire,</i>	To glitter,	
<i>Suffire,</i>	To suffice,	} Like <i>confire</i> , to pickle.—p. 63.

<i>Méconnaître,</i>	To take for another,	}	Conjugated like <i>connaître</i> , to know, (a person.)— <i>p.</i> 64.
<i>Reconnaître,</i>	To know again,		
<i>Paraître,</i>	To appear,		
† <i>Comparaître,</i>	To appear, (before a judge,)	}	Like <i>coudre</i> , to sew. <i>p.</i> 65.
† <i>Apparaître,</i>	To show one's self,		
† <i>Disparaître,</i>	To disappear,		
<i>Paître,</i>	To graze,	}	Like <i>craindre</i> , to fear.— <i>p.</i> 66.
<i>Repaître,</i>	To feed, or eat,		
* <i>Se repaître,</i>	To feed upon,		
<i>Recoudre,</i>	To sew again,	}	Like <i>croître</i> , to grow.— <i>p.</i> 68.
<i>Découdre,</i>	To unsew,		
<i>Contraindre,</i>	To constrain,		
<i>Plaindre,</i>	To pity,	}	Like <i>dire</i> , to say, or tell.— <i>p.</i> 69.
* <i>Se plaindre,</i>	To complain,		
<i>Joindre,</i>	To join,		
<i>Enjoindre,</i>	To enjoin,	}	Like <i>écrire</i> , to write.— <i>p.</i> 70.
<i>Oindre,</i>	To anoint,		
<i>Astreindre,</i>	To subject,		
<i>Atteindre,</i>	To overtake,	}	
<i>Ceindre,</i>	To gird,		
<i>Enceindre,</i>	To enclose,		
<i>Eteindre,</i>	To put out,	}	
<i>Feindre,</i>	To pretend,		
<i>Peindre,</i>	To paint,		
<i>Restreindre,</i>	To restrain,	}	
<i>Teindre,</i>	To dye,		
<i>Accroître,</i>	To increase,		
<i>Décroître,</i>	To decrease,	}	
<i>Recroître,</i>	To grow again,		
<i>Contredire,</i>	To contradict,		
<i>Dédire,</i>	To unsay,	}	
* <i>Se dédire,</i>	To retract,		
<i>Interdire,</i>	To forbid,		
<i>Médire,</i>	To slander,	}	
<i>Prédire,</i>	To foretell,		
<i>Redire,</i>	To say, or tell again,		
<i>Circonscrire,</i>	To circumscribe,	}	
<i>Décrire,</i>	To describe,		
<i>Inscrire,</i>	To inscribe,		
<i>Prescrire,</i>	To prescribe,	}	
<i>Proscrire,</i>	To proscribe,		
<i>Récrire,</i>	To write again,		

† *Comparaître*, *apparaître*, and *disparaître*, take both *avoir* and *être* in their compound tenses.

<i>Souscrire,</i>	To subscribe,	} Conjugated like <i>écrire</i> , to write. p. 70.
<i>Transcrire,</i>	To transcribe,	
<i>Contrefaire,</i>	To counterfeit,	} Like <i>faire</i> , to make, to do.—p. 71.
<i>Défaire,</i>	To undo, or defeat,	
<i>Redéfaire,</i>	To undo again,	
* <i>Se défaire,</i>	To get rid of,	
<i>Refaire,</i>	To make again,	
<i>Satisfaire,</i>	To satisfy,	} Like <i>lire</i> , to read. p. 72.
<i>Surfaire,</i>	To exact,	
<i>Elire,</i>	To elect,	
<i>Relire,</i>	To read again,	
<i>Admettre,</i>	To admit,	
<i>Commettre,</i>	To commit,	} Like <i>mettre</i> , to put. p. 74.
<i>Compromettre,</i>	To compromise,	
<i>Démettre,</i>	To remove,	
* <i>Se démettre,</i>	To resign,	
<i>Omettre,</i>	To omit,	
<i>Permettre,</i>	To permit,	} Like <i>moudre</i> , to grind, (corn, &c.) p. 75.
<i>Promettre,</i>	To promise,	
<i>Remettre,</i>	To remit,	
* <i>Se remettre,</i>	To recover,	
<i>Soumettre,</i>	To submit,	
<i>Transmettre,</i>	To transmit,	} Like <i>moudre</i> , to grind, (corn, &c.) p. 75.
<i>Remoudre,</i>	} To grind again, (corn, &c.)	
<i>Emoudre,</i>		
<i>Rémoudre,</i>	} To grind again, (knives, &c.)	} Like <i>plaire</i> , to please.—p. 77.
* <i>Se plaire,</i>		
<i>Complaire,</i>	To humour,	
* <i>Se complaire,</i>	To delight in,	
<i>Déplaire,</i>	To displease,	
* <i>Se déplaire,</i>	To be displeased with,	} Like <i>prendre</i> , to take.—p. 78.
<i>Taire,</i>	To conceal,	
* <i>Se taire,</i>	To be silent,	
<i>Apprendre,</i>	To learn,	
<i>Comprendre,</i>	To understand,	
<i>Désapprendre,</i>	To unlearn,	} Like <i>rire</i> , to laugh. p. 79.
<i>Entreprendre,</i>	To undertake,	
* <i>Se méprendre,</i>	To mistake,	
<i>Reprendre,</i>	To take again,	
<i>Surprendre,</i>	To surprise,	
<i>Sourire,</i>	To smile,	} Like <i>suivre</i> , to fol- low.—p. 80.
<i>Poursuivre,</i>	To pursue,	

<i>Abstraire,</i>	To abstract,	} Conjugated like <i>traire</i> , to milk. p. 81.
<i>Attirer,</i>	To allure,	
<i>Distraire,</i>	To divert,	
<i>Extraire,</i>	To extract,	
<i>Rentreindre,</i>	To fine-draw,	
<i>Retraire,</i>	To redeem,	
<i>Soustraire,</i>	To subtract,	} Like <i>vaincre</i> , to vanquish.—p. 82.
<i>Convaincre,</i>	To convince,	
<i>Revivre,</i>	To revive,	
<i>Survivre,</i>	To survive,	} Like <i>vivre</i> , to live. p. 83.



## OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Impersonal verbs are so called, because they are only used in the third person singular of each tense, with the personal pronoun *il*, it.

### EXAMPLES.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

##### *Present.*

<i>Pleuvoir,</i>	To rain.
<i>Neiger,</i>	To snow.
<i>Grêler,</i>	To hail.
<i>Tonner,</i>	To thunder.
† <i>Éclairer,</i>	To lighten.
<i>Geler,</i>	To freeze.
<i>Dégeler,</i>	To thaw.
<i>Bruiner,</i>	To drizzle.
* <i>Avenir,</i>	} To happen.
* <i>Arriver,</i>	
* <i>Résulter,</i>	To result.
* <i>S'ensuivre,</i>	To follow.
<i>Importer,</i>	To concern.
<i>Sembler,</i>	To seem.
<i>Convenir,</i>	To be proper.
<i>Paraître,</i>	To appear.
<i>Suffire,</i>	To suffice.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### *Present.*

<i>Il pleut,</i>	It rains.
<i>Il neige,</i>	It snows.
<i>Il grêle,</i>	It hails.
<i>Il tonne,</i>	It thunders.
<i>Il éclaire,</i>	It lightens.
<i>Il gèle,</i>	It freezes.
<i>Il dégèle,</i>	It thaws.
<i>Il bruine,</i>	It drizzles.
<i>Il avient,</i>	} It happens.
<i>Il arrive,</i>	
<i>Il résulte,</i>	It results.
<i>Il s'ensuit,</i>	It follows.
<i>Il importe,</i>	} It concerns. It matters.
<i>Il semble,</i>	
<i>Il convient,</i>	It is proper.
<i>Il paraît,</i>	It appears.
<i>Il suffit,</i>	It suffices.

† More commonly *faire des éclairs*, *il fait des éclairs* &c.

\* These four impersonal verbs take *être* in their compound tenses, but all the others take *avoir*.

## CONJUGATION OF THE IMPERSONAL VERB,

*Y avoir*, there to be.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present,	<i>Y avoir</i> ,	There to be.
Compound,	<i>Y avoir eu</i> ,	There to have been.
Gerund,	<i>Y ayant</i> ,	There being.
Compound,	<i>Y ayant eu</i> ,	There having been.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present,	<i>Il y a</i> ,	There is, <i>or</i> there are.‡
Compound,	<i>Il y a eu</i> ,	There has been, <i>or</i> there have been.‡
Imperfect,	<i>Il y avait</i> ,	There was, <i>or</i> there were.‡
Compound,	<i>Il y avait eu</i> ,	There had been.
Preterit,	<i>Il y eut</i> ,	There was, <i>or</i> there were.‡
Compound,	<i>Il y eut eu</i> ,	There had been.
Future,	<i>Il y aura</i> ,	There will be.
Compound,	<i>Il y aura eu</i> ,	There will have been.
Conditional,	<i>Il y aurait</i> ,	There would be.
Compound,	<i>Il y aurait eu</i> ,	There would have been.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

—————	<i>Qu'il y ait</i> ,	Let there be.
-------	----------------------	---------------

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present,	<i>Qu'il y ait</i> ,	That there may be.
Compound,	<i>Qu'il y ait eu</i> ,	That there may have been.
Imperfect,	<i>Qu'il y eût</i> ,	That there might be.
Compound,	<i>Qu'il y eût eu</i> ,	That there might have been.

‡ This verb, in English, is used in the plural, when followed by a substantive plural; but, in French, it remains always in the singular. Ex: *Il y a un homme*, there is a man; *il y a deux hommes*, there are two men, &c. In speaking of time, *il y a* is translated by the words "ago, or since;" as, *il y a trois jours* three days ago, or since; *il y a dix ans*, ten years ago; *il y a longtemps*, it is long ago.



## CONJUGATION OF THE IMPERSONAL VERB,

*Falloir*, to be necessary, or needful.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present,	<i>Falloir</i> ,	To be necessary.
Compound,	<i>Avoir fallu</i> ,	To have been necessary.
Gerund,	—————	—————
Compound,	<i>Ayant fallu</i> ,	Having been necessary.



## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present,	<i>Il faut,</i>	It is necessary.
Compound,	<i>Il a fallu,</i>	It has been necessary.
Imperfect,	<i>Il fallait,</i>	It was necessary.
Compound,	<i>Il avait fallu,</i>	It had been necessary.
Preterit,	<i>Il fallut,</i>	It was necessary.
Compound,	<i>Il eut fallu,</i>	It had been necessary.
Future,	<i>Il faudra,</i>	It will be necessary.
Compound,	<i>Il aura fallu,</i>	It will have been necessary.
Conditional,	<i>Il faudrait,</i>	It would be necessary.
Compound,	<i>Il aurait fallu,</i>	It would have been necessary.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present,	<i>Qu'il faille,</i>	That it may be necessary.
Compound,	<i>Qu'il ait fallu,</i>	That it may have been necessary.
Imperfect,	<i>Qu'il fallût,</i>	That it might be necessary.
Compound,	<i>Qu'il eût fallu,</i>	That it might have been necessary.

REMARK. The English verb *must*, which is not impersonal, is generally translated by one of the tenses of *falloir*, followed by the conjunction *que*, prefixed to another verb in the subjunctive mood. Ex: *Il faut que j'écrive*, I must write; *il faut que vous veniez*, you must come.



## CONJUGATION OF THE IMPERSONAL VERB,

*Etre*, to be.

The verb *être*, to be, becomes impersonal, when followed by a substantive, or one of the *personal*, *possessive* or *demonstrative* pronouns. The English pronoun *it*, is then translated in French, by *ce*, whether speaking of persons or things.

## EXAMPLE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present,	<i>C'est, (ma maison,)</i>	It is, (my house.)
Imperfect,	<i>C'était,</i>	It was.
Preterit,	<i>Ce fut,</i>	It was.
Future,	<i>Ce sera,</i>	It will be.
Conditional,	<i>Ce serait,</i>	It would be.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

—————	<i>Que ce soit,</i>	Let it be.
-------	---------------------	------------

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present,	<i>Que ce soit,</i>	That it may be.
Imperfect,	<i>Que ce fût,</i>	That it might be.

N. B. When the verb *être* is followed by an adjective prefixed to *que*, the English *it*, is then translated in French, by the pronoun *il*. Ex: *Il est bon que*, &c. it is proper that, &c. *Il est extraordinaire que*, &c. it is extraordinary that, &c.

## OF DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Defective verbs are those, which are used in some of their tenses, or persons only. The French language contains *thirty* of them, viz:

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

Infinitive.	<i>Tistre</i> ,*	To weave.
Participle.	<i>Tissu</i> , <i>ue</i> ,	Weaved.

This verb is also used in its compound tenses: *j'ai tissu*, *j'avais tissu*, *j'eus tissu*, &c

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

Infinitive.	<i>Défaillir</i> ,	To faint.
Participle.	<i>Défailli</i> , <i>ie</i> ,	Fainted.

This verb has, besides, the following persons and tenses: *ind. pres.* nous défailions, ils défont; *imperf.* je défailais, tu défailais, &c. and the compound of the *ind. pres.* *j'ai défaili*, tu as défaili, &c.

Infinitive.	<i>Ebouillir</i> ,	To boil away.
Participle.	<i>Ebouilli</i> , <i>ie</i> ,	Boiled away.

The compound tenses of this verb are: *j'ai ébouilli*, *j'avais ébouilli*, &c. Ex: *cette sauce est trop ébouillie*, this sauce has boiled away too much.

Infinitive.	<i>Faillir</i> ,	To fail.
Participle.	<i>Failli</i> , <i>ie</i> ,	Failed.

The compound tenses are: *j'ai failli*, *j'avais failli*, &c.

NOTE *Faillir* is sometimes translated by the English prepositions *about* or *near*; as, *j'ai failli mourir*, I was about to die, or near dying; *j'ai failli tomber*, I was about to fall &c.

Infinitive.	<i>Gêsir</i> ,	To lie.
Gerund.	<i>Gisant</i> ,	Lying.

This verb has, moreover, the following persons: *ind. pres.* il git, nous gisons, ils gisent; *imperf.* il gisait and ils gisaient. Ex: *tout git en cela*, the whole business lies in that point.

In monumental inscriptions, it is used thus: *ci-git*, &c. here lies. &c.

Infinitive.	<i>Se mourir</i> ,	To be dying.
-------------	--------------------	--------------

This verb has only the *indicative present*, je me meurs, tu te meurs, &c. and the *imperfect*, je me mourais, tu te mourais, &c.

Infinitive.	<i>Oïr</i> ,	To hear.
Participle.	<i>Oûï</i> , <i>ie</i> ,	Heard.

This verb is only used in the *preterit*, *j'ouïs*, tu ouïs, &c. and the *imperf. subj.* que *j'ouïsse*, que tu ouïsses, &c.

The compound tenses are: *j'ai ouï*, *j'avais ouï*, &c.

\* This infinitive is *obsolete*, and the verb *tisser* is now used in its stead.

Infinitive. *Quérir*, To fetch.

This verb is used, in the most familiar conversation, in its infinitive only, after one of the tenses of *aller*, to go; *venir*, to come, or *envoyer*, to send: Ex. *allez quérir votre frère*, go and fetch your brother; *il l'est venu quérir*, he came for him; *envoyez moi quérir*, send for me.

Infinitive. *Saillir*, To project from.  
Gerund. *Saillant*, Projecting from.  
Participle. *Sailli, ie*, Projected from.

This verb has, besides, the following forms: *ind. pres.* il saille; *imperf.* il saillait; *fut.* il saillira; *cond.* il saillirait; *subj. pres.* qu'il saille; *imperf.* qu'il saillît.

### THIRD CONJUGATION.

Infinitive. *Choir*, To fall.  
Participle. *Chu, ue*, Fallen.

The compound tenses of this verb, which are very seldom used, take the auxiliary *être*; thus: *je suis chu, j'étais chu, &c.*

Infinitive. *Démouvoir*, { To take off,  
Participle. *Dému, ue*, { To make one desist.  
Taken off, &c.

Only used in the above tenses.

Infinitive. *Echoir*, { To fall to,  
Gerund. *Echéant*, { To expire, or be out.  
Falling to.  
Participle. *Echu, ue*, Fallen to.

This verb is only used in the following persons and tenses: *ind. pres.* il échoit, or il échet; *preterit*, j'échus, tu échus, &c. *fut.* j'écherrai, tu écherras, &c. *imperf. subj.* que j'échusse, &c. The compound tenses, which take the auxiliary *être*, are: *je suis échu, j'étais échu, je fus échu, &c.*

Infinitive. *Seoir*, { To become,  
Gerund. *Séant, or Seyant*, { To fit well.  
Becoming.

This verb has, besides, the following persons: *Ind. pres.* il sied and ils siéent; *Imperf.* il séyait; *fut.* il siéra; *condit.* il sierait; *Subj. pres.* qu'il siée. Ex: *cela vous sied très bien*, that fits you very well; *cela ne sied à personne*, that becomes no one.

### FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Infinitive. *Accroire*, \_\_\_\_\_.

This verb is merely used in the *Infinitive*, with the verb *faire* prefixed; as, *faire accroire*, to make one believe; *en faire accroire*, to impose upon one; *s'en faire accroire*, to be self-conceited.

Infinitive. *Braire*, To bray, (as an ass.)

This verb has only the following persons: *Ind. pres.* il brait and ils braient; *fut.* il braira and ils brairont; *condit.* il brairait and ils brairaient.

Infinitive. *Bruire*, To roar.

Gerund. *Bruyant*, Roaring.

Only used in the *imperf. ind.* sing. *il bru yait*, plur. *ils bru yaient*. Ex: *Nous entendions le bruissement des vagues*, we heard the roaring of the waves.

Infinitive. *Clore*, { To close,  
To shut up.

Gerund. *Closant*, Closing.

Participle. *Clos, ose*, Closed.

*Ind. pres.* je clos, tu clos, il clot; (no plural,) *future*, je clorai, tu cloras, &c. *condit.* je clorais, tu clorais, &c. *Imperf. 2d pers. sing.* clos. The compound tenses are: *j'ai clos*, *j'avais clos*, &c.

Infinitive. *Déclore*, { To unclose,  
To open.

Gerund. *Déclosant*, Unclosing.

Participle. *Déclos, ose*, Unclosed.

This verb has the same irregularities as *clorre*, to close.

Infinitive. *Eclore*, { To be hatched,  
(as birds.)

Participle. *Eclos, ose*, To bloom.

This verb has only the following forms: *Ind. pres. sing.* *il éc lot*; plur. *ils éc losent*; *fut.* *il éc lora*, *ils éc lora nt*; *condit.* *il éc lora it*, *ils éc lora ient*, and the *subj. pres.* *qu'il éc lose*, *qu'ils éc losent*. The compound tenses which are formed with *être*, are of great use: Ex: *il est éc los*, m. s. *elle est éc lose*, f. s. *ils sont éc los*, m. pl. *elles sont éc loses*, f. pl. &c.

Infinitive. *Enclore*, { To enclose,  
To surround.

Gerund. *Enclosant*, Enclosing.

Participle. *Enclos, ose*, Enclosed.

This verb has the same irregularities as *clorre*, to close.

Infinitive. *Forclore*, { To foreclose,  
To debar, (a law term.)

Participle. *Forclos, ose*, Foreclosed, &c.

Only used in the above and the compound tenses: *j'ai forclos*, *j'avais forclos*, *j'eus forclos*, &c.

Infinitive. *Forfaire*, To forfeit.

Participle. *Forfait, aite*, Forfeited.

This verb has also the compound tenses: *j'ai forfait*, *j'avais forfait*, *j'eus forfait*, &c.

Infinitive.	<i>Frîre,</i>	To fry.
Participle.	<i>Frit, ite,</i>	Fried.

Only used in the following persons and tenses: *Ind. pres.* je fris, tu fris, il frit; (no plural,) *fut.* je frirai, tu friras, &c. *condit.* je frirais, tu frirais, &c. *imperf. sing.* *fris.*

N. B. This verb is more elegantly used with *faire*, prefixed; as, *faire frîre, faisant frîre, fait frîre*; *je fais frîre, je faisais frîre, je fis frîre, &c.*

Infinitive.	<i>Malfaire,</i>	{ To do ill, To do mischief.
Gerund.	<i>Malfaisant,</i>	Ill doing.
Participle.	<i>Malfait,</i>	Ill done.

This verb is also used in its compound tenses: *j'ai malfait, j'avais malfait, j'eus malfait, &c.*

N. B. In all the simple tenses, the adjective *mal* is placed after the verb; as, *je fais mal, je faisais mal, je fis mal, &c.*

Infinitive.	<i>Méfaire,</i>	To misdo.
Participle.	<i>Méfait,</i>	Misdone.

Only used in the above and the compound tenses: *j'ai méfait, j'avais méfait, &c.*

Infinitive.	<i>Parfaire,</i>	To perfect.
Participle.	<i>Parfait, aite,</i>	Perfected.

The compound tenses are: *j'ai parfait, j'avais parfait, &c.*

Infinitive.	<i>Poindre,</i>	To dawn.
-------------	-----------------	----------

Besides the infinitive, this verb has also the two following persons: *Ind. pres.* il point; *fut.* il poindra. *Ex. le jour commence à poindre*, the day begins to dawn.

Infinitive.	<i>Renaître,</i>	{ To be born again. To grow up again.
Gerund.	<i>Renaissant,</i>	Being born again.

*Ind. pres.* je renaiss, tu renaiss, &c.; *imperf.* je renaissais, tu, &c.; *pret.* je renaquis, tu, &c.; *fut.* je renaîtrai, tu, &c.; *cond.* je renaîtrais, tu, &c.; *imperf.* renaiss, qu'il, &c.; *subj. pres.* que je renaisse, que tu, &c.; *imperf.* que je renaquisse, que tu, &c.

N. B. This verb, having no *participle*, has no compound tenses.

Infinitive.	<i>Soudre,</i>	To solve.
-------------	----------------	-----------

Only used in the infinitive.

REMARK. This verb is becoming obsolete, and superseded by *résoudre*, to resolve.

Infinitive.	<i>Sourdre,</i>	To spring.
-------------	-----------------	------------

This verb is merely used in the *infinitive*, and the third pers. sing. of the *ind. pres.* il sourd.

415224  
 L. C.  
 13  
 6809. G

# CONTENTS.



	Page.
Of verbs, - - - - -	5
Of conjugations, - - - - -	5
Of moods, - - - - -	5
Of tenses, - - - - -	5
Of persons and numbers, - - - - -	6
Of auxiliary verbs, - - - - -	6
Conjugation of the auxiliary verb <i>Avoir</i> to have, - - - - -	6
Conjugation of the auxiliary verb <i>Etre</i> to be, - - - - -	10
A verb conjugated interrogatively, exemplified in <i>Avoir</i> , - - - - -	13
A verb conjugated negatively, exemplified in <i>Avoir</i> , - - - - -	14
A verb conjugated interrogatively and negatively, exemplified in <i>Avoir</i> , - - - - -	15
A table of idiomatical expressions, formed with <i>avoir</i> , - - - - -	15
A table of terminations, for all the French verbs, - - - - -	16
{ First conjugation in <i>er</i> , - - - - -	17
Of regular verbs. { Second conjugation in <i>ir</i> , - - - - -	19
{ Third conjugation in <i>oir</i> , - - - - -	22
{ Fourth conjugation in <i>re</i> , - - - - -	25
Observations upon some of the regular verbs, - - - - -	27
Of passive verbs, - - - - -	28
Conjugation of the passive verb <i>Etre aimé</i> , to be loved, - - - - -	28
Of neuter verbs - - - - -	29
Of pronominal verbs, - - - - -	29
Conjugation of the pronominal verb <i>se blesser</i> , to wound one's self, - - - - -	30
A list of verbs, which are pronominal in French only, - - - - -	33
{ First conjugation, - - - - -	34
Of irregular verbs. { Second conjugation, - - - - -	35
{ Third conjugation, - - - - -	46
{ Fourth conjugation, - - - - -	58
A new arrangement { First conjugation, - - - - -	84
of all the irregu- { Second conjugation, - - - - -	84
lar verbs in the { Third conjugation, - - - - -	86
French language. { Fourth conjugation, - - - - -	86
Of impersonal verbs, - - - - -	89
Conjugation of the impersonal verb <i>y avoir</i> , there to be, - - - - -	90
Conjugation of the impersonal verb <i> falloir</i> , to be necessary, - - - - -	90
Conjugation of the impersonal verb <i>Etre</i> , to be, - - - - -	91
{ First conjugation, - - - - -	92
Of defective verbs. { Second conjugation, - - - - -	92
{ Third conjugation, - - - - -	93
{ Fourth conjugation, - - - - -	93





Deacidified using the Bookkeeper process  
Neutralizing agent: Magnesium Oxide  
Treatment Date: Sept. 2006

**Preservation Technologies**  
A WORLD LEADER IN PAPER PRESERVATION

111 Thomson Park Drive  
Cranberry Township, PA 16066  
(724) 779-2111



LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 003 146 863 2

